

ROSETTA BRANCH BARRAGE, January 1884.

These barrages are separated by a revetment wall 3,280 feet in length, in the middle of which is situated the head of the Main Delta Canal. The platform of the Rosetta barrage is flush with the river bed, being 29.8 feet above mean sea level. Its width is 151 feet and depth 11.5 feet, and it is composed of concrete overlaid with brick and stonework as shown in Figure 34.

Down stream of the platform is an irregular talus of rubble pitching, varying in places from 150 to ten feet in width, and from fifty to two feet in depth. The left half of the platform is laid on loose sand, the right half on a barrier of rubble pitching overlying the sand. This loose stone barrier is thirty feet high, 200 feet wide at the deepest part, and tapers off to zero at the ends. It closes the deep channel of the river, and its only cementing material is the slime deposit of the Nile. This deposit is so excellent that the barrier is practically water-tight. The platform supports a regulating bridge with a lock at each end. This bridge consists of sixty-one openings each 16.4 feet wide. The lock on the left flank is 39.4 feet wide, while that on the right is 49.2 feet. Fifty-seven of the piers are 6.6 feet wide, while three of them are 11.6 feet wide; their height being 32.2 feet. The lock walls are 9.8 feet and 14.8 feet wide. The piers support arches carrying a roadway. The waterway of the barrage is 34,359 square feet, while the high flood discharge is 225,000 cubic feet per second, causing a banking up or afflux of 0.8 foot.

During the floods of 1867 the floor of ten openings of the Rosetta Barrage settled 0.4 foot, producing a deflection in the superstructure both horizontally and vertically, and after this time no attempt was again made to raise the water so high until after the completion of the remodeling of the foundations by General Moncrieff.

The Damietta Barrage has ten openings of 16.4 feet

each, more than the Rosetta Barrage. The platforms and superstructures are on the same level, and exactly similar.

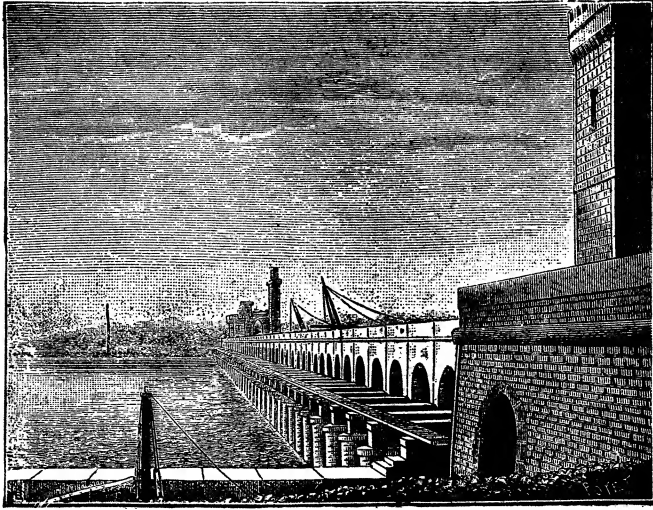


FIG. 35. VIEW OF NILE BARRAGE.

The Okhla Weir, on the River Jumna, Figure 39, is a mass of loose rubble stone with absolutely no foundation, and holds up annually ten feet of water, when the water pressure per lineal foot bears to the weight of the dam a proportion of $\frac{3,125}{12,600}$ or $\frac{1}{40}$. Nile sand is much finer than that in the Jumna, and will therefore require a lower co-efficient.

Considering the barrage a thoroughly unsound work as to its foundations, and relying only on friction, it was determined to make the submerged weight of masonry bear a ratio of fifty to the pressure of the water going to be brought on it. Springs might cause a slight subsidence of any part of the barrage, but it could not be moved as a whole. The pressure of a head of ten feet of water would be 3,125 pounds per lineal foot. The

submerged weight of the platform, as first constructed, was 103,983 pounds per lineal foot. The co-efficient was $\frac{1}{33}$. That this proportion might be $\frac{1}{50}$, it was necessary to make the rubble talus everywhere 131 feet wide and ten feet deep, with a submerged weight per lineal foot of 51,668 pounds. This made the submerged platform and talus together 155,651 pounds as compared to the pressure, 3,125 pounds. Since only one-third of the talus was completed in 1884, the barrage was not required to hold up more than 7.2 feet of water, but on the completion of the talus in 1885, ten feet of water were held up.*

The headworks of the Sone Canals, taken from the river Sone, in India, shown in plan in Figure 36, is a good illustration of the headworks of a modern canal, taken from a river in the plains of India, and having scouring sluices with moyable shutters.

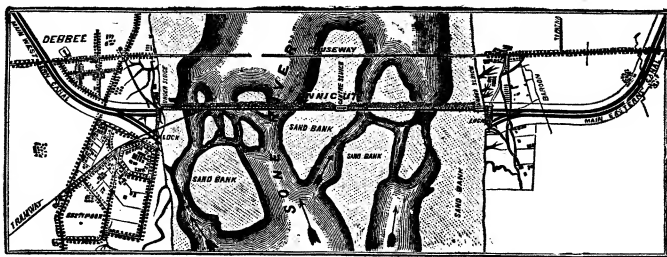
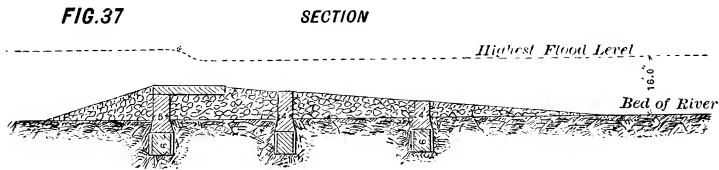


FIG. 36. PLAN OF HEADWORKS OF SONE CANALS.

The length of the weir between the abutments, on the right and left banks of the river, is 12,550 feet, or 2.35 miles, and its crest is eight feet higher than the bed of the river. As two canals are taken off above this weir, one from each bank of the river, there are two sets of end weir scouring sluices, one at each extremity of the

*Irrigation in Lower Egypt, by Mr. W. Willcocks, C. E., in Vol. 88 of Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers.

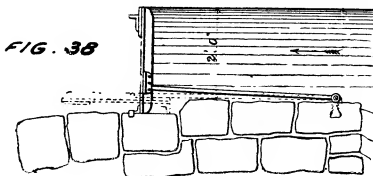
weir. There is also a central set of scouring sluices to provide a greater control over the regimen of the river, and to assist in keeping open a navigable channel across it, between the locks of the two canals. However, after an experience of several years, they have been found insufficient for this purpose. The pool above the weir silted up so much that when the water was level with the crest of the latter, that is, when the water was eight feet above what used to be the bed of the river, it was with difficulty that a boat drawing three feet of water



WEIR AT DEHREE SONE CANALS

could be got across from the canal on one side to that on the other. Many islands were formed one foot or two feet above the level of the crest of the weir, and were yearly increasing. To facilitate navigation, and to raise the level of the pool with the object of obtaining a greater depth of water upon the head sluices of the canals, it was decided to put a movable dam two feet high, along the whole length of the weir. Four men can raise these shutters, when a depth of six or eight inches of water is flowing over the crest of the weir almost as quickly as they walk.

MOVABLE DAM TO BE ERECTED ALONG THE CREST OF THE SONE WEIR.



Each set of scouring sluices is made up of twenty-five movable shutters of a width of twenty feet each, that is, each set is 500 feet

in length. These movable shutters are explained in the article entitled *Sluices and Movable Dams*.

Before the construction of the weir the mean depth of the river at time of high flood was found to be 11.64 feet, and the breadth between the banks 12,400 feet.

The river in flood rises eight and one-half feet over the crest of the weir, and discharges about 750,000 cubic feet per second. Colonel Dickens estimated the flood discharge at 1,026,000 cubic feet per second, but his estimate was too large. The catchment basin of the Sone is about 23,000 square miles.

The weir is composed mainly of dry rubble, and is similar in cross-section to the Okhla weir, Figure 39, but differing from that structure in having foundations to its three parallel masonry walls, which traverse the mass of dry rubble from end to end, and keep this mass together.

An ample supply of good stone, both for rubble and ashlar, is obtainable from quarries about five miles distant. The Sone differs from the Himalayan rivers generally, in being confined within a permanent channel, so that no flank defenses of any importance are necessary on the banks of the river. The three parallel walls of the dam are founded on shallow, hollow blocks, sunk with the aid of Fouracre's excavators. These blocks have thin walls; for blocks of six feet interior width a single brick thick was sufficient, while for fourteen feet blocks the walls were built from one and one-half or two brick thick.*

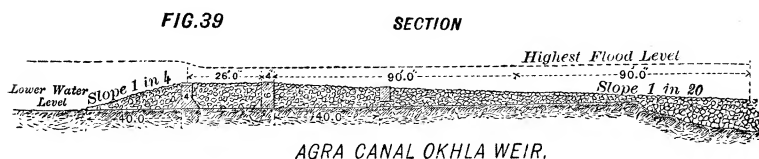
In the Bengal Revenue Report of the Public Works Department for 1889-90, it is stated that:—

“For many years after the construction of the Sone Weir, the recurring failures of the piers of the river

* *Indian Weirs*, by Major A. M. Lang, R. E., Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Vol. VI. Second Series.

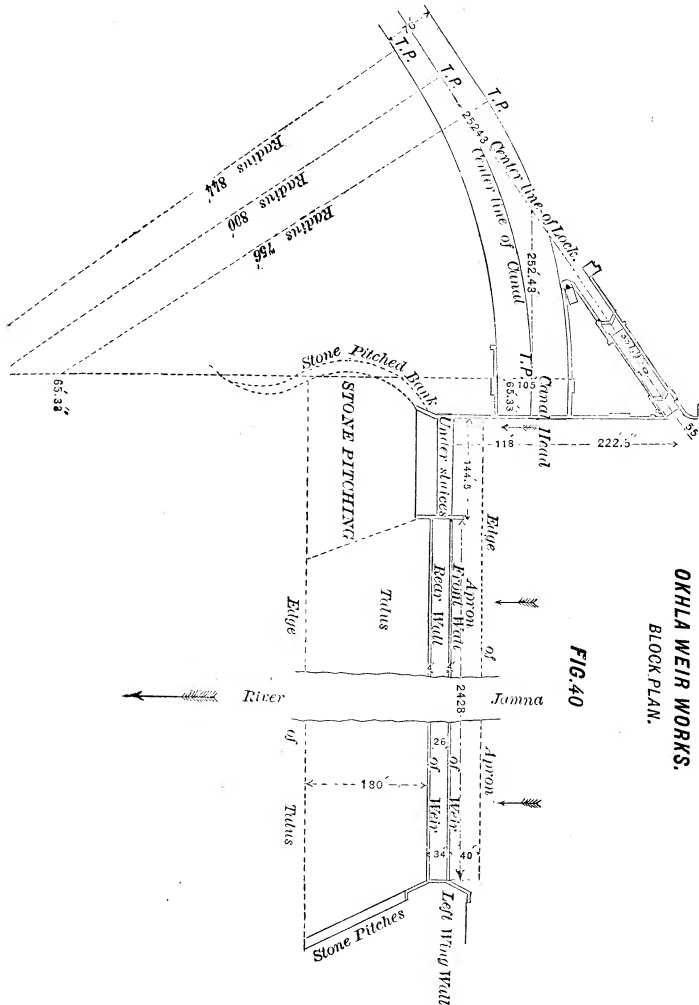
sluices, owing to the inherent weakness of their design, were a constant cause of expenditure in repairs, and in 1885 it was decided to build them on a stronger model. The work is now completed."

The Okhla Weir, Agra Canal in India, is shown in cross-section in Figure 39. This is a remarkable work,



in which the engineers of Northern India have exceeded the Madras engineers in the shallowness of foundation, in which the so-called "Madras system" was supposed to differ widely from the practice of other parts of India. In this case foundation may be said to be entirely dispensed with. The lowest cold water level, 649 feet above Kurrachee mean sea level, was adopted as the datum, and a trench was made for 2,438 feet across the dry sandy bed of the Jumna, eight miles below Delhi, at this level; and in this trench was built, in the winter of 1869-70, a wall four feet thick and five feet high of quartzite rubble masonry, laid in lime cement; a sloping apron of dry quartzite rubble extended five feet above this wall, and a sloping talus of similar material was laid for 100 feet below it; the floods of 1870 were allowed to pass over this weir, and left it unharmed. During the next winter, the wall was raised to its full height of nine feet, and the talus was lengthened to 180 feet. The floods of 1871 overtopped the weir by five and a-half feet, more than 1,000,000 cubic feet per second sweeping over it, while 40,000 cubic feet broke over the left shore embankment and inundated a large tract of country. The greatest velocity was 18.6 feet

per second, and was found to be at forty-two feet below the crest. Stone was worked out of the talus, and deep holes, twenty feet deep, were scoured out on the down-



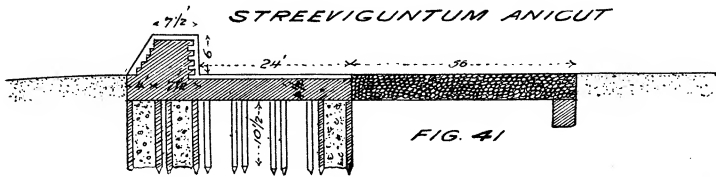
stream edge. During the next winter, 1871-72, the embankments were heightened and strengthened; and

1,000,000 cubic feet of stone were expended in filling up the holes below the talus. In 1872-73, a second wall—the true crest wall of the weir, parallel to, and thirty feet above the one first built—was raised to a height of nine feet; the interval between the two walls being filled with dry rubble. A third wall, four feet thick and four feet deep, was inserted in the talus, forty feet below the lower wall; this has quite stopped all movement in the upper part of the talus; this wall is at the line of maximum velocity in floods. In March, 1874, the canal was opened. The total quantity of stone in the weir is 4,660,000 cubic feet. The stone is the quartzite of the ridge of Delhi, and of similar outcropping ridges in the country around. The right flank of the Okhla weir abuts on to a ridge of this rock, which has furnished an inexhaustible supply of material on the spot. The stone contains a large proportion of quartz, a little feldspar, and protoxide of iron. It is very durable and excessively hard, rendering it unsuitable (owing to the labor and expense) for finely dressed ashlar work. The river bed has silted up to the crest level; but at the canal head a clear channel is kept open by the scouring action of the river sluices placed at the right end of the weir, similarly situated to those of the Narora Weir, as described below.

This weir, and also the Sone and Narora weirs, have long aprons of dry rubble, and this seems to be the section selected for the modern dams, in sandy rivers, by Indian engineers. As the sandy beds of these rivers, except in the vicinity of the scouring sluices, were always raised, on the up-stream side, to the level of the crest of the weir, consequently that portion of the work would be free from scour, and it, therefore, was given a steeper slope than the apron on the down-stream side.

The Streeviguntum Weir or Anicut, over the Tambrapoorney River in Madras, is shown in cross-section

in Figure 41. This weir, and also that across the Godavary, Figure 44, are located in Madras, and they are there called *anicuts*. The Streeviguntum Weir is of the same type as the Narora Weir, though on a smaller scale.



It, however, has no water cushion, while the Norora Weir has a water cushion of at least three feet at the low stage of the river. The scouring sluices of this weir, as in the greater number of the old weirs of the Madras Presidency, have a small span. In this case there are nine vents, and each vent is only four feet in width by nine feet high. These small vents have not the scouring capacity of the large ones of Northern India.

The Streeviguntum Weir is 1,380 feet in length between the wing-walls, raised six feet above the average level of the deep bed of the river, and the width at the crown is seven and one-half feet; there is a front slope of one-half to one, and in rear a perpendicular fall on to a cut-stone apron twenty-four feet wide, and four and one-half feet in depth; beyond, there is a rough stone talus of the same depth, and thirty-six feet in width, protected by a retaining wall. The foundation of the body of the work, and of the cut-stone floor in rear, is of brick-in-lime, laid on wells sunk ten and one-half feet in the sand, and raised four and one-half feet above the wells, including the cut-stone covering; the retaining wall is built of stone-in-lime, and rests on a line of wells, sunk to the same depth, ten and one-half feet. The body of the anicut is of brick-in-lime, faced through-

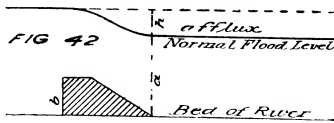
sive fall, and being, moreover, intersected by hill torrents, the carrying of the canal through such irregular ground entails serious difficulties, which require the greatest engineering skill and a large expenditure of money to overcome them.

Referring to the canal through the delta, it will be readily understood that the high ridges and the old channels, above described, indicate the most suitable alignment for a series of irrigation channels. The object would be to conduct the water from the river to the crest of such high lands, and then for the channels along them, to arrange as far as may be practicable that the excavation shall be no more than sufficient to furnish the material required for the embankments, which should retain the water at as high a level as possible, consistent with their stability. If the depth of water admitted into the head of the main channel is materially less than what is due to the river at its full height, the depth of excavation at the head will increase in proportion to the difference; and it will then be our object in order to make the cutting as inexpensive as possible, to carry the line of the channel through low ground, until the water would flow on the surface. The irrigation limit is then reached, and the channels should be continued along the highest ground that will allow of the water continuing on the same level with it or above it, as may be found most suitable for the locality. If the ground were level on both sides of the channel it would, in many cases, be indispensable to have the surface of the water above it; but on the other hand, the soil may be ill adapted for withstanding pressure, or for preventing percolation; and to avoid the occurrence of breaches it may be desirable to keep the height of the embankments within very moderate limits.

The selection of the exact spot for the head of a canal

out with cut stone, and furnished with a set of under-sluices at each extremity of the work, to let off sand and surplus water.*

The Narora Weir, Lower Ganges Canal in India, is shown in cross-section in Figure 43. This canal gets its supply from the river Ganges. It is the most recent of the large and important weirs, built across wide rivers with sandy beds, and from the volume of the floods, the sandy nature of the river bed, and the absence of material on the site suitable for a weir of this description, the difficulties to be contended with have been very great. The dam proper is a solid wall of brick masonry 3,700 feet in length; the floor below is of concrete, three feet thick, covered over with brick work, one foot thick, and then with one foot of sandstone ashlar; and the talus below is formed of very large masses of block kunkur, a kind of nodular limestone, brought from the quarries at thirty miles distance. The up-stream side of the weir is backed with clay puddle, pitched on its outer slope with an apron of block kunkur.



The length of the weir was settled by Major Jeffreys, R. E., as 4,000 feet, on the following data: See Figure 42.

h = afflux = 1.5 feet, when the river was at its highest was accepted as perfectly safe.

$(a - b)$ = 6 feet = maximum flood level above sill of weir.

Q = maximum flood volume flowing over weir of 200,000 cubic feet per second.

l = length of crest of weir in feet.

w = 6 feet per second = surface velocity of approach.

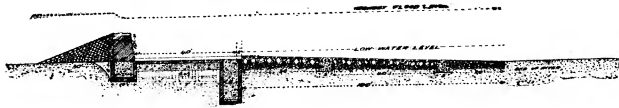
* *Indian Weirs*, by Major A. M. Lang. Professional Papers on Indian Engineering. Vol. VI, Second Series.

The figures applied in D'Aubinson's formula give:—

$$Q = 3.49 l h \sqrt{h + .035 w^2} + 4.97 l (a - b) \sqrt{h + .01 w^2}$$

Computing this we find the value of l = length of weir = 3,776 feet.

FIG. 43. NARORA WEIR, LOWER GANGES CANAL.



Colonel Brownlow, R. E., in reviewing the project and deprecating a proposed reduction of the length settled by Major Jeffreys, showed that a maximum flood of 230,000 cubic feet might not unreasonably be expected, and that taking into consideration the circumstances of the site, the light and friable nature of the soil of the country, and the lowness of the ridge which intervenes between the present channel of the river and the broad parallel trough of the Mahewah Valley, it would be very dangerous to contract the weir and raise flood levels.

The necessity for well foundations, especially for a strong line of deep blocks, along the lower end of the stone floor, and also for staunching all leakage by a puddle of clay above the drop wall—with a view of holding up all the water possible, and thus losing none of the supply when the river is at its lowest—of stopping all flow under the floor to the risk of undermining and destroying it—and also of resisting retrogressive action below the weir, was strongly urged in Colonel Brownlow's review of the project, as will be seen from the following extract from his report:—

“My reasons are, first, that all our experience in Upper India shows that where velocity of a stream is largely augmented by the construction of a barrier across it, permanent deepening of the channel below invariably takes place; and secondly, that leakage will

occur through the sandy bed underneath a dam with shallow foundations.

“ Deepening of the bed has taken place on all the torrents across which weirs have been thrown on the Eastern Jumna Canal, and it is now occurring at Okhla. It occurred below the Dhanowrie Dam, on the Ganges Canal, until the obstruction caused by the dam was reduced, so that the normal velocity of the torrent was nearly restored, when the channel below partially silted up again.

“ This fact alone is a very strong argument against the proposed reduction of length of weir, but as our weir at Narora will, in any case, greatly accelerate the mean velocity of the floods, we must be prepared both for retrogression of levels, and the formation of very deep holes immediately below the talus of heavy material. Those at the tail of the Okhla Weir, Figure 39, after the floods of last season, were from 19 to 20 feet deep; but whereas at Okhla the materials for filling them up, and thus resisting further retrogression, are readily available, we shall at Narora have nothing but a scanty supply of block kunkur brought from long distances, or blocks of béton manufactured at considerable expense.

“ In the latter case, a strong line of deep blocks, supported by the ruins of the talus, would stoutly resist any retrogressive action, whilst the materials for repair were being collected and prepared; while the work on shallow foundations would run the greatest risk of being undermined and destroyed.

“ It is stated that the leakage, prevented by deep well foundations, is more imaginary than real, because long before the volume entering the canal is likely to be utilized, the bed of the river will have become silted up nearly to the crest of the dam, and the upper layers of silt will have become more or less clayey, because leak-

age takes place through the banks as well as through the bed, and finally because little or no leakage has been detected through the Okhla weir which has shallow foundations.

“ I cannot admit that the upper layers of silt deposited in the bed of the river above are deposited by falling floods, and are swept out again by the full current of the next succeeding high flood. The scour which takes place immediately *above* any marked contraction of a stream, is a matter of common experience, and is easily explained by the great relative increase in the bottom velocity resulting from the contraction.

“ The banks, on the contrary, will become permanent, if the flanks of the weir are not turned, and they may ultimately become staunched by the clay brought down by the flood water. Besides, the effect of the pressure of the water on the banks is not worth mentioning, when compared to that on the sand underlying the weir. I think, therefore, that any consideration of the leakage through the banks may safely be neglected. But, even if it could not be, I do not see why we should not try and stop the leakage through the bed, because the banks are supposed likely to leak also.

“ The latter argument applies equally to the objection commonly urged against deep block foundations, viz: that a line of them cannot be made perfectly water-tight. It is surely better to block up $\frac{9.9}{100}$ ths of the area through which leakage can occur, than to leave it all open because a perfectly water-tight partition cannot be made.

“ Apart from any consideration of the value in money of the water saved by a strong water-tight dam, the strongest necessity is, to my mind, laid upon us to economize every drop of the low-water supply in the river, owing to its insufficiency for the requirements of the years of drought. Common justice to the cultivating

community, dependent on the canal, seems to me to dictate the adoption of every reasonable precaution for rendering the whole of the short supply available for purposes of irrigation.

“I have placed the deep line of blocks at the tail of the cut-stone apron, because I think that the latter, *if built at the proper level, and of a proper section*, will perfectly protect the blocks from any fear of action on the upstream side, and that the real danger to be guarded against is the cutting back and permanent deepening of the bed of the river below the weir. I have allowed only shallow foundations for the drop wall, because I consider the line of blocks underneath it sufficiently protected by the cut-stone apron and deep foundations on the downstream side, and by the mass of heavy material on the upstream side. The velocity of the current above the weir, although amply sufficient to sweep away the loose sand of the bed, has been proved, by the experience at Okhla, insufficient to move the heavy material of the apron.”

To hold the talus together, it is traversed from end to end by solid concrete walls at intervals of thirty feet and forty feet as shown in Figure 43. This plan was found to be necessary at Okhla, Figure 39, where the third wall of four feet square section was adopted as necessary, in order to check the movement in the blocks in the upper part of the talus, although it formed no part of the original design.

The level of the cut-stone floor of the weir, as also of the floor of the under-sluice, is three feet below low water level; and as the floor is five feet thick, the laying of it entailed excavation to a depth of eight feet below low water. To effect this, the upper row of blocks and lower row of wells were sunk to full depth, and hearted with concrete. This was done by filling the hole below the curb, and

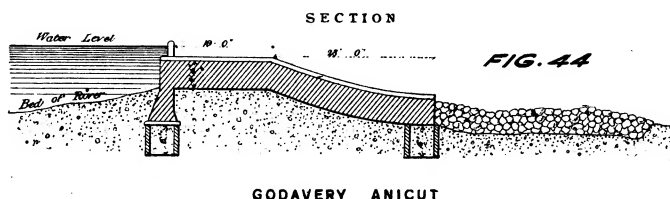
the lower one or two feet of the block or well by hydraulic cement let down in skips; when this had set, it formed a water-tight plug, and enabled the well or block to be pumped dry. The concrete core of the well or block was then put down in layers, and rammed in the ordinary manner. The interval between each pair of contiguous wells and blocks was closed by wooden piles, and the interval, included between piles and well, cleared of sand and filled with concrete. Clay puddle was also packed above the upper row of blocks. The space, thirty-three feet in width intervening between the upper row of blocks and the lower line of wells, was then divided into compartments of about forty feet in length, by cross lines of shallow blocks, sunk, hearted and connected as above described. Thus large coffer-dams were formed, which were excavated to a depth of eight feet below low water level, and the water pumped out by Gwynne's pumps, so as to allow of a three feet thick concrete floor being laid. On this a layer of brick-work one foot thick was added; and this in its turn was covered by an ashlar floor of cut sandstone blocks one foot in thickness.

The under-sluices, forty-two vents of seven feet each, are at the extreme right abutment end of the weir, so as to keep a clear channel open along the front of the immediately adjoining head-sluices of the canal, whose floor is three feet above that of the weir sluices, and this allows the lowest three feet of silt-laden water to pass by without entering the canal. The crest of the weir stands seven feet above low water level, which is the level of the floor of the head-sluices, thus allowing seven feet in depth of water to pass into the canal.*

The Dowlaiswaram Branch of the Godavery Anicut or Weir is shown in cross-section, in Figure 44.

* *Indian Weirs*, by Major A. M. Lang. Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Vol. VI, Second Series.

The total length between the extreme flanks of the weir is 20,570 feet. It is broken into four sections separated by islands, and the total length of the anicut on these four sections is 11,866 feet.



The longest section is the Dowlaiswaram, and the following description of this section is taken from Colonel Baird Smith's work, "Irrigation in Southern India:"

The bed of the Godavery throughout is of pure sand, and in such soil are the whole of the foundations laid. Commencing from the eastern or left bank, the first portion of the work is the Dowlaiswaram branch anicut or dam. The total length of this is 4,872 feet. The body of the dam consists of a mass of masonry resting on front and rear rows of wells, each well being six feet in diameter, and sunk six feet below the deep bed of the stream. The masonry forming the body is composed:—

1st. Of a front curtain wall running along the whole length, seven feet in height, four feet in thickness at the base, with footings one foot broad on each side to cover the tops of the wells on which the curtain wall rests, and three feet thick at the summit.

2d. Of a horizontal flooring or waste-board nineteen feet in breadth and four feet in thickness.

3d. Of a masonry counter-arched fall twenty-eight feet in breadth and four feet thick, of which the curve is so slight that the form may be considered practically as that of an inclined plane. The waste-board and tail

slope are protected against the action of the stream by a covering of strongly clamped cut stones over all.

4th. Of a rough stone apron in rear formed of the most massive stones procurable, and extending about seventy or eighty feet down stream. Figure 44 does not show the apron extended so far, but it is now extended to about 150 feet, and further secured by a masonry bar.

The apron protects the rear foundation against the erosive action of the stream passing over the dam. The body of the dam rests merely on a raised interior or core of the *common river sand*, and no precautions to strengthen this in anyway have been considered necessary. On the extreme left flank of the dam is a series of works, consisting of a lock for the passage of craft, a head sluice for an irrigation channel, and an under sluice for purposes of scour and clearance from deposits.

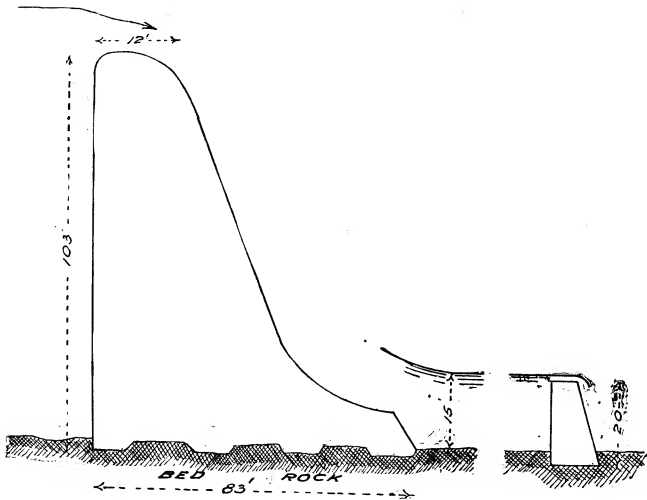


FIG. 45. CROSS-SECTION OF TURLOCK WEIR.

The Turlock Weir in California, across the Tuolumne River, is shown in cross-section, in Figure 45. The

original design for this weir was made by Mr. Luther Wagoner, C. E., but the water cushion was added by Mr. E. H. Barton, the present Chief Engineer of the Turlock Irrigation District. The flood discharge of the river will pass over the weir. The low weir on the downstream side backs up the water and forms a water cushion to receive and break the shock of the flood-water when it flows over the weir. The water-cushion has been found in India to be a most effective protection to the bed of the river from the erosion caused by falling water.

The length of the weir on top is 330 feet, its maximum height to foundation 108 feet, and the maximum height of the overfall of water ninety-eight feet. Its width at base is eighty-three feet, and the maximum pressure 6.3 tons per square foot. The weir is curved in plan, the radius to up stream face being 300 feet, and the angle 60° . Bed and sides of channel is metamorphic (quartzite after slate) rock of exceeding hardness.

On the removal of an old dam, near the site of this weir, an inspection of the bed rock, where the fall had been ten to thirty feet over said dam for eighteen years, showed hardly any appreciable wear. Calculated for the highest flood known, that of 1862, the flow over the crest of the weir is 130,000 cubic feet per second.

The subsidiary weir is located 200 feet below the main weir. It is 120 feet long on top, twelve feet in width, and twenty feet in maximum height, and it backs the water to a depth of fifteen feet on the toe of the upper or main weir, giving a water-cushion of that depth; but, during floods, there will be a depth on the toe of over forty-five feet. The volume of the dam will be about 33,000 cubic yards.

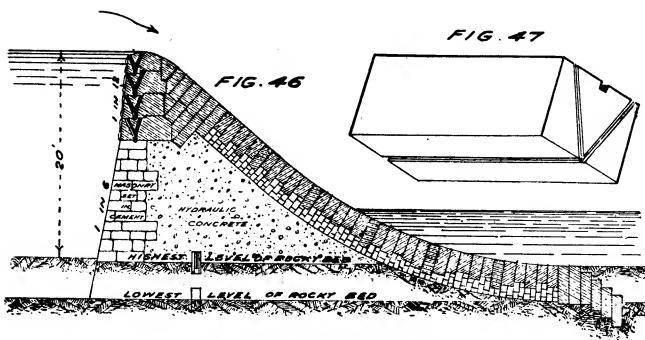
Vertical falls, with water-cushions, are preferred in India to sloping or curved faces on the down-stream side

of works over which water falls. For stability to resist water pressure dams or weirs, with a curved profile according to the French plan, are the most suitable, but, in order to avoid the erosive and destructive action of the falling water on the curved face, vertical walls with water-cushions are preferred.

Numerous instances of vertical falls are to be found on the canals in Northern India, and on two important modern works, the Bhim Tal Dam and the Betwa Weir. Doubtless instances can be found also in modern works of dams with curved faces on the down-stream side over which water flows—for example, the Vrynwy Dam for the Liverpool water supply, and the concrete dam for the Geelong, Australia, water supply.

The dam across the river Lozoya, in Spain, to impound water for the supply of Madrid, has an extraordinary vertical drop—105 feet. The back of the dam, over which the water falls, is not vertical, but has a slight batter given to it by off-sets. The flood-water, however, leaps clear over this face.

During floods, when the reservoir is full, the whole discharge of the river pours over it in an unbroken



WEIR OF HENARES CANAL.

sheet. It has not a water-cushion. The dam was built of ashlar, which is not the best method of construction

is a task requiring much careful consideration. This subject will be again referred to in some of the following articles.

Article 5. Quantity of Water Required for Irrigation.

The source of supply for an irrigation canal having been fixed, the next point for consideration is the quantity of water required. This quantity depends upon:—

1. The maximum quantity of land requiring irrigation during the same period.
2. The duty of water in the locality irrigated by the canal.

The duty of water is the area irrigated annually by one cubic foot of water per second. This subject is discussed in the article entitled *Duty of Water*.

If, after an examination of the map of the irrigation district, we find that 96,000 acres require to be irrigated during one season, and we also find the duty of water in this district, or in a district similarly situated, to be 120 acres, then the quantity of water required to enter the head works of the canal is $\frac{96,000}{120} = 800$ cubic feet per second.

A different method of estimating the quantity has been adopted in the projects for some of the Indian canals.

For the Sone Canals in India, three-quarters of a foot of water per second was estimated as sufficient for every square mile of *gross* area, but this area included land watered from existing wells, land lying fallow, village sites, roads, etc.

For the Upper Ganges Canal in India, eight cubic feet per second was allowed per lineal mile of main canal, and on the Sutlej Canal, six and seven cubic feet have been taken on the same basis.

If the canal is to be a navigable one, a certain minimum depth of water must be kept in it to float the boats

for such a work. Uncoursed rubble is much better suited for a dam, as there is less likelihood of percolation through its broken joints than through the regular-coursed ashlar.

The cross-section of the weir of the Henares Canal, on the river Henares, in Spain, is given in Figure 46. The masonry of this weir is first-class in every respect. Its design, however, as to its cross-section, is one not adopted in India. For a masonry weir, a vertical drop on the down-stream side and a water-cushion, is preferred in the latter country.

The action of the water on the Ogee Falls, on the Ganges Canal, was found very destructive, whereas the vertical falls with water-cushion stood well.

Where the Henares Canal is taken from the river, the river bed is composed of compact clay rock, mixed with strata of hard conglomerate, which had to be blasted out to fit it for the foundation of the weir. The weir itself is 390 feet in length of crest, formed on two curves of 397 and 198.5 feet, running obliquely across the river so as to be tangential to the axis of the canal. It raises the water to a height of twenty feet. Its thickness at crest is 3.14 feet, and on the general level of the river's bed, 45.8 feet. As this bed, however, was very uneven, it was necessary to carry down the thrust of the apron by a series of blocks of stones formed in steps, the last firmly embedded three feet in the rock. The body of the weir consists of hydraulic concrete; the apron is faced with cut-stone blocks, every fifth course being a bond three feet deep, and is a beautiful specimen of masonry. Much pains have been bestowed on preventing the least filtration. For this purpose a channel was cut in the rock along the central axis of the weir for its whole length, and into this a line of stones was fitted, half bedded in the rock, half rising into the concrete.

Into each vertical joint of these stones a groove was cut an inch deep. The stones were built in cement into the rock, and the joints run with pure cement. The concrete was then rammed tightly round them, and a water-tight joint thus formed.

With the same object V-shaped grooves were formed in the sides of each stone of the four upper courses of the weir, as shown in Figure 46, and horizontal grooves cut to correspond with them on the upper and lower faces of each stone, as shown in Figure 47. When, therefore, the stones were set, there was formed a continuous channel, one inch square, running between each, and this was filled with pure cement, poured in liquid, so as to form a tight joint between each stone.

In spite of all the precautions taken the floods exerted an erosive action on the bed of the river *below* the weir, and a large hole was scooped out of the rock at the tail, where the apron ended.*

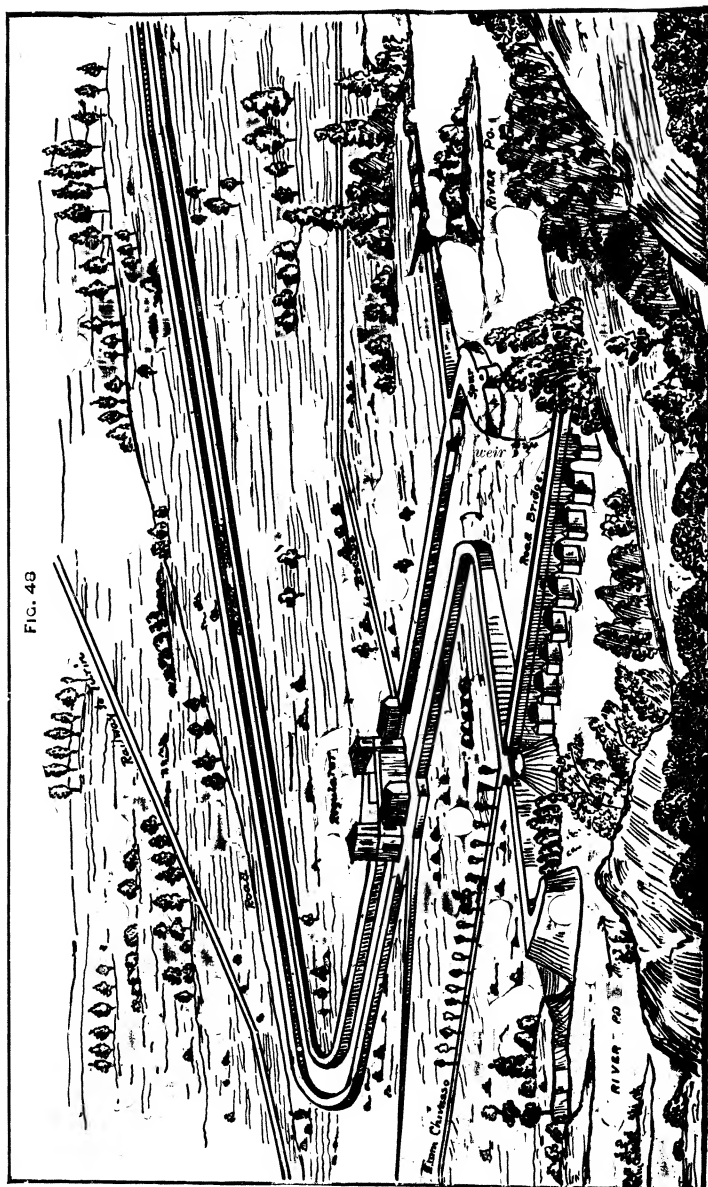
The head of the Cavour Canal in Italy is on the left bank of the Po, about a quarter of a mile below the Chivasso bridge.

The bird's eye view, Figure 48, shows the position of the weir, regulator, under-sluices and escapes. In Indian canals the escapes are usually channels from the main canals to carry away any surplus water. In the bird's eye view the channels marked "Escapes" are really channels to carry away the water that is used for scouring purposes. These scouring or under-sluices were intended to prevent the silting up of the channel from the left bank of the Po to the regulator.

In the bird's eye view is shown the location of the proposed weir (not yet built), placed obliquely in a curve, across the river.

**Irrigation in Southern Europe*, by Lieut. (now General) C. C. Scott Moncrieff, R. E.

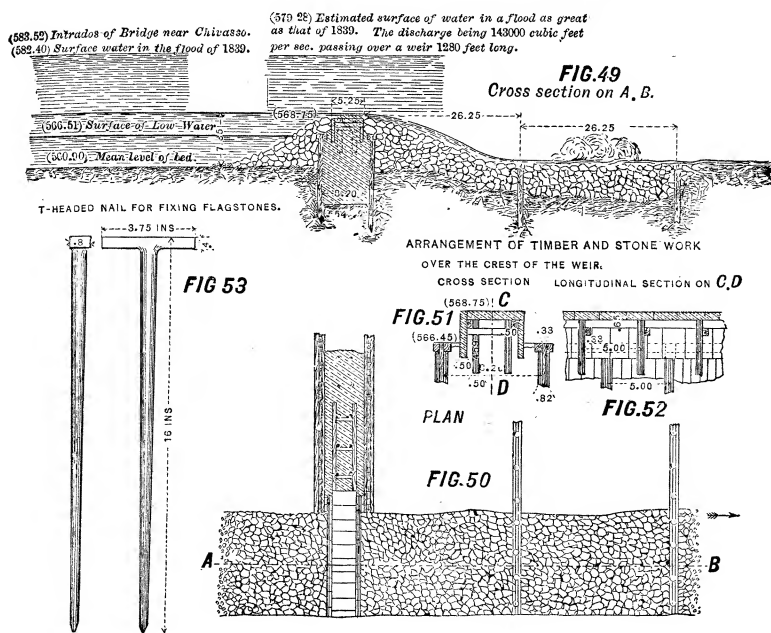
BIRD'S-EYE VIEW OF SITE OF HEAD WORKS CAVOUR CANAL.



Its length was to be 2,300 feet, forming a curve of, for the most part, 823 feet radius, but less at the ends. The design was to raise the water by means of this weir to a height of about eight feet; and of such excellent stiff soil is the bed composed, that it was thought sufficient to build a wall of concrete going down to only

CAVOUR CANAL—DETAILS OF PROPOSED WEIR ACROSS THE PO.

THE FIGURES IN BRACKETS GIVE THE LEVEL ABOVE THE SEA IN FEET.



6.56 feet below the bed, enclosed in front and rear by sheet piling, its upper portion cased in granite slabs of five inches in thickness, and the rest of blocks of rough stone forming a protection in front sloping down to a horizontal distance of sixteen feet, and in rear to twenty-six feet, with a line of sheet piling at its toe, and beyond it an apron of similar blocks, of the same width of twenty-six feet, with another row of piling.

The weir was intended to rest on solid abutments at the two ends, and on the end next the canal was to be supplied with a set of scouring sluices, or escapes, consisting of seventeen openings, each 4.6 feet in width and eight feet in height. All the bed for ninety-six feet below, and 500 feet above, is to be paved with splendid blocks of cut granite, brought from the neighborhood of the Lago Maggiore.

From the left flank of this escape the regulating bridge is retired for a distance of about 700 feet, as shown in the bird's-eye view, Figure 48, and close to its right abutment is built a second escape of nine openings, each 5.54 feet wide and ten feet high. The floor of this escape is one foot lower than that of the regulating bridge, the more effectually to establish a scour.*

Article 29. Scouring Sluices—Under Sluices.

These sluices are sometimes called Weir Sluices and again Dam Sluices.

The first effect of the construction of a weir across a river is that the pool formed by it gradually silts up, partly by deposit, during floods, of matter in suspension in the water, and partly by the gradual forward motion of the bed of the river which exists in all streams, but is only visible to the eye in rivers with sandy beds. Islands begin to form, which would in time obstruct navigation across the river above the weir, and would prevent the water, in the dry season, from finding access to the canals led off from the pool.

In rivers in India carrying sand and silt, the silting up of the bed of the river to the level of the crest of the weir seems to be inevitable. This sand and silt if not

*Irrigation in Southern Europe, by Lient. (now General) C. C. Scott Moncrieff, R. E.

removed choked the head of the canal and locks, located above the weir, and stopped their supply of water. In order to obviate these difficulties, every weir has to be furnished at one extremity, or at both extremities, according as one canal or two canals are taken off from above it, with a set of scouring sluices. In very long weirs, such as that across the Sone River in Bengal, another scouring sluice is placed in the center, to assist in keeping open a navigable channel across the river.

The proper location for a scouring sluice, with respect to the regulator of a canal, is that the crest of the weir should be at right angles to the face line of the regulator, and also at right angles to the face line of the lock when the channel is navigable.

This is well exemplified in the plan of the Okhla Weir Works, Figure 40. It can be seen there that the current of the river flows flush with, and parallel to, the face line of the canal and lock, and that there is no recess for still water and consequent silting.

An instance of the defective location of a regulator, with respect to the scouring sluices, is seen at the head-works of the Upper Ganges Canal, Figures 26 and 28. Here, the entrance to the canal is located over two hundred feet lower down the river than the scouring sluices, in consequence of which, the strong current flowing to the scouring sluices, is *not across* the face of the regulator, and there is a tendency to silt where the marks * * * are shown, on Figure 28. In the low stages of the river the silt prevents the free flow of the current towards the regulator.

Another instance is in the location of the regulator of the Cavour Canal, Figure 48. The regulating bridge is located 700 feet below the weir, and the course of the current through the scouring sluices, leaves somewhat still water in the left corner, just above the sluices of



FIG. 54. MYAPORE REGULATING BRIDGE.

the regulator. When these sluices are opened the silt is washed into the canal.

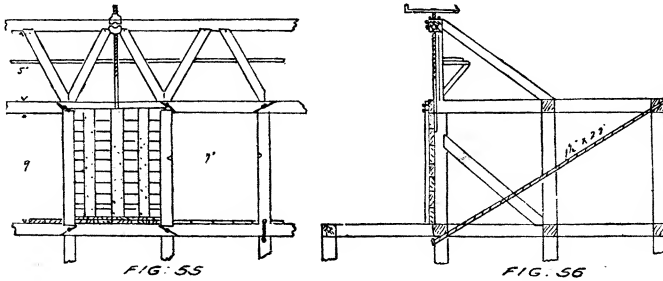
The flow through the scouring sluices is controlled as explained in Article 31.

The regulator should be as close as possible to the scouring sluice, and the sill of the latter should be about three feet lower than the sill of the former. Under these circumstances, when the scouring sluices are opened, the scour takes place across the whole face of the regulator, and washes away any silt or debris likely to obstruct the free flow of the supply into the canal.

Article 30. Regulators.

The Regulator at the head of a canal is also called, Regulating Bridge, Regulating Gate, Regulating Sluice, Head Gate, Head Sluice, Canal Sluice, Head of Canal, etc. To be precise, the regulator is the structure in which are fixed the sluice gates to control the water supply to the canal.

Regulating Gates Del Norte Canal—Cross-Section and Elevation.

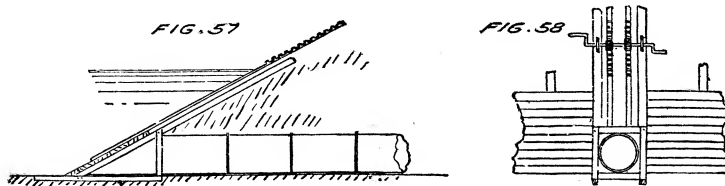


In India, Egypt and Italy, the regulator is sometimes part of a highway bridge, as shown in Figures 27, 32 and 48. In the latter case, however, the use of the covered bridge is confined to the canal officials.

The Myapore Regulating Bridge, of the Upper Ganges

Canal, is shown in Figure 54. The view is taken from the down-stream end of the bridge, so that the sluice-gates, which are located on the up-stream side, are not seen. The sluice-gates of this regulator are shown in Figures 62 and 63. These sluice-gates are twenty feet in width, but regulating sluices are seldom more than six feet in width, on account of the difficulty of working large sluices under a great head of water.

Idaho Canal Regulator Head—Cross-Section and Elevation.



The Regulating Gates of the Del Norte Canal, in Colorado, are shown in Figures 55 and 56, and Figures 57 and 58 show an Idaho Canal Regulator Head for pipe inlets.*

It is usual, on Indian canals, to make the floor of the regulator at head of canal, the zero for levels on the canal.

Article 31. Sluices—Gates—Movable Dams and Shutters.

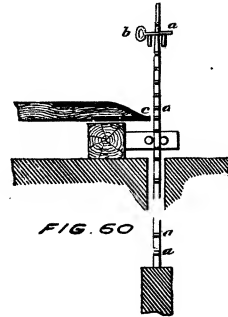
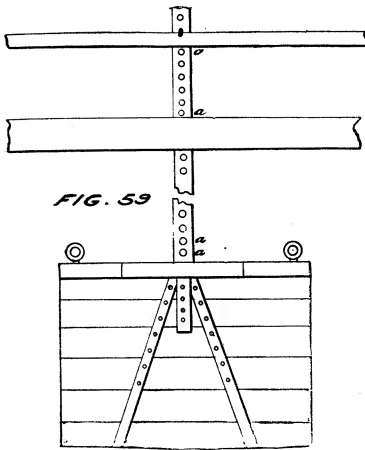
The terms Sluices, Head Sluices, Gates, Sluice Gates and Head Gates, are variously employed to mean the sluices that are fixed in the regulator, and which are used to control the supply of water at the head of a canal. The sluice gates usually used on Irrigation Canals are the sliding sluice gate Figures 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60,

*Figures 55, 56, 57 and 58, are taken from a paper on American Irrigation Engineering, by Mr. H. M. Wilson, M. Am. Soc. C. E., in Vol. 24 of the Transactions of Am. Soc. C. E.

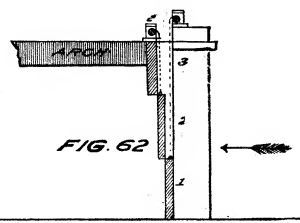
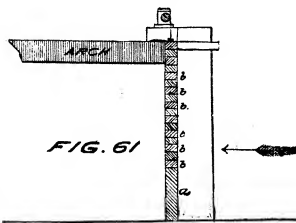
62, 63, 64, 65, 69, 70 and 71, the horizontal plank gate, Figures 20 and 61, and the vertical plank or *needle sluice*. These, and other methods not so generally in use, are explained below.

The gates of the Cavour Canal Regulator, of which there are twenty-one, are fitted with a double set of gates, and the cutwaters of the piers, on the up-stream

SLUICE GATE—CAVOUR CANAL.



SLUICE GATES—INDIAN CANALS.



Old Method on the Jumna.

Improved Method on the Ganges.

side, have grooves besides, for stop-planks. These latter are intended to be used in case of accident or repairs to the gates or regulator.

as far as the navigation extends, and this must be in excess of the quantity required for irrigation.

In India the following canals have provided for the purpose of navigation alone, in addition to the irrigation supply:—On the Sone Canals 600 cubic feet per second, on the Baree Doab Canal 130 cubic feet, and on the Ganges Canal, 400 cubic feet per second.

In fixing the area available for irrigation, all swamp land, sites of towns, roads, etc., not requiring water have to be deducted, and only the remaining area computed, which actually requires water.

Having determined the quantity of water required, the next step is to fix the dimensions and grade of the canal.

Article 6. Depth to Bed-width of Canal, and Dimensions of Canals.

The form of cross-section of a channel is determined in a great measure:—

1. By the purpose for which it is intended.
2. By the material through which it passes.
3. By the topography of the country, that is, whether it passes over a plain or along a steep hillside.

A rectangular channel having a width equal to twice the depth, has a maximum discharging capacity for the same cross-sectional area. The nearer a channel approaches this form the less will be its sectional area, for the same discharge, and, therefore, the more economical will it be.

If the object is to convey water to a certain point without expending any of it until that point is reached, and if the material cut through will bear a high velocity, then it is advisable to adopt a section having a bottom width equal to about twice or three times the depth,

The gates are of wood, braced with iron, as shown in Figures 59 and 60. They are raised by means of an iron bar four by three-quarter inches, and about eighteen feet long, firmly fastened to the center of the upper edge of the gate, and connected with diagonal bars to the lower corners to distribute the force. This bar passes through, to the platform above the highest flood level, from which the gates are worked. The bar is pierced with holes, *a, a*, one and one-half inches in diameter at every two inches of its length, through which, when it is required to raise it, the iron point, *c*, of a crow bar is put, and it is raised up hole by hole, an iron key, *b*, being pressed at the same time through another of these holes, and resting on two cross bars to prevent it slipping down again. One man works the crow-bar while another holds the key. By pulling this out the gate falls at once, and this is important, as it is of consequence sometimes to be able to close the canal quickly.

This arrangement has the great merit of simplicity and it is frequently adopted on American canals.

On some of the regulators in Northern India, a drop gate is used in a simple groove, and sleepers, with a scantling of six inches square, are dropped upon the top of the gate. Both time and labor are required to close or open the bays, although they were only six feet in width. On the Ganges Canal regulator, however, with ten bays, having each a width of twenty feet, on which the safety of the works depended, it was necessary to devise some quicker method to economize the labor required for using the apparatus. Figures 61 and 62, show the old and also the improved method of operating the sluices. Figure 61 represents, in section, the drop gate, *a*, and the sleepers, *b, b, b*, opposed to the up stream current; *a*, represents a gate five feet in depth, which is kept suspended in dry seasons, and is dropped down on the expectation

of a flood; *b, b, b*, show the sleepers or long bars of timber, which when the chains are removed from the gates, are successively dropped upon them until the bay is

CANAL REGULATING APPARATUS.

REGULATING BRIDGE WITH LIFT-GATE & SLEEPERS

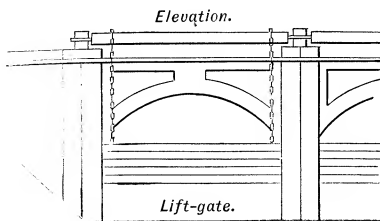


FIG. 63

DROP-GATE FOR DAMS.

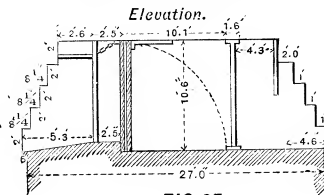


FIG. 67

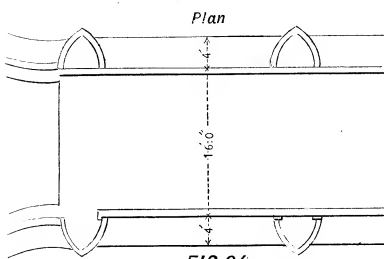


FIG. 64

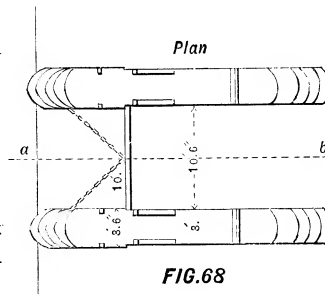


FIG. 68

WINDLASS FOR REGULATING BRIDGE.

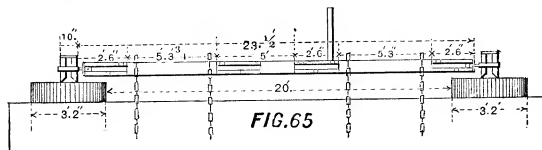


FIG. 65

PLAN OF SLEEPER.

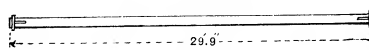


FIG. 66

closed, Figure 61. The time that this takes is equal to eighteen minutes.

Figures 62, 63, 64 and 65, show the improved design gained by the use of the windlasses. The bay or sluice opening, it will be observed, is divided into three series, the lowest shutter having its sill on the floor of the regulator, which is the zero level of the canal; the central and top shutters having their sills elevated in heights of six feet, but working in separate grooves in the piers. The shutter marked 1, Figure 62, is dropped from windlass, 1; that marked 2 from windlass, 2; and that marked 3 consists of sleepers, which are raised and lowered without the aid of a windlass. The three gates, therefore, are quite independent of each other; each has its own sill to rest upon; and the whole can, if necessary, be worked simultaneously. The great advantage of this method will be understood, by supposing that a supply of water not exceeding six feet in depth is required for canal purposes. In this case, the whole of the shutters, 2, and 3, may remain closed; and when floods come on, the whole of the water-way may be stopped by releasing one gate only.

The machinery attached to these gates is of the most simple description, intelligible to the commonest laborer on the works, and not liable to disarrangement.

On some canals in India and also in other countries, Needle Dams, as they are termed, are adopted to control the supply. A horizontal bar of wood or masonry is fixed on the floor of, and across the opening, and a beam of timber is placed vertically over and parallel to this and fitting into sockets in the piers. Planks, called needles, about four inches scantling, are placed vertically in front of these, and are operated from the flooring of the bridge, whether permanent or temporary. This plan has been found to work well in some places. There is always

more leakage through a plank sluice than through a properly constructed framed sliding sluice.

For the openings of *Level Crossings*, *Drop Gates* are sometimes provided. They are retained in their upright position, Figures 67 and 68, by chains against the pressure of the canal water from the inside, and which, on the occurrence of a flood, can be dropped down on the flooring by releasing a catch, and allowing the flood water to pass through the openings. When the flood is over, the gates are raised upright by a movable windlass, the pressure of the water being temporarily taken off by dropping planks into the grooves.

The sluices of the Henares Canal are five in number, each four feet wide. The details of these sluices are shown in Figures 69, 70 and 71.

The gates are made of elmwood, and rest, on their down stream side, against pinewood frames, instead of against the edges of the stone grooves, and thus considerably reducing the friction, and at the same time securing a tight fit and preventing loss of water by leakage.

The gates are raised by ratchets. One man can with tolerable ease raise a gate at a time. The ratchets, pinions, etc., are enclosed in rather heavy cast-iron boxes. This allows of no provision for suddenly dropping the gates in case of floods; but an overfall weir has been built in the left bank of the canal just below, to allow of any flood water above the full supply falling back directly again into the river.

What seems a strange omission is, that the piers of the regulator are not provided with grooves for stop-planks to be used to dam out the water in case of accident or repairs.*

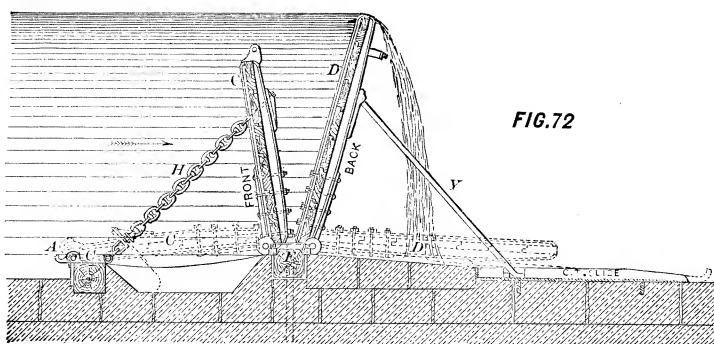
*Lient. (now General) C. C. Scott Moncrieff, *Irrigation in Southern Europe*.

In the old works such as the Godavery, the Kistna, the Cauvery, and other weirs, it was the custom to make sluices with vents only six feet wide, and raised to only about half the height of the flood. In these works the scouring sluices were closed in the dry season, either by barks of timber dropped one after another into the grooves in the pier, or by gates, sliding in vertical grooves, which gates were raised and lowered from above by levers working into long rods attached to the gates. This system necessitated the construction of a masonry superstructure to above the level of the highest flood, which opposed great resistance to the free flow of the floods, and stopped floating *débris* in the river, so that the sluices not unfrequently became choked with trees and brushwood.

As these earlier works were inefficient, in the more modern works, much larger openings have been left, and movable dams have been erected, with no superstructure above the level of the weir, so that floods pass without obstruction over the weirs to the depth, it may be, of eighteen or twenty feet.

That these movable dams may thoroughly perform their duty, it is necessary that they should be large and strongly constructed, and that they should be capable of being operated quickly. It was, therefore, attempted, in Orissa, India, to increase considerably the size of the sluice openings in the weir in the Mahanuddy River, and shutters on the plan adopted by the French engineers in the navigation of the Seine were constructed. The center sluices are divided into ten bays, of fifty feet each, by masonry piers. Each bay is composed of a double row of parallel timber shutters, which are fastened by wrought-iron bolts and hinges to a heavy beam of timber embedded in the masonry floor of the sluices. There are seven upper shutters and seven

lower in each bay. The lower shutters are nine feet in height above the floor, and the upper seven and a-half feet. Each bay is separated from the next one by a stone pier five feet thick, in which the gearing for working the shutters is fixed.



SHUTTERS OF THE MAHANUDEE WEIR.

The up-stream shutter fell up-stream, and the down-stream shutter fell down stream, so that the up-stream shutter, unless intentionally fastened down, would, in times of flood, be raised by the water getting under it and flowing against it, and would thus, automatically, shut itself, and leave the shutter below quite dry. The up-stream shutter was supported up-stream by chain ties. When it became necessary to open the sluice again, of course it would not have been practicable to lower the upper shutter against the head of water standing against it, and, therefore, the lower shutter was raised and strutted up by hand, as men could walk about with safety on the dry, down stream sluice channel, and this left a double row of shutters standing against the stream. The space between these shutters was then allowed to fill with water, and then the upper shutter, being in equilibrium, was allowed to fall back into its place on the bottom of the sluice, while the lower shutter supported the head of water

If, at any time, it was required to open the sluice, the back shutter was lowered by knocking away the feet of the struts which supported it, on the down-stream side, and it then fell down-stream, and the sluice was open.

It has been found that in a dam constructed on this principle, 500 lineal feet of shutters can be easily lowered in one hour, with a head of six feet of water, and that with a similar head an equal length can be closed in twenty-five minutes and that three men (East Indians) standing on the floor are sufficient to knock away the back struts with safety to themselves. The back shutters are not damaged as they fall on the floor, because water escapes as each shutter falls, sufficient to form a cushion for the other shutters to fall into. Twelve men are necessary to lift each of the back shutters into position.*

This kind of shutter has never been raised against a greater head of water than about six feet nine inches. The front shutter is only used when the level of the river has fallen to at least six feet above the floor of the weir, and frequently the engineers hesitate to use the shutters until the water has fallen lower.

The objection to this plan was, that the upper shutter was raised by the stream with such velocity and force that the chain ties supporting it frequently gave way, and the shutter was carried off its hinges. On one occasion the front beam was pulled up from the floor.

Major Allan Cunningham, R. E., has given the following formula, for finding the tension on the chains of shutters similar to those used on the Mahanuddy Weir.†

*Mr. R. B. Buckley, C. E., on *Movable Dams in Indian Weirs*, in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Vol. 60.

†Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Vol. 4, Second Series.

Let b = breadth of shutter in feet.

d = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{depth of shutter} \\ \text{“ “ stream} \end{array} \right\}$ in feet.

v = mid-surface velocity (over shutter when down)
in feet per second.

w = weight of a cubic foot of water = 62.5 lbs.

g = acceleration of gravity = 32.2.

T = total sudden tension of the whole set of
chains in lbs.

a = angle of inclination of chains to shutters
when vertical, that is, at instant when strained
taut.

Total tensile stress in lbs. = $T = \left(d + 4 \frac{v^2}{g} \right) w b d \operatorname{cosec} a$.

Example. In the sluice shutters of the Midnapore Weir, given $b=6'.25$, $d=6'.5$, $v=12'$ per second, $a=55^\circ$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Total tensile stress} &= \left(6.5 + 4 \times \frac{12^2}{32.2} \right) \times 62.5 \times 6.25 \\ &\times 6.5 \times 1.221 = 75,587 \text{ lbs.} \end{aligned}$$

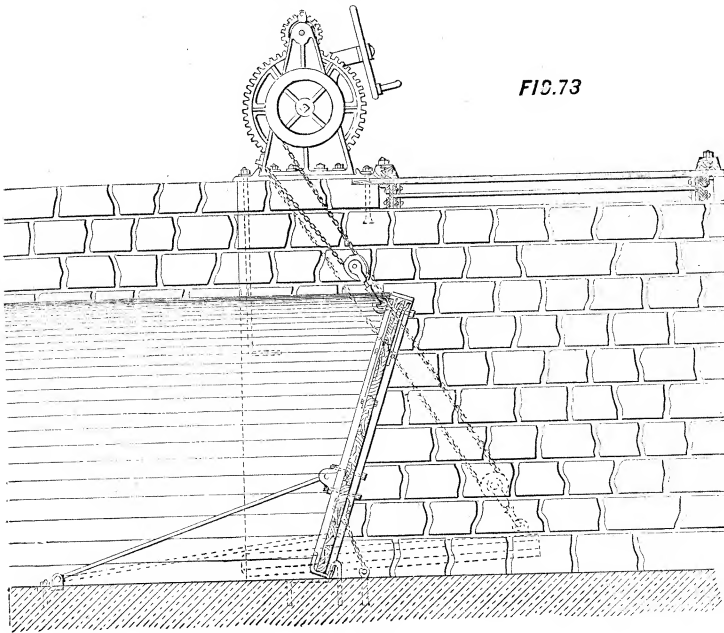
And if there be two chains equidistant from the
“center of percussion” of the shutter, then

Tensile stress of each chain = 37,794 lbs.

In order to diminish the violent shock caused by the rapid rising of the upper shutter, Mr. Fouracres, C. E., made important improvements in the method of working them. Figures 74, 75, 76 and 79, give four views of the shutters of the Sone weir in different positions. Figure 74 shows the sluice “all clear,” with both shutters lying on the floor, the flood being supposed to be running freely between the piers, which are eight feet in height. When it becomes necessary to close the sluice and shut off the water flowing through it, a clutch worked from a handle from the top of the pier is turned, which frees the shutter from the floor, and it then floats par-

tially up from its own buoyancy, when the stream, impinging upon it, raises it to an upright position with great force, shutting up the sluice-way, Figure 75.

MIDNAPORE CANAL.
Tumbler Regulating Gear for Distributaries.

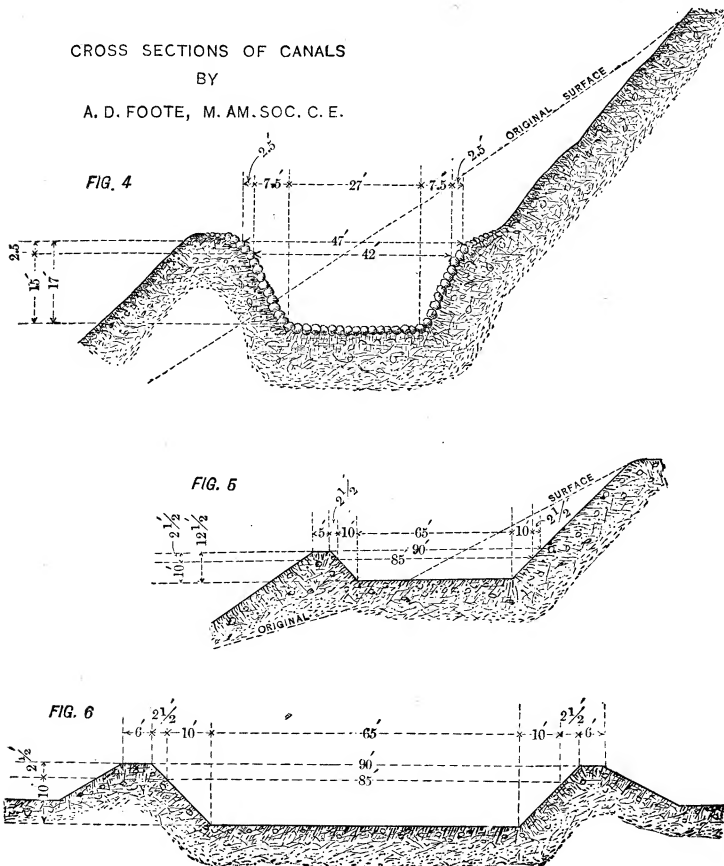


But if a shutter, twenty feet long and eight feet in height, were allowed to come up with such velocity, it would either carry away the piers or be carried away itself. To destroy this sudden shock, Mr. Fouracres fixed to the down-stream side of the upper shutters six hydraulic buffers or rams, which also act as struts for the shutters when in an upright position. These rams are simply pipes with a large plunger inside, as shown in longitudinal section, Figure 77, and cross-section, Figure 78.

The pipes fill with water when the shutter is laying

and with such side slopes as may be required. All the fall available can be used so long as the velocity will not erode the bed or banks, or endanger the works.

On steep hillsides, also, this form of channel can, in some cases, be used with advantage, where the material is good, as already explained. In this case the upper

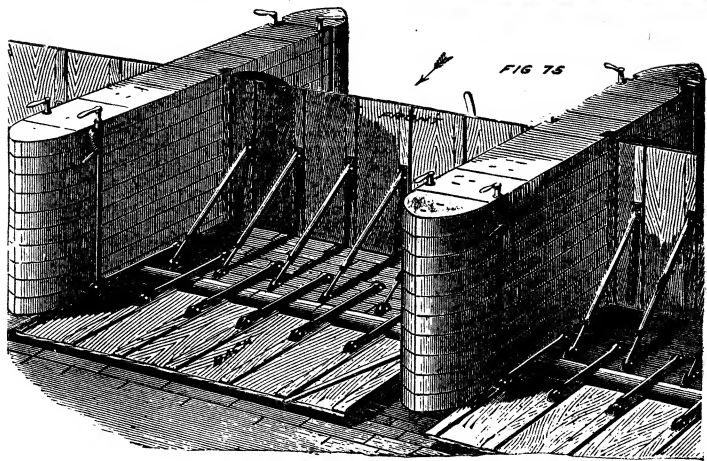
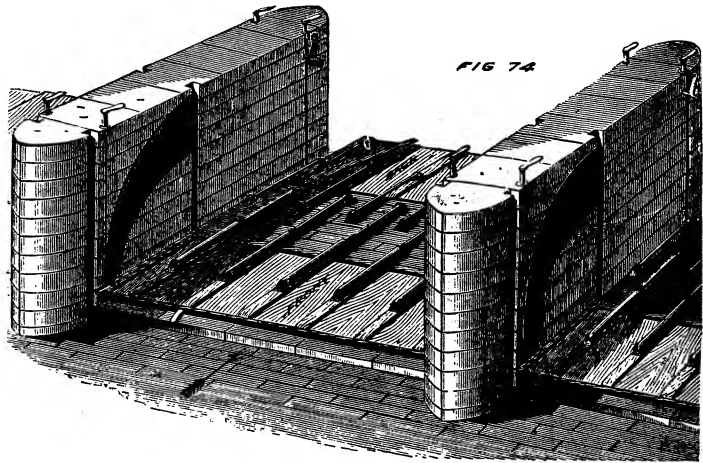


side is usually all in cut and the lower side partly in cut and partly in fill.

If, however, the channel is used to supply other minor

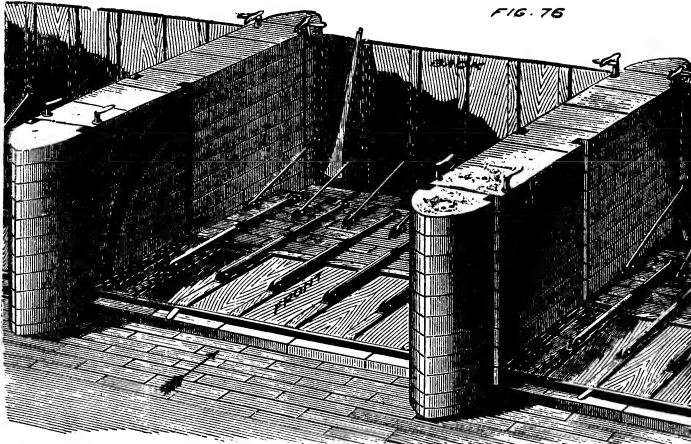
down, and when it commences to rise, the water has to be forced out of them by the plunger in its descent, and, as only a small orifice is provided for the escape of the

FOURACRES' SLUICES AT THE WEIR ON THE RIVER SONE.



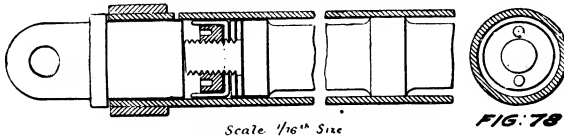
water, the ascent of the shutter, forced up by the stream, is slow and gentle, instead of being violent. The orifices

in the pipes are covered with india-rubber discs to prevent them from being filled with sand or silt.



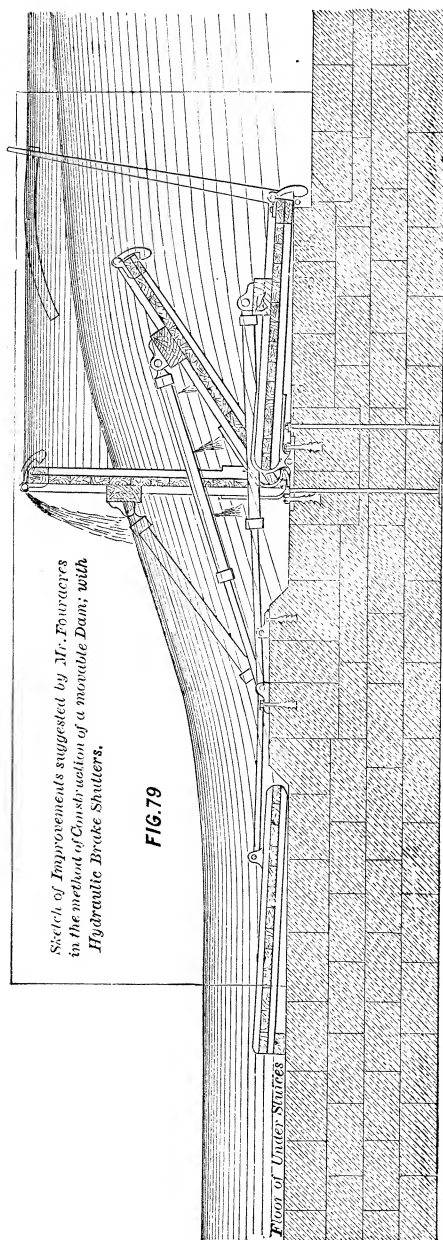
The water is now shut off effectually, as shown in Figure 75; but without other means being taken it would be impossible to open the sluice again, as it could not

FIG 77



SECTION OF HYDRAULIC BRAKE HEAD. SONE-WEIR.

be forced up-stream. The back shutter is therefore provided below it, as shown in this same view. This lower or back shutter is so arranged that it can be lifted up by hand and placed upright, ties being placed to support it, as shown in Figure 76. The water is then allowed to fill the space between the two shutters, and the upper one can then be thrown down on the floor again, but the lower one is held up by ties which are hinged to it at one-third of its height, and by this means it is "bal-



*Sketch of Improvements suggested by Mr. Fourcres
in the method of Construction of a movable Dam, with
Hydraulic Brake Shutters.*

FIG. 79

CROSS SECTION THROUGH CENTRE OF PIER

anced," and resists the pressure on it until the water rises to its top edge, when it loses its equilibrium and falls over, thus opening the sluice again.

The sluices can be left to fall of themselves if the river rises in the night; or, if it is thought not expedient, they can be made fast by a clutch on the pier-head, as shown in Figures 74, 75 and 76. By these expedients, these large sluice-ways, twenty feet broad and eight feet deep, can be shut off or opened as required, with the greatest facility and expedition, and the whole set of twenty-five sluices can be opened in a few minutes, and when opened they can pass through them anything that the river brings down, without danger to the wier.*

Figure 79 shows the upper shutter as it is being raised by the current through the sluice-way.

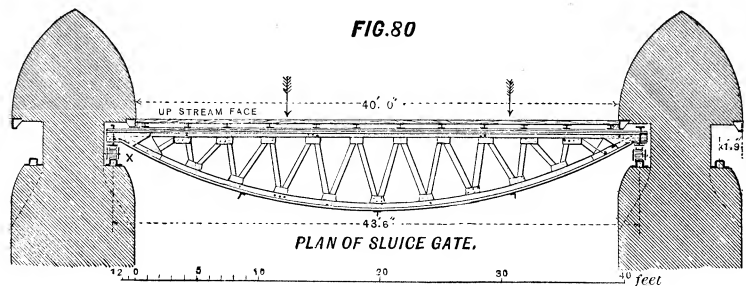
During the hot season, when it is of importance to utilize all the available water, all leaks between the shutters and piers are calked with hemp and straw, to prevent loss of water by leakage.

It has been found in practice on the Sone Weir, that the shutters can be safely lifted, without shock, against a head of ten feet of water, and they have been frequently worked under these conditions. The greatest head against which other shutters on any other weir have been lifted is believed to be about six feet nine inches only. It is stated to be a sight worth seeing to watch a stream of water twenty feet broad and eight or nine feet deep, flowing with a velocity of seventeen to twenty feet a second through the sluices, with a difference of ten feet between the water level above and below the sluices, to be suddenly closed by a single gate twenty feet long by ten feet deep. The water, when the shutter reaches the vertical, rises in a

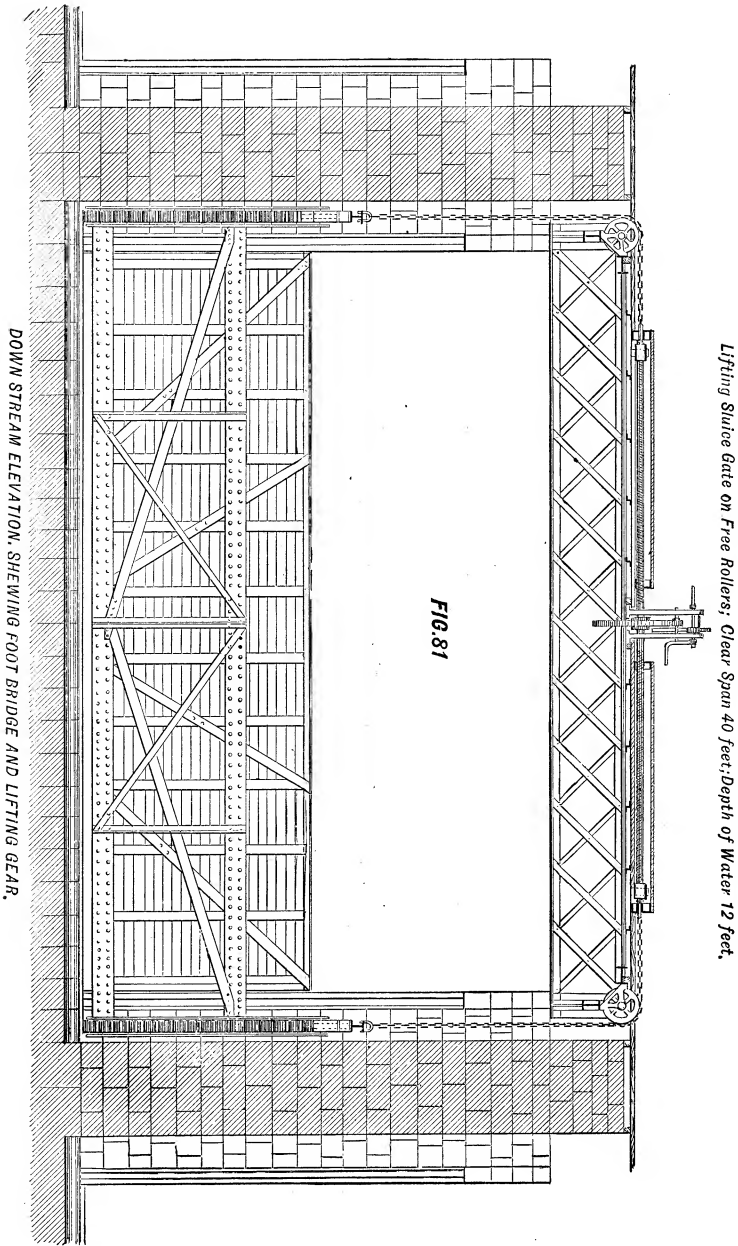
**Engineering*. September 10th, 1873.

wave one or two feet above the top of the shutters and piers, and flows over for a few seconds before it sinks to the mean level of the stream.

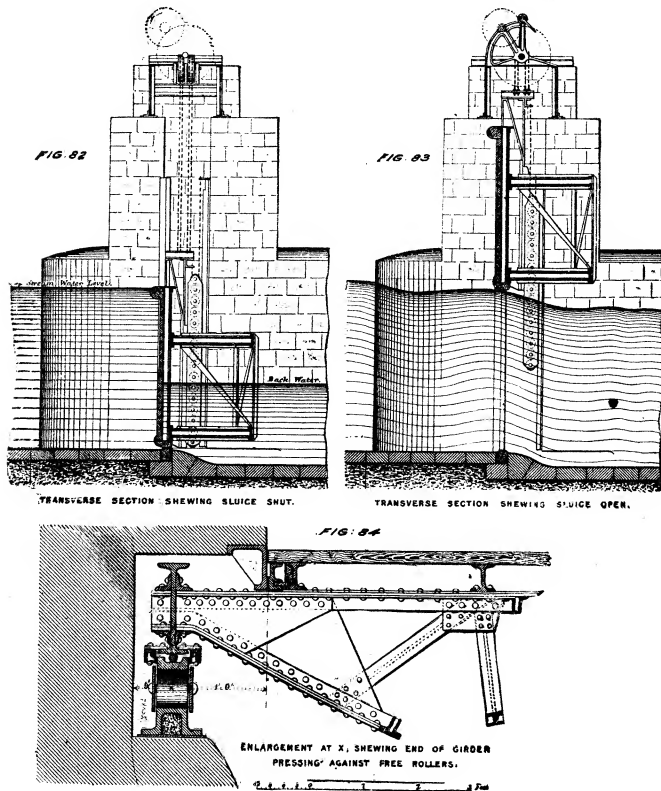
In the Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Vol. 60, Mr. F. M. G. Stoney, C. E., has given a design for a large span lifting sluice, shown in Figures 80, 81, 82, 83 and 84. This is inserted here to show a design that in certain circumstances it may be very advantageous to adopt, where it is necessary to have a large opening.



The clear span was forty feet, and the depth of water twelve feet. The gates were designed to be lifted twelve feet. The up-stream face was vertical, and the gate simply fitted at its ends against planed guides in the pier faces, the contact being kept close by self-adjusting slips, and the gate was free to press down fairly on a level sill. The gate was simple. It was composed of two main girders, placed equally at each side of the center of pressure; cross vertical beams connected these girders, and carried the sheeting and the top of the gate. The static pressure was eighty-one tons. The weight of the gate was eighteen and one-half tons, and the moving load, including rollers, was roughly, twenty tons. The whole was arranged to be lifted, by a pair of strong right and left screws. These screws were placed hori-



zonally on a foot bridge, and acted on large nuts traveling in guides, each nut pulled chains which passed over large pulleys down to the gate, where they were sym-



metrically grouped round its center of gravity. The weight of this sluice-gate, foot bridge and all, was only twenty-seven tons.

Article 32. The Loss of Water by Percolation Under a Weir.

While it is not practicable, by direct experiment, to find the quantity of water lost by percolation through a sandy bed under a weir, still an approximation can be found to this loss by the method given below:—

By D'Arcy's experiments the discharge of a fourteen-inch pipe filled at the bottom with sand, to a depth of from two feet to six feet, was carefully ascertained under heads ranging from three feet to forty-six feet. Dupuit, in summarizing these and other experiments, states that the discharge is directly proportional to the head, and inversely proportional to the thickness of sand, and that for one meter head and one meter thickness of filtering material, the rate of percolation is twenty-six cubic meters per day for coarse sand, and 4.5 cubic meters for the finest sand. To check percolation, then, coarse sand is required as a matrix to give stability, and fine sand to fill up the interstices. With these materials, as Brunel found at the Thames Tunnel, the water will run through at first, but soon stop.

To give an instance of the application of D'Arcy's experiments, let us find the loss by percolation under the Godavery Anicut or Weir, Figure 44. A description of this anicut has already been given in Article 28. This anicut rests upon a bed of coarse sand of unknown depth, through which an incessant percolation takes place, the water passing under the anicut, and rising to the surface of the river again, below it. There is, at the same time, a constant draught, by the three main irrigation canals, of the greater part of the available supply entering the pool above the anicut. Yet the water only falls a foot or two below the crest, in the hot-

test weather. There is a certain area of the surface of the bed of the river, above the dam, through which leakage takes place. The leakage is greatest near the dam, and gets less as the distance from the dam increases up stream. We have no means of knowing to what distance the appreciable leakage extends. Let us assume one hundred feet as a reasonable distance, and, as the total length of the anicut is 11,866 feet, we have 1,186,600 square feet of porous, sandy surface constantly leaking under a head of twelve feet to fourteen feet. Notwithstanding this immense area of porous surface, the water level in the pool above the anicut falls but little, though the total supply in the river may be less than 3,000 cubic feet per second.*

The mean distance the water would have to traverse the sand, Figure 44, in order to pass from above to below the anicut, upon the preceding hypothesis, would be about eighty meters, and since the head of water is, say, four meters, the velocity of filtration, by Dupuit's formula, already stated, with a constant of fifteen cubic meters, that is a mean of the coarse and fine sand, would be:—

$$\frac{15 \times 4}{80} = \frac{3}{4} \text{ meter per day} = \frac{1}{3511} \text{ feet per second.}$$

Now this velocity multiplied by the area is:—

$$\frac{1186600}{3511} = 338 \text{ cubic feet per second or about 11 per}$$

cent. of 3,000 cubic feet per second, which is the ordinary flow down the river in the dry season.

We thus see that the loss of water is not great, even under the most favorable conditions for percolation,

**Engineering*, April 28th, 1876.

with a large area and clean sand. Under ordinary circumstances, however, the interstices of the sand, above the weir, and near the surface of the bed of the river, get filled up with fine silt, and a layer of silt is formed on the bed and banks of the river, thus materially preventing the percolation.

Article 33. Bridges—Culverts.

Only a few brief remarks will be made with reference to Bridges. There are several very good works published treating very fully on this subject.

Ordinary highway bridges are required wherever roads cross the canal, to accommodate the traffic of the country.

In America, bridges on Irrigation Canals are usually constructed of timber, but in India, Egypt and Italy, they are as a rule constructed of masonry.

Bridges are sometimes combined with and form part of Regulators and Falls. There is no difficulty about the water-way of canal bridges, as the regulators and escapes enable the high water in the canal to be always kept within the limits of its intended full supply.

The Culverts for passing the drainage of the country under the canal, are, in America, of the usual timber box-culvert type.

The culvert should be amply large to pass away the flood-water, without causing much heading up above its top. Before fixing its size, it is advisable to have a rough survey made of the area draining into the culvert, and then, assuming a heavy rainfall, the number of cubic feet of water per second reaching the culvert can be found. Having fixed the grade of the culvert, we have the grade and discharge from which the required area can be found, as explained in the *Flow of Water*.

channels with water for irrigation, its depth should be small in proportion to its width, in order that, when the supply fluctuates, the surface of the water may be near the surface of the land to be irrigated.

For rectangular channels, constructed of masonry or concrete, the maximum discharging channel of given area is one with a bed-width equal to twice the depth.

The diagrams, figures 4 to 11, show cross-sections of some existing canals in America, India and Spain.

In the *List of Irrigation Canals*, Article 10, the proportion of depth to width can be seen by inspection. It will be noticed in the Indian canals that the proportion of depth to width is less than in European and American canals. The greater number of the Indian canals flow through sandy loam, and their mean velocity seldom exceeds three feet per second. In order to arrange for a low velocity, and also to keep the surface of the water in the canal, at all periods of ordinary supply, at such a level as to be able to irrigate the adjacent land, the depth has been made from one-tenth to one-twentieth of the width, except in the case of the Agra Canal, where it is one-seventh.

On the Western Jumna Canal, an old canal in India, the water, in the course of years, formed for itself a channel whose depth was found, by a series of trials, to be about one-thirteenth of its width. After this, the proportion of depth to width fixed on construction for the following canals in India was: on the Baree Doab Canal 1 in 15, on the Sutlej Canal 1 in 14, and on the Sone Canals 1 in 20.

A rule has been proposed to make the bottom width equal in feet, to the depth in feet plus one, squared.

Mr. T. Login, who was for many years an executive engineer on the Ganges Canal, has given the following table, showing approximately the sections and slopes,

Myers has given a formula for finding approximately the required area of the culvert. It is:—

$$a = c \sqrt{\text{Drainage area in acres.}}$$

where a = cross-sectional area of culvert in square feet,
and c is a variable co-efficient having the following values:—

$c = 1.0$ for slightly rolling prairie;

$c = 1.5$ for hilly ground;

$c = 4.0$ for mountainous and rocky ground.

It may appear that this is going too much into computations to design a simple culvert, but surely the results from these are, as a rule, better than mere guess work. The computations would take but a few minutes. A defective culvert, causing a breach in a canal during the irrigation season, would do a great deal of damage.

Article 34. Aqueducts—Flumes.

Aqueducts, usually called Flumes in America, are used to carry a canal over a river or other obstruction. Before adopting an aqueduct, it is advisable to investigate whether, by altering the course of the river, the latter can be made to run clear of the former. A very instructive example of this was the diversion of the Chukkee torrent on the Baree Doab Canal, in India, for the passage of which costly works were originally designed. The Chukkee, at the time of the commencement of the canal works, had two outlets. Just above the crossing point of the canal, the main channel divided; one, the larger branch, running into the river Beas, the other into the river Ravee. This latter was embanked across at the bifurcation by bowlder dams, and spurs of the same material, protected at the extremity by masonry

revetments. By these means the whole of the water was forced to flow into the Beas, and the expense of the works for the canal crossing saved.

When, however, a canal meets a river that cannot be diverted, there are three cases under one of which it may have to be crossed:

First. When the river is on a lower level than the canal.

Second. When the river is on the same level as the canal.

Third. When the river is on a higher level than the canal.

In the first case the canal is carried over the river by an *Aqueduct* or *Flume*.

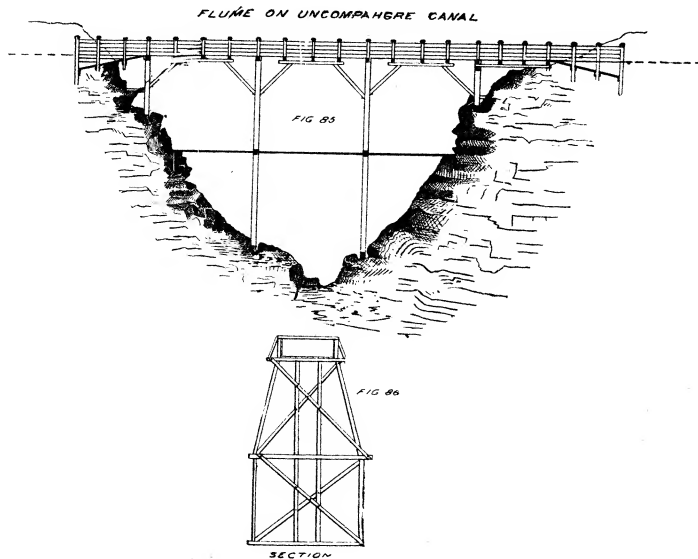
In the construction of an aqueduct there are two things to attend to of vital importance. The first is that the waterway, under the aqueduct, should be amply large, in order to pass the greatest floods with safety, and the second is that the junction of the aqueduct and the earthen embankment at its ends, should be made water-tight.

For want of ample provision for flood water the Kali Nuddee Aqueduct on the Lower Ganges Canal in India, was destroyed on January 17th, 1885, causing a loss, not only for its reconstruction, but also on account of the stoppage of irrigation.

Every practical method should be employed to find the flood discharge of the river, in order to have several checks on the results, and sufficient waterway should be provided to pass this flood water through the aqueduct, without endangering its stability in any way. For information on this subject see the articles entitled *Flow of Water*.

The embankments at the ends of the masonry aque-

duct over the river Dora Baltea, on the line of the Cavour Canal, in Italy, leaked very much at first. To remedy this the embankment was dammed up at the lower end and filled with water to a depth of about three feet. Several boats were then employed, throwing in clay all over the bed. After a time the water was turned off, and cattle driven into the muddy channel, which was turned over and worked into puddle. Again it was filled with water, and where filtration was observed, more clay was thrown in, and the puddling process repeated; and so on, till after nearly a year the filtration had entirely ceased.



For purposes of economy a high velocity is usually given to an aqueduct.

An aqueduct differs from a bridge in having to carry a water channel over it, instead of a road or railway, but, unlike the latter, it is not constantly subjected to the jars of a suddenly applied load.

Aqueducts are usually constructed of masonry, iron or wood, or a combination of them. The Solani Aqueduct in India, and the Dora Baltea Aqueduct in Italy, are two very fine specimens of masonry aqueducts.

A great deal of water is lost through the use of wooden troughs in flumes. When they are dry, the action of the sun causes numerous cracks which it is afterwards impossible to keep water-tight.

Figures 85 and 86 show an elevation and section of a flume on the Uncompahgre Canal in Colorado. Figures 87 and 88 show plan and section of the Big Drop on the Grand River Canal in Colorado. This drop shows another *peculiarity* of American engineering. Before reaching the drop the section of the channel is thirty feet wide by four feet deep. At the drop it descends thirty-five feet in 135 feet, and at the bottom the water is discharged against a boom of solid timbers and thrown backward in a penstock, whence it escapes over a rifflled floor.

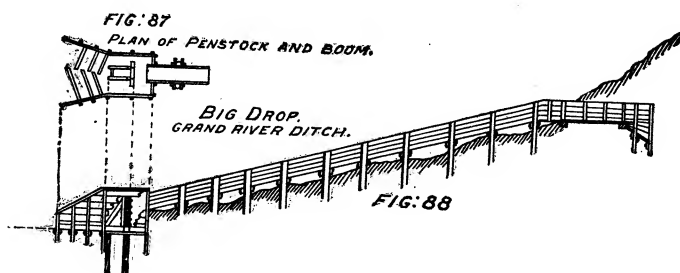
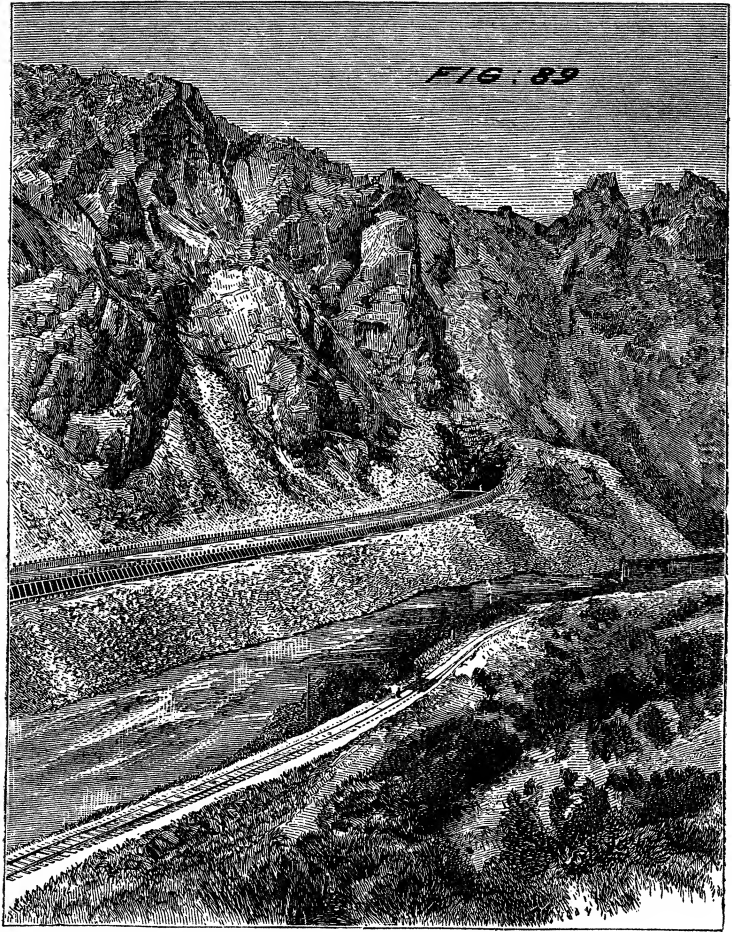


Figure 89 is a view on the Platte Canal (High Line), showing the flume issuing from tunnel, and Figure 90 is a view of flume of Platte Canal (High Line, Colorado), crossing Plum Creek at Acequia. Mr. P. O'Meara, C. E., in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, volume 73, describes flumes constructed in Colorado. The North Poudre Canal is carried from the dam

to the mouth of the cañon, through a series of tunnels and flumes, these latter supported on shelves and gulch bridges.



Platte River, with Platte Canal, Colorado.

The shelves are cut, for the most part, in the solid rock, and are nine feet wide at the base. The flume which rests on them, as on the bridges, is eight feet

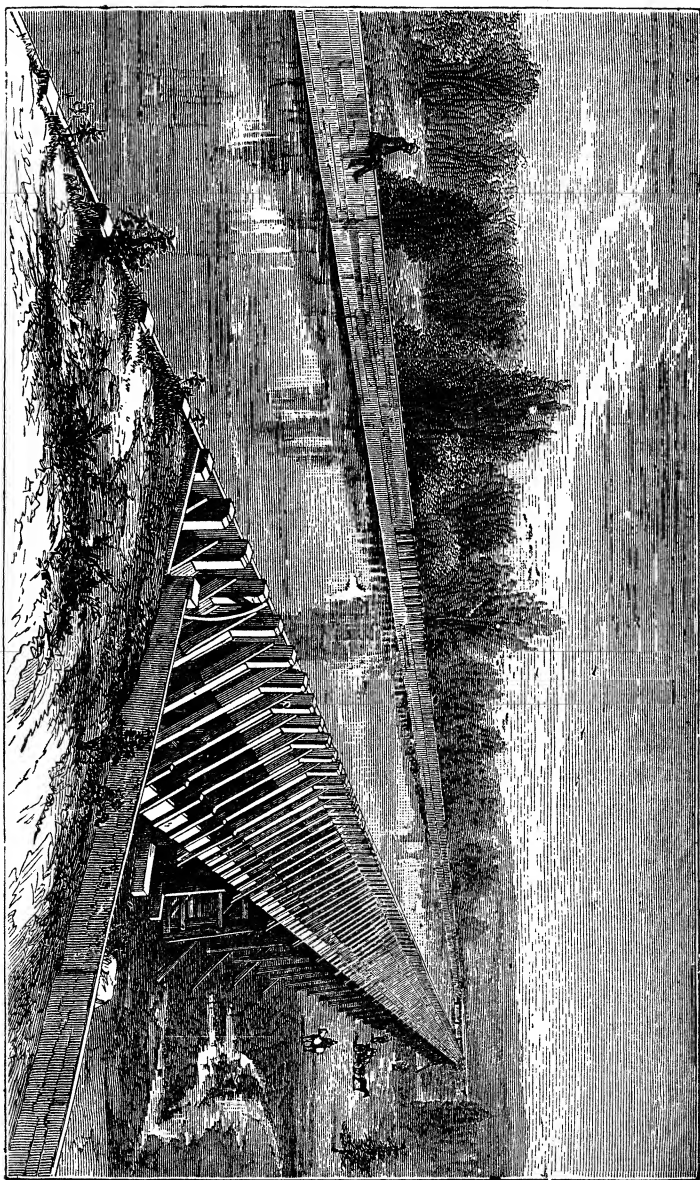


Fig. 90. Aqueduct of Platte Canal (High Line) Crossing Plum Creek at Acequia.

wide by six feet deep in the clear, and projects a little over the edge, a few running beams and upright props being occasionally used to support it where fissures occur. Lower down, where the canal crosses some creeks or rivulets, the flumes are twelve feet wide by four feet three inches deep in the clear, to accord better with the section of the canal in the open plain, which is twenty feet wide at the bottom and four feet three inches deep. Precautions are taken to secure the sides of the canal for a short distance from the ends of the flume against the effects of increased speed in the water, and a slight allowance is made at these points in the general gradient.

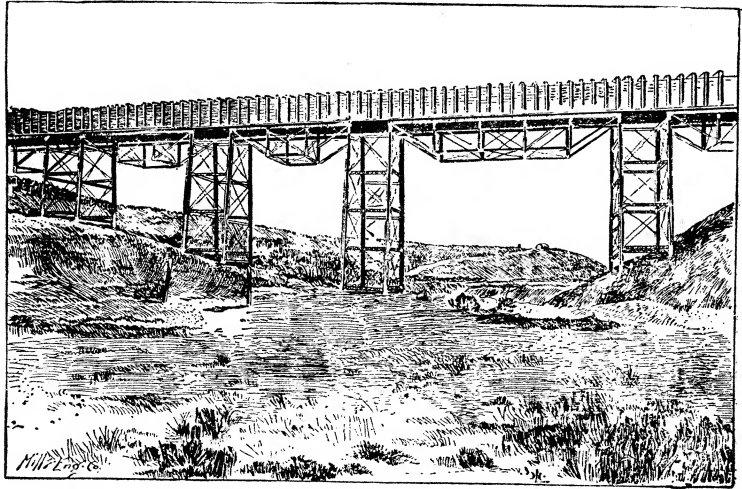


Fig. 91. High Flume over Malad River, West Branch, Utah.

The whole of the flume work is carefully calked with oakum. In earthwork the ends of the flumes are raked off to a slope one and one-half to one, and the spaces between the ties and posts, for about twelve feet back, are filled with retentive clay. Where the flume terminates in a rock cutting or tunnel, the side of the flume near the end and the rock is built up with cement masonry, for

three or four feet in length, or with two faces of masonry filled between with clay.

Mr. O'Meara further stated that the soil was very stony and pervious to water, and therefore, it was found necessary to use wooden flumes instead of embankments to carry the water. In one case about a quarter of a mile of the North Poudre Canal was embanked, and water let into it, and the consequence was that nearly all of it was carried away, and a flume of wood had to be inserted, and calked well to prevent the water from escaping.

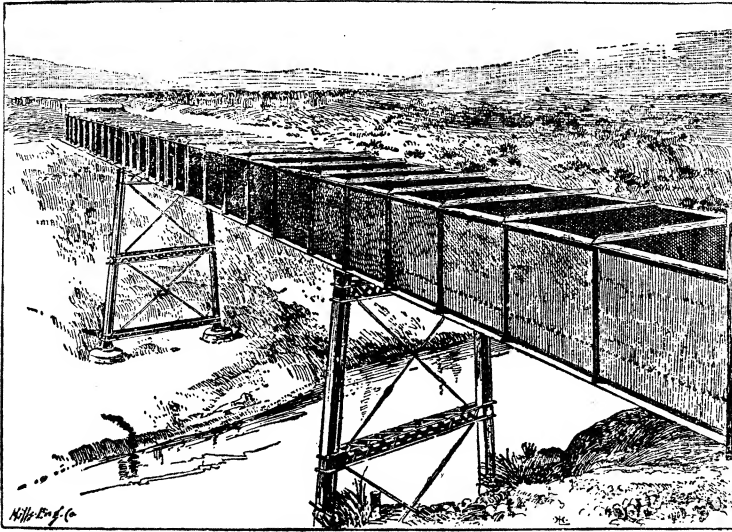


Fig. 92. Iron Flume over Malad River, Corinne Branch, Utah.

Figure 91 shows the high iron flume over the Malad river at the ninth mile of the Bear River Canal in Utah. This flume is 378 feet in length and eighty feet in maximum height, supported on iron trestles, the river span of which is seventy feet. The trough of this flume is constructed of wood. It is twenty feet wide in the clear and is intended to carry seven feet in depth of

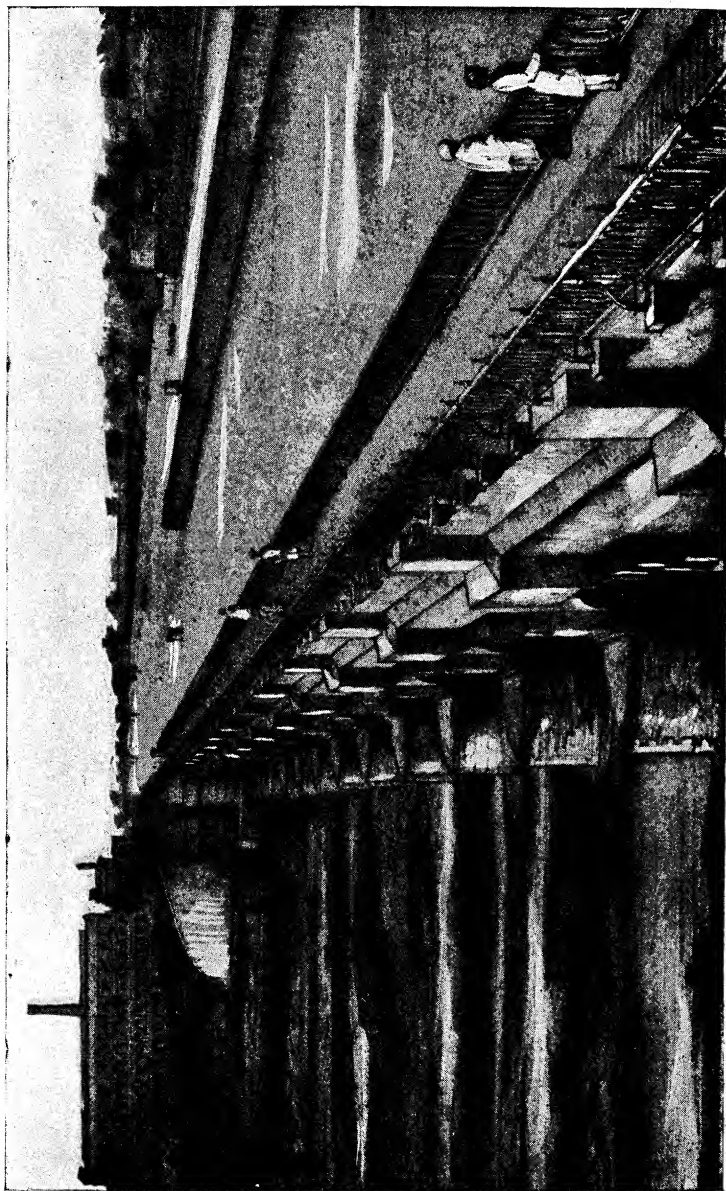


Fig. 93. View of Solani Aqueduct, Ganges Canal.

water, and the approaches to the iron trestle are also wooden flumes of similar dimensions, and 500 feet in length.

Figure 92 shows the iron flume over the Malad river on the Corinne Branch of the Bear River Canal. This flume is founded on piles and iron cylinders filled with concrete. This flume consists of three principal bents from twenty-five to sixty feet in length, the peculiarity of its construction being that the superstructure forming the bridge itself is of iron plate girders and constitutes the flume which carries the water.*

Probably the most celebrated aqueduct in existence is the Solani Aqueduct, near Roorkee Civil Engineering College, on the line of the Ganges Canal. A brief description of this work is herewith given.

The work by which the canal is carried across the valley of the Solani river, consists of three parts.

First. The embankment of earth and brickwork, 10,713 feet in length, from the high land on the upstream side of the canal to the Solani river. This is shown in cross-section in Figure 94.

Second. The *masonry* aqueduct over the Solani river, 920 feet in length.

Third. An embankment 2,723 feet in length, similar to Figure 94.

The earthen embankment or platform is raised to an average height of sixteen and a half feet above the country, having a base of 350 feet in width, and a breadth at top of 290 feet. On this platform the banks of the canal are formed, thirty feet in width at top, and twelve feet in depth. These banks are protected from the action of the water by lines of masonry retaining walls, formed in

*The views and descriptions of the two flumes on the Bear River Canals are taken from the Irrigation Age of July 1, 1891.

probably best adapted for irrigation canals and water courses for Northern India.

The velocities are computed by Dwyer's formula—

$$v = 0.92\sqrt{2fr}$$

Where r = hydraulic mean depth in feet.

“ f = fall in feet, of surface of water per mile.

“ v = mean velocity in feet per second.

TABLE 1. Giving dimensions and grades of canals.

Cubic feet of dis- charge per second.	SECTIONS.				SECTIONS.			Side slopes of chan- nels.
	v Mean velocity in feet per second.....	Breadth of channel at bottom in feet.....	Depth of water with full supply in feet..	Slope of surface of water in inches per mile.....	Breadth in feet at bot- tom.....	Depth of water with full supply in feet..	Slope of surface of water in inches per mile.....	
50	2.	2½	4	15	2	4½	16½	1 to 1
100	2.25	4½	4¾	14½	4	5¼	16	1 to 1
250	2.5	15	5	13½	13½	5½	14⅝	1 to 1
500	2.75	27½	5½	13	25	6	14⅞	1 to 1
1000	3.	50	6	13	45	6¾	14⅞	1 to 1
2000	3.25	77½	7	13	70	7¾	14⅞	1½ to 1
3000	3.5	95	8	12¾	85	8½	14	1½ to 1
4000	3.5	121½	8½	12¾	110	9½	14	1½ to 1
5000	3.67	147½	8½	12½	130	9½	13¾	1½ to 1
6000	3.75	170	8¾	12½	150	9¾	13¾	1½ to 1

While the dimensions given in the above table are, doubtless, suitable for the locality mentioned, still the slopes assigned will not give the velocities stated in the

steps, extending along their entire length, or for nearly two and three-quarter miles.

The river itself is crossed by a masonry aqueduct, which is not merely the largest work of the kind in India, but one of the most remarkable for its dimensions in the world. The total length of the Solani Aqueduct is 920 feet. Its clear waterway is 750 feet, in fifteen arches of fifty feet span each. The breadth of each arch is 192 feet. Its thickness is five feet; its form is that of a segment of a circle, with a rise of eight feet. The piers rest upon blocks of masonry, sunk twenty feet deep in the bed of the river, being cubes of twenty feet side, pierced with four wells each, and under-sunk in the usual manner. These foundations, throughout the whole structure, are secured by every device that knowledge or experience could suggest; and the quantity of masonry sunk beneath the surface is scarcely less than that visible above it. The piers are ten feet thick at the springing of the arches, and twelve and a half feet in height. The total height of the structure above the valley of the river is thirty-eight feet. It is not; therefore, an imposing work when viewed from below, in consequence of this deficiency of elevation; but when viewed from above, and when its immense breadth is observed, with its line of masonry channel, nearly three miles in length, the effect is most striking.

The water-way of the masonry channel is formed in two separate channels, each eighty-five feet in width; the side walls are eight feet thick and twelve feet deep, the depth of water at full supply being ten feet. A continuation of the earthen aqueduct, about three-quarters of a mile in length, connects the masonry work with the high bank at Roorkee, and brings the canal to the termination of the difficult portion of its course.

The aqueduct has carried over 7,000 cubic feet of

water per second, but usually carries between 5,000 and 6,000 cubic feet per second.

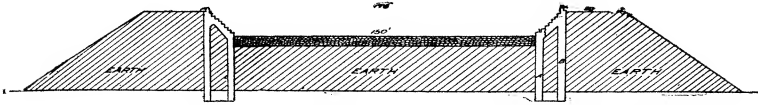
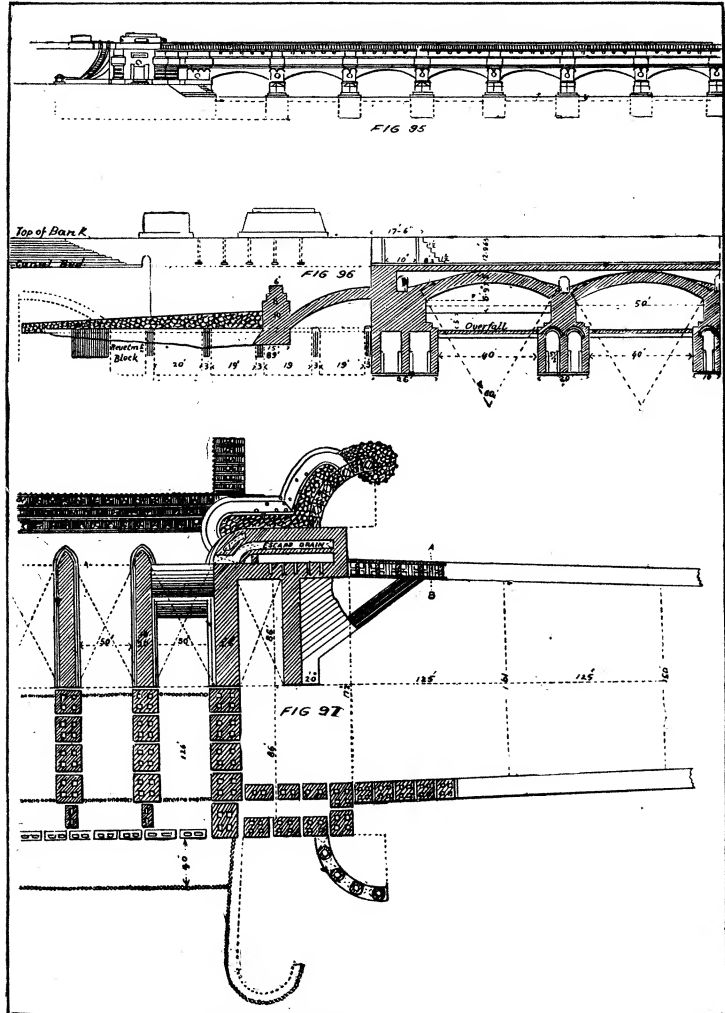


Fig. 94. Cross-Section of Solani Aqueduct Embankment.

Captain J. Crofton, R. E., in his Report on the Ganges Canal, states that: "The aqueduct over the Solani torrent has stood well. The state of the bed of the torrent above and below shows that the waterway under the aqueduct is just sufficient and no more; there is no hole or retrogression of levels down stream, and little or no silt has been deposited except under the side arches, where a certain quantity would naturally be left on the subsidence of floods. The flooring of the canal channel above requires some waterproof covering; dripping still continues through the arches, though less than at first, the effect of which has been to loosen a considerable surface of the outside plaster, and here and there bricks of an inferior description (of which it is next to impossible to prevent a few finding their way into so great a mass of brickwork) may be seen slowly decomposing from the same cause. It was at one time supposed that the pores of the brickwork would gradually fill up and so stop the percolation, but the fact is, that even the very best of brickwork is of too absorbent a nature to be proof by itself against the constant pressure of a head of water even much less than that passing over this aqueduct.

"A breach occurred some years since along a short portion of the right bank revetment, Figure 94, from the heeling over inwards, towards the channel of the wall, A, from a point some four or five feet below the level of the bed. The channel here had been considerably

deepened, and the accident occurred just after the canal had been laid dry. The outer wall, *B*, was very little, if at all affected.



Solani Aqueduct, Ganges Canal.

“From the investigation made immediately after its occurrence, it appears to have been caused by the pres-

sure of the earth filling, between the walls, which had become saturated by the percolation through the brickwork. When the counteracting pressure of the water in the canal was removed, the thin wall gave way, there being no weep holes through it by which the drainage from the backing could find an exit. The bed all along between these revetments was to have been protected by a layer of bowlders; this, however, has been deferred from economical motives, the actual protecting work now being confined to a sloping talus of bowlders and brick kiln rubbish, thrown down from time to time, along the foot of the revetments."

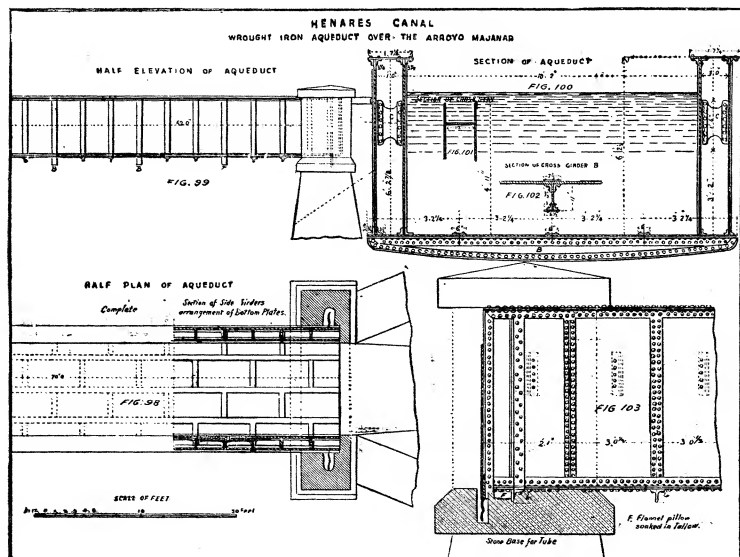
"The Henares Canal* is carried over the Majanar Arroyo or torrent, in an iron aqueduct which is worthy of admiration on account of its perfect fitness, both in design and construction, for the work it has to perform. The discharge of the canal at full supply is 177 feet per second."

Full details are given in Figures 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103.

The iron trough is seventy feet long, with a clear bearing of sixty-two feet. Its waterway is 10.17 feet wide, the sides being composed of iron box-girders 6.2 feet deep. The total weight of iron in the trough is 27.3 tons, and the weight of water when full is ninety tons. Each girder is calculated to bear 200 tons, equally distributed, or the whole trough 400 tons. The aqueduct is absolutely free from leakage, which was most ingeniously prevented. The ends of the trough rest on stone templates. Four inches from each end a pillow, composed of long strips of felt carpet, about nine inches wide, soaked in tallow, is let into the stone right across, below the breadth of the trough, which pressing fully

*Lieut. (now General) C. C. Scott Monerieff, R. E., Irrigation in Southern Europe.

on it, makes a water-tight joint without taking the bearing off the stonework. Still further to make things secure, a recess about one foot deep and four inches wide, is cut in the stone all around the bottom and sides. In this rests a lead flushing, riveted to the trough like a

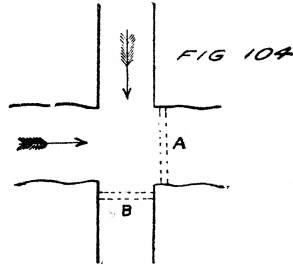


fringe. Round this lead is poured in, a hot mixture of pitch, gas tar, and fine sand, forming a water-tight joint, and yet flexible enough to allow a slight play, as required by the expansion and contraction of the iron trough. The result produced is perfect in preventing the loss of water by leakage.

Article 35. Level Crossings.

The second case, mentioned at page 151, where a canal crosses a river on the same level, is called a Level Crossing. Small drainage channels carrying small quantities of silt, may be passed into the canal without doing

any material damage. If the river, or torrent, is of large dimensions, and brings down a great volume of water at a high velocity, the above method will not answer; as



Level Crossing, Ganges Canal.

the water loaded with silt would in some places choke up the canal bed and cause the water to overflow its bank, and in other places it would erode the banks and cause breaches in them. Arrangements have, therefore, to be made to pass the flood water across the canal, which will be briefly explained, and will be understood from the following description of a level crossing shown in plan, in Figure 104:—

B is a regulating bridge across the canal, provided with the usual sluice-gates. *A* is a dam across the channel of the torrent, provided with flood-gates. Under ordinary circumstances, *A* is closed and *B* is open, so that the canal water flows along its own channel as usual. But when the torrent is in flood, then *A* must be open and *B* closed, so that the flood water may cross the canal and run down its own channel. The quantity of water flowing past the dam is likely to be, on some occasions, equal to the flood discharge of the torrent, in addition to the full supply of the canal.

The bed and banks of the canal and torrent, as far as they are exposed to the erosive action of the water, must be paved or otherwise protected, to prevent them from being injured by the action of the water.

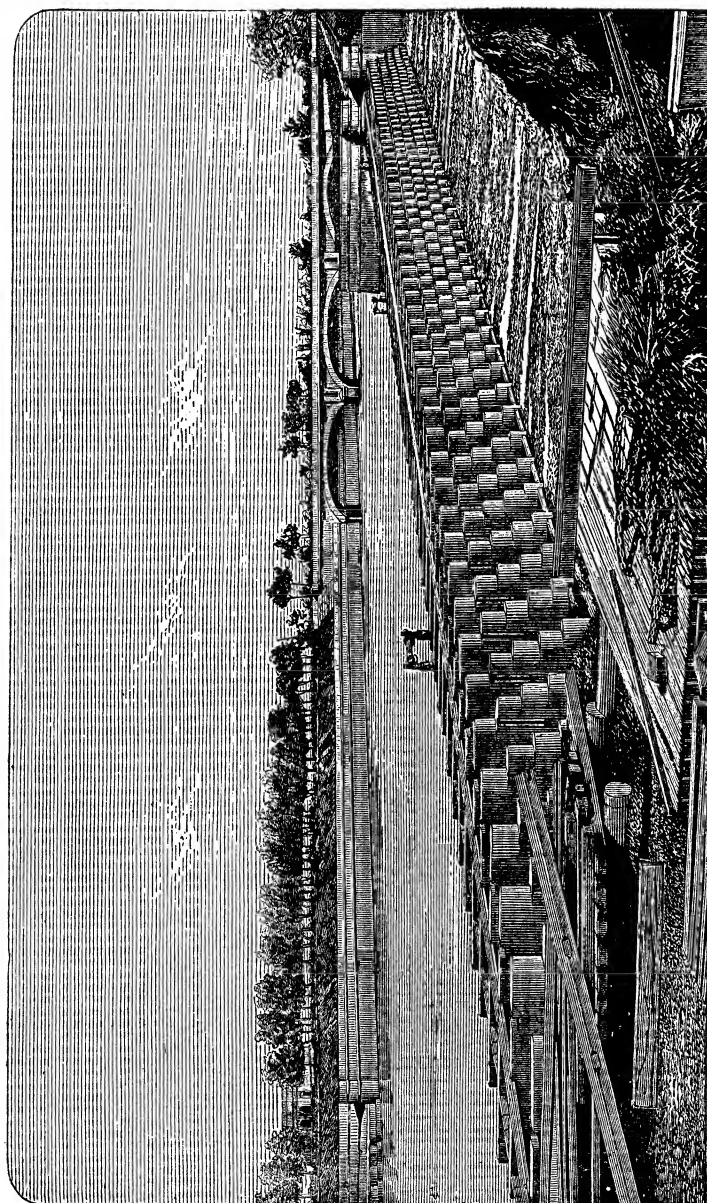


Fig. 105. View of Dhunowree Level Crossing, Ganges Canal.

A very good example of a level crossing is at Dhunowree, on the Upper Ganges Canal, where the Rutmoo torrent is passed. Figure 105 shows a view of the bridge and dam at this crossing.

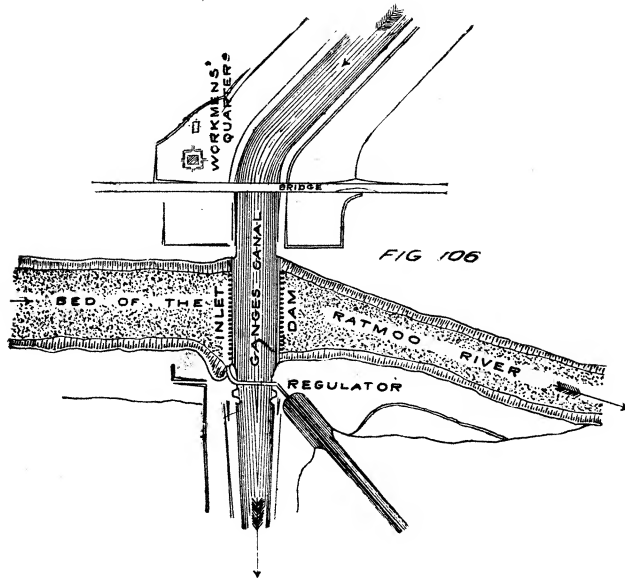
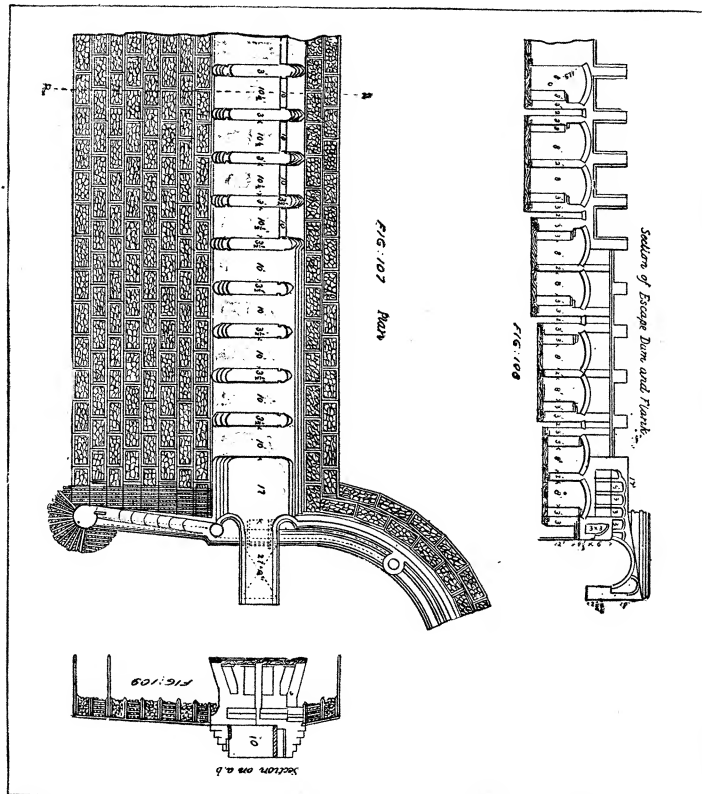


Fig. 106. Rutmoo Crossing, Ganges Canal.

Figure 106 shows the plan of the level crossing.

The dam itself consists of forty-seven sluices of ten feet in width, some of which are shown in Figure 108, with their sills flush with the canal bed, separated by piers of three and a half feet in width. The above are flanked on each side by five overfalls of the same width, having the sills raised to a height of six feet, with intermediate piers of the same dimensions as those in the center sluices. On the extreme flanks are platforms raised to a height of ten feet above the canal bed, and corresponding in height with the rest of the piers. These elevated platforms, which are seventeen feet in

length, are connected with the revetment esplanade by inclined planes of masonry, carried through the flanks of the dam.



Dhunowree Level Crossing, Ganges Canal.

The amount of waterway, therefore, through the sluices, up to a height of six feet, is equal to 470 feet in width; to a height of from six to ten feet it is increased to 570 feet, and when flood water passes over the full expanse of the masonry, which is equal in width to 800 feet.

For the ten sluices in the flanks, the closing and open-

ing is effected by sleeper planks, for which grooves are fitted to the piers.

For the center openings drop gates are provided, as explained in Article 31, and Figures 67 and 68.

On the down-stream side of the dam a platform of box-work, filled with river stone, extends to a width of forty-three and a half feet from the masonry flooring. This is held in position by double lines of twenty-foot piling, strongly clamped together by sleepers fastened on to the upper surface, the slope of which is two and a quarter feet on an incline down-stream.

The regulating bridge has ten waterways each twenty feet broad, and provided with gates to prevent any flood-water passing down the canal. In addition to this, there is a roadway bridge, and about a mile of revetment walls, all resting on blocks of brick masonry, sunk to a depth of twenty feet below the canal bed. The whole of this work is protected by a forest of piles, and an enormous number of bottomless boxes filled with bowlders.

The river, when not in flood, flows under the canal by a double tunnel upwards of 500 feet long.

The great objection to this kind of work is, that it requires a permanent establishment of men on the spot to work it, and that, if they are careless or neglectful, a sudden flood may do serious damage. On this account level crossings are to be avoided whenever it is possible to do so.*

Article 36. Superpassages.

The *third* case mentioned at page 151, where the torrent crosses at a higher level than the canal, and, in this case, the structure is called a *superpassage*, to distinguish it from the first case, where the canal flows over a river and is carried by an aqueduct. In America a superpassage is usually called a flume.

*Roorkee Treatise on Civil Engineering.

table. They are computed by a formula with a *constant* co-efficient $c = 94.5$. To prove this we have:—

$$s = \frac{f}{5280} \therefore f = 5280 \times s$$

substitute this value of f in Dwyer's formula and we have:—

$$v = 0.92 \sqrt{2 \times 5280 \times s \times r}$$

$$\therefore v = 94.5 \sqrt{rs}$$

It is now admitted that a formula with a constant co-efficient, such as Dwyer's, is suitable for only a small range of channels. It is, however, now generally accepted that Kutter's formula is applicable to a wide range of channels, and that, of all the existing formulæ, it gives the closest approximation to the actual flow of large open channels.

Assuming a value of $n = .025$ for the channels given in table 2 below, we find the corresponding velocities. These velocities show that Dwyer's formula used in computing table 1 above, gives too high a velocity for all the channels. This subject will be referred to at length in the articles on the *Flow of Water* where the application of Kutter's formula is fully discussed.

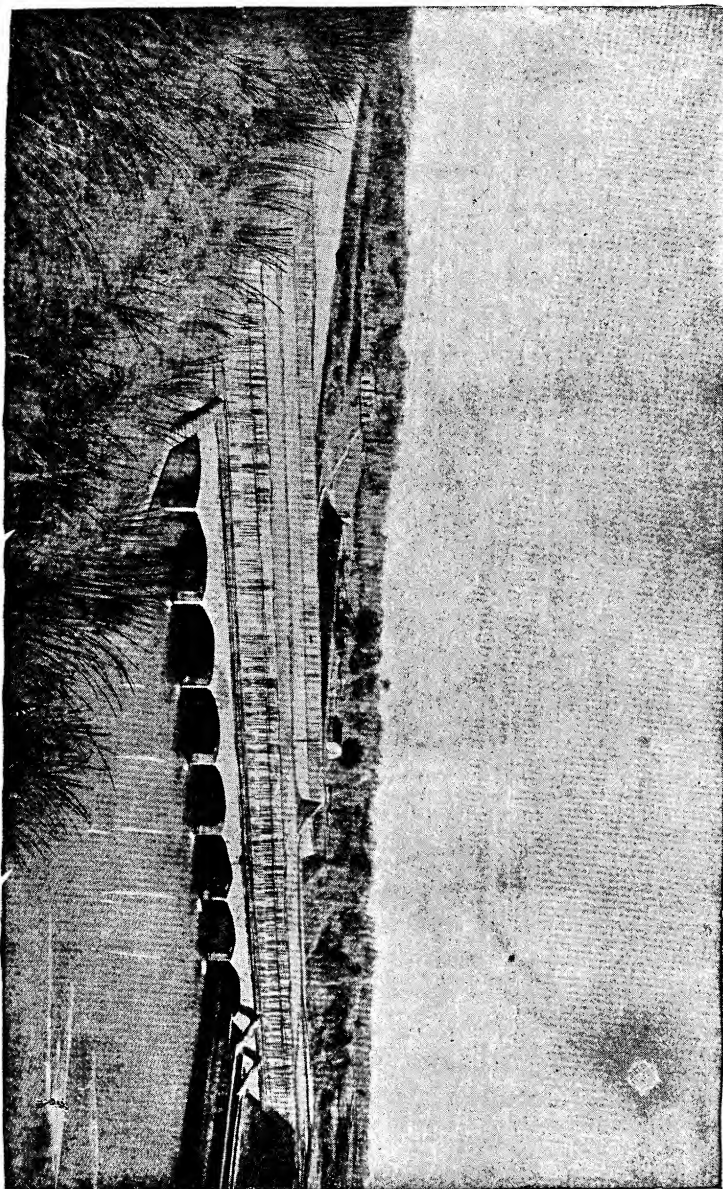
Carrying a large body of water across and over a canal is a very expensive and troublesome work, as a large water channel has to be provided to carry any extraordinary flood over the canal in safety, and, in navigable canals, sufficient headway must be allowed under the superpassage so as not to interrupt the navigation. When the grade of the country admits of it, as is almost always the case, the canal can be dropped to the required level by a masonry fall, a lock being provided for navigation purposes, if required. The torrent will probably require constant watching to prevent its shifting its course and attacking the canal bank.

When not in flood a superpassage can be used as a highway bridge.

The superpassage possesses the great advantage of keeping the canal completely free from any influx of flood-water from the torrent, which is always more or less heavily charged with silt. It has the additional recommendation of not requiring the maintenance of a large establishment every rainy season, as in the case of a level crossing, where the regulating apparatus must be worked by manual labor. And lastly, the canal supply can thus be kept up without interruption, there being no necessity to shut it off at the crossing to keep the silt-laden flood-water out of the canal. The recommendations apply equally to a passage by *aqueduct*, and render them both generally preferable to a level crossing, such as that at Dhunowree, given in Article 35, when the levels will admit of the substitution.

There are two fine examples of superpassages a few miles below the headworks of the Upper Ganges Canal, by which the Puttri and Ranipore torrents are carried across the canal. These have a clear waterway between the parapets of 200 and 300 feet, respectively, and when

FIG. 110. RANIPORE SUPERPASSAGE, GANGES CANAL.



the torrents are not in flood, they are used as bridges of communication.*

Figure 110 gives a view of the Ranipore Superpassage. It is taken from Irrigation in India, by Mr. H. M. Wilson, M. Am. Sec., C. E., in Transactions American Society of Civil Engineers, Volume 23.

The Seesooan Superpassage on the Sutlej Canal† is shown in Figures 111, 112, 113 and 114.

Taking the catchment basin of the Seesooan to be eight miles in length by three miles in width, we obtain an area of twenty-four square miles, which would give a maximum rainfall, at the rate of half an inch per hour, of 7,752 cubic feet per second, agreeing very closely with the discharge calculated from the area of the section at the canal crossing, with the velocity due to a declivity of 1 in 791. To pass off this discharge, a water-way of 150 feet wide by six and a half feet in depth was given to the masonry channel of the superpassage. This would require a mean velocity of about eight feet per second. The dimensions given are more than ample for the required discharge, even with the worst description of masonry surface. Major Crofton, the designer of this work, computed the velocity by one of the old formulæ, having a *constant* value of c , that is:

$$v = 93 \sqrt{rs}$$

Computing the mean velocity through the masonry channel, by Kutter's formula, and with different values of n , suitable to masonry surfaces, we obtain the results given in Table 16. The water channel is 150 feet wide, with vertical sides six and a half feet deep, as shown in Figure 114. The slope is 1 in 794. In round numbers,

*Roorkee Treatise on Civil Engineering.

†Report on the Sutlej Canal, by Major J. Crofton, R. E.

\sqrt{r} is equal to 2.4 feet. For further information on this subject, see *Flow of Water*.

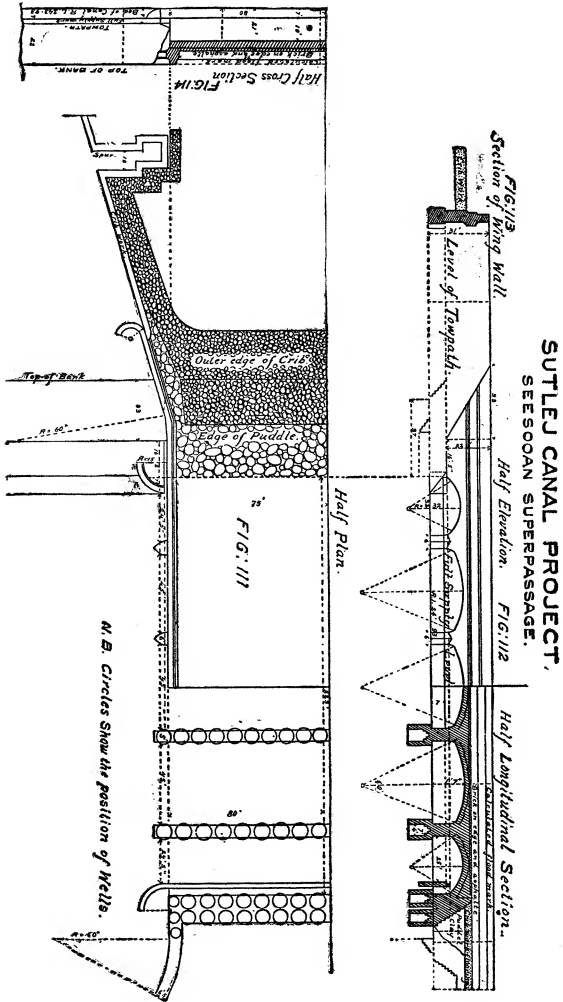


TABLE 16. Giving velocities and discharges of channels with different values of n .

Value of n	r in feet.	Slope 1 in 794 r^2	Mean velocity in feet per second, v	Discharge in cubic feet per second, Q
.013	2.4	.035489	12.6	12,285
.015	2.4	.035489	11.0	10,725
.017	2.4	.035489	9.8	9,555
.020	2.4	.035489	8.4	8,190

The difference of level between the beds of the canal and the torrent is 21.93 feet, which is thus disposed of:

	Feet.
Depth of water in canal	7.00
Head up to soffit of arch (for navigation).....	10.00
Thickness of arch.....	3 00
Brick-on-edge flooring.....	1.93
Total.....	21.93

The canal channel will be spanned by three central arches of forty-five feet span each, and two at the sides of thirty-two feet each; tow-paths, of seven and a half feet wide in the clear, will be carried under each side arch, leaving an aggregate water-way of 184 feet. The mean water-way of the earthen channel of the canal is only 177 feet. The addition is made to this work, in consideration of the expense of increasing its dimensions should the canal be required to carry a larger supply hereafter. The water-way for the torrent above the canal (Figure 114 shows one-half of this channel), is projected in one channel 150 feet wide at the bottom, with side walls (head walls of the work) ten feet in height, five feet thick at the base, four feet at top; the flooring over the arches to be formed of asphalt or some substance

impervious to water, the upper surface being covered with some hard material, probably a layer of kunkur (nodular limestone) slabs. The backing of the abutments will be of puddled clay, covered with a flooring of kunkur, slag, or bowlders packed in cribs.

Article 37. Inverted Syphons.

An *inverted syphon*, sometimes called a syphon, is, in some cases, used instead of an aqueduct or super-passage. The levels of the channels which cross each other determine the work best suited for the locality. The syphon is *under pressure*, and it is usual to give it such a head, or fall of water surface, from its inlet to its outlet, that it has a high velocity, and, therefore, its current has sufficient scouring force to prevent the deposition of silt and *debris*.

If the syphon has not sufficient velocity to keep itself clear, not only of the silt held in suspension, but also of the material rolled along its bed, it will in time, get partly or entirely choked, and its waters, being thus dammed, will cause floods, and very likely break the canal banks and do material damage.

Probably the most interesting inverted syphon in existence is that under Stony Creek, on the line of the Central Irrigation Canal, in Colusa County, California. It serves four purposes, namely:—

1. As an inverted syphon or conduit under Stony Creek.
2. As an escape-way for surplus canal water into the creek.
3. As a secondary gate for checking the flow of water in the canal above Stony Creek.
4. As an inlet from the creek in the lower portion of the canal.

The following description of the work is given by the designer, Mr. C. E. Grunsky, Chief Engineer of the Central Irrigation District, and the drawings, descriptive of the work, are reduced from drawings supplied by him:—

“Central Irrigation District Canal has been planned for the irrigation of 156,000 acres of land in the central portion of the west side Sacramento Valley plain.

“The canal is cut out from Sacramento River on a gradient of one in ten thousand ($6\frac{3}{8}$ inches per mile). It has a bottom width of 60 feet, and has been planned to carry a maximum depth of six feet of water. Its capacity is 730 cubic feet per second.

“In its southerly course, this canal crosses the creeks which drain the eastern slope of the Coast Range. The largest of the creeks thus crossed, is Stony Creek, which has a drainage area of 760 square miles, and a maximum flow of about 30,000 cubic feet per second.

“The grade of the bottom of the canal and the lowest point of the creek bed at the point of crossing have the same height. The width of the creek between firm banks is about 600 feet. Its bed is clean gravel. Its flow at the canal crossing generally ceases in June or July.

“The conduit under the creek, shown in Figs. 115 to 119, consists of seven semi-circular wooden tubes, constructed of long staves and covered by a common horizontal platform top. The wooden tubes are to be hung under the platform by means of iron bands, whose ends will project above longitudinal timbers on top of the platform, serving to secure the same against upward movement. The structure will be weighted with gravel and anchored to the creek bed to prevent its floating out of place.

“The conduit ends will rest on concrete in masonry inlet and outlet chambers. Each of these will be so

constructed that the space between masonry walls can be opened or closed to the creek. The gates to accomplish this will be arranged on the flash board principle, *i. e.*, grooves along vertical posts will be provided to receive and support the ends of loose horizontal boards.

"The structure thus becomes an escape-way for canal water to Stony Creek.

"It serves as a check-weir to the main canal and can be used to regulate the volume of flow in the canal.

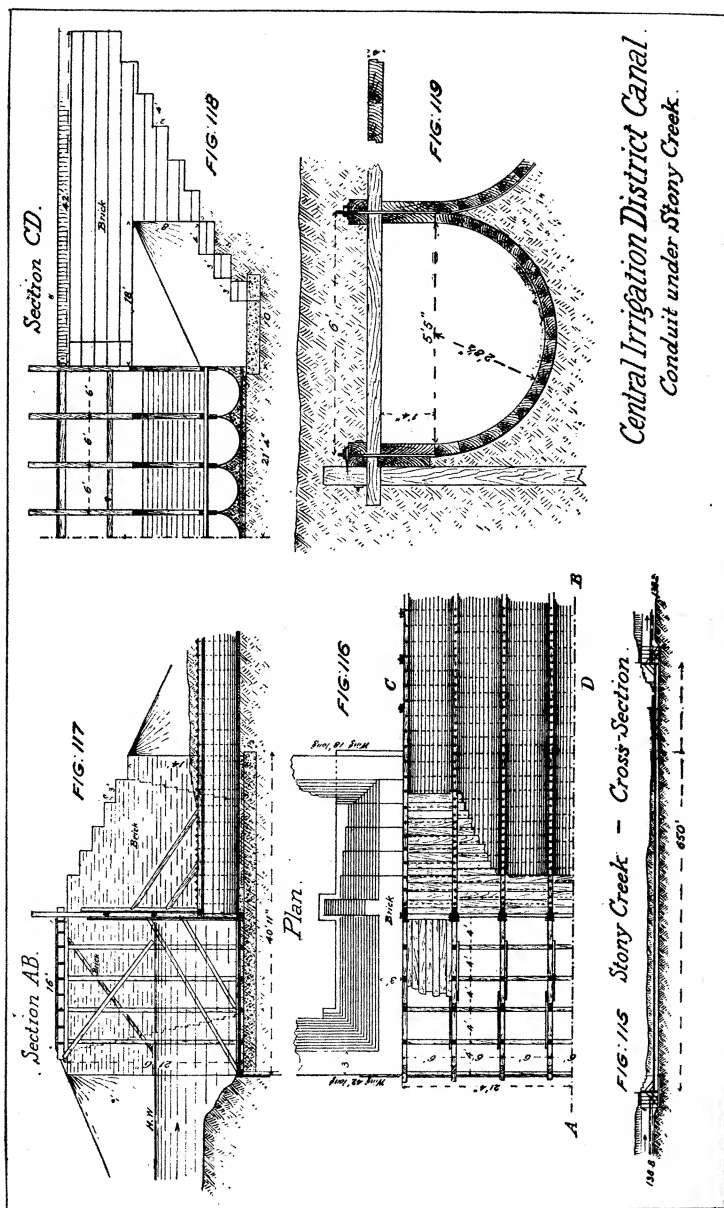
"It serves as an inlet for waters of Stony Creek, thus enabling the creek to be used as a secondary source of supply."

Figures 115, 116, 117, 118 and 119 show part plan and sections of this work.

The line of the Agra Canal, India, crosses the Buriya Torrent. The volume of the latter is 2,000 cubic feet per second, and it flows over a steep and rocky channel. Its passage *under* the canal is provided for by a partial syphon having seven culverts, 6 feet wide and 4 feet deep, the velocity of which, in high floods, will be 12 feet per second. This velocity is sufficient to move ordinary sized bowlders, and, therefore, sufficient to keep the channel clear of any deposit that can reach it.

The culverts are covered by large stones bolted down to the piers, and, for this purpose, bolts are built into the latter. A strong breast wall on each side supports the canal banks, and the ordinary earthen section of the canal is carried over the syphon culverts. The canal flows over the syphon without any change in its wetted cross-section or in its velocity. The syphon is provided with a floor of massive rough ashlar, the entrance and egress for the torrent being also built with large stone.

Figures 120, 121, 122 and 123 show the syphon carrying the Hurren Creek (Nullah) under the Sirhind or Sutlej Canal. This work is constructed of brick masonry.



The Inverted Syphon carrying the Cavour Canal, Italy, under the Sesia torrent, is one of the finest works of the kind in existence. During extreme floods the Sesia carries about 160,000 cubic feet per second.

The syphon is 863 feet in length. It consists of five elliptically shaped conduits, or culverts, the horizontal diameter at the entrance of each being 16 feet 5 inches, and the vertical diameter of 7 feet 10 inches at the entrance, and 7 feet 6 inches at the exit. The area of the five culverts at the entrance is about 483 square feet, and the canal was designed to carry 3,883 cubic feet per second. This would give a mean velocity, at the entrance, of about 8 feet per second, and with a supply of 3,000 feet per second, it would give a mean velocity of about 6 feet per second, and, with these velocities, it is found that no silting of the culverts takes place.

The arch is of brickwork 1 foot 9 inches in thickness. On this is laid a thin layer of concrete and, again on this, planking, the upper surface of which coincides with the bed of the river.

The planks are laid in the direction of the general flow of the current of the river. The total thickness of brickwork, concrete and planking from the soffit of the arch to the bed of the torrent is only 3 feet 2 inches. The surface of the water in the canal, after passing through the syphon, is 2 feet 3 inches above the bed of the Sesia.

On the Verdon Canal in France, there are several wrought iron syphons; four of which are across deep valleys. The most important is that at St. Paul, 890 feet long, constructed of two parallel wrought-iron tubes, each 5 feet 9 inches in internal diameter, with a maximum pressure equal to $116\frac{2}{3}$ feet head of water. The capacity of this canal is equal to 212 cubic feet per second, so that at full supply the mean velocity through this syphon is equal to 8 feet per second.

TABLE 2. Giving velocities of Channels by Kutter's formula with $n = .025$.

Breadth of channel at bottom in feet.	Depth of water with full supply in feet.	Slope of surface of water in inches per mile.	Side slopes.	Velocity in feet per second.
2½	4	15	1 to 1	1.34
4½	4¾	14½	1 to 1	1.61
15	5	13½	1 to 1	1.98
27½	5½	13	1 to 1	2.24
50	6	13	1 to 1	2.53
77½	7	13	1½ to 1	2.87
95	8	12¾	1½ to 1	3.12
121½	8½	12¾	1½ to 1	3.30
147½	8½	12½	1½ to 1	3.30
170	8¾	12½	1½ to 1	3.39

Article 7. Side Slopes.

The side slopes usually adopted, on the water side, are within the limits of ½ horizontal to 1 vertical, to 3 horizontal to 1 vertical. For most soils a flatter slope than 2 to 1 will not be required, and it is very seldom that as flat a slope as 3 to 1 is required.

The outer slopes in earthen soils may have an inclination regulated by the stability of the ground, and 1½ to 1 is most common.

As every rule has an exception, so we find that Mr. Walter H. Graves, C. E., states of the Grand River Canal system of Colorado:—

“The soil of this locality is peculiar, a sort of argillaceous adobe, that when dry resembles ashes, and when thoroughly wet becomes a slimy mud, that is almost im-

SYMPHON FOR DRAINAGE CROSSING AT HURRON NULLAH SIRHIND CANAL.

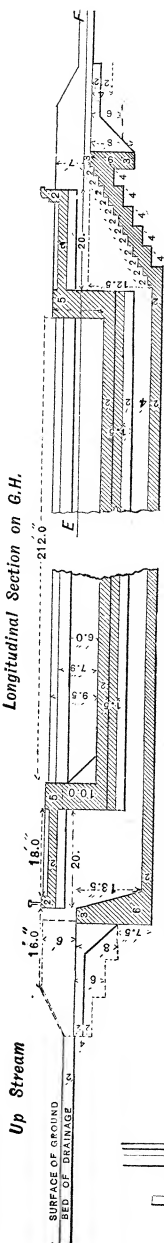


FIG. 122

Horizontal Section on E.F.

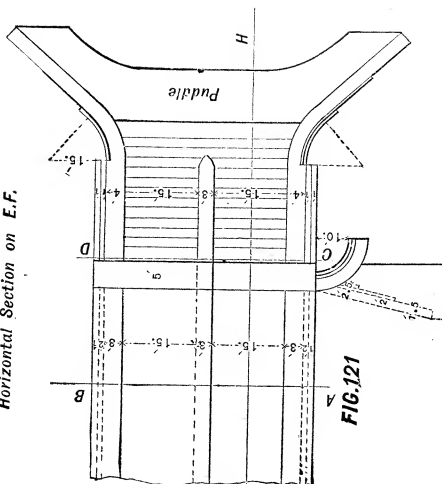
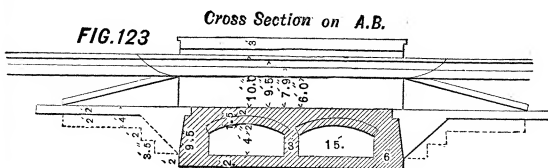


FIG. 120

Patrol Road.

Cross Section on A.B.



The horizontal portion of the syphon, laid at the bottom of the valley, is 321.6 feet in length. The remainder of its length, consisting of the two inclines, is laid at a slope of about $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. The pipes are of wrought-iron, and respectively 0.353 inch and 0.315 inch thick for the horizontal and inclined portions. They are supported on, and fixed in, masonry at the junctions of the horizontal and inclined portions. The remainder of the lengths bear on cast-iron rollers, resting on stone blocks, placed about 31 feet apart. The arrangements for the expansion and contraction consist in constructing a short length of the tubes, in each of the horizontal and inclined portions, of a gradually increasing diameter from, and then increasing back to, the normal diameter of the tube. The metal of the tubes at these swellings is reduced to about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in thickness; in order to obtain greater elasticity, and it is contended that the bulging in and drawing out of the tube, at these swellings, will respectively allow for expansion and contraction of the metals.

At the beginning of the works on this canal, the long syphons, including that of St. Paul, above described, were constructed through the natural rock, and lined with masonry to prevent leakage, at a depth of 50 to 82 feet below the bottom of the valleys, the rock being intended to resist the hydraulic pressure. After completion, not one of these tunnel syphons acted satisfactorily when the water was let into them. Repairs were then commenced, experimenting at first with those under the least, and ending with those under the greatest head of pressure. After much trouble and expense all were at length caused to act satisfactorily, with the exception of that of St. Paul, which had to be abandoned, and wrought iron pipes substituted as above described.

On one of the branches of this canal, there is a syphon 443 feet long, under a head of pressure equal to $71\frac{1}{2}$ feet.

The Lozoya Canal, in Spain, with a discharge of 89 cubic feet per second, has six syphons, one of which consists of four cast iron pipes, each 2.8 feet in diameter, three of which carry the canal, the fourth being used in case of accidents to any of the other three.

There are two most interesting syphons on the Jucar Canal, in Spain, under the *barrancos* or torrents of Carlet and Alginet, the former 455 and the latter 524 feet long. The Carlet syphon, situated about $14\frac{1}{2}$ miles below Antella, is a very old construction. Its discharge is 350 cubic feet per second. The canal is 19 feet wide just above, but diminishes to 7.5 at the entrance of the syphon, which is barred, first by an iron grating, and again by a wooden one, the bars being about six inches apart. Directly over the entrance stands the guard's house. There are two masonry shafts built in the bed of the torrent down to the syphon. They, too, are protected by gratings. The mouth is closed in masonry revetments, supported by arches, and the water-section just below is 6.75 feet wide and 8 feet deep. The fall through the syphon is 4.9 feet. M. Aymard questioned some workmen who had once been in it, and they told him the gallery was 5.9 feet wide and 6.5 feet high. He hence calculated the velocity through it to be 10 feet per second.

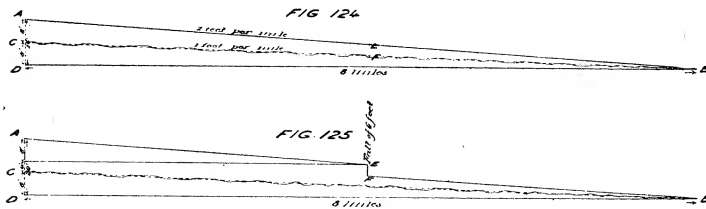
General Scott Moncrieff* says that the Moors of Spain have left many proofs of their skill in making tunnels and syphons on their irrigation canals. The Mijares Canal, which irrigates 9,800 acres of land, and close to its *prise*, or headworks, enters a tunnel 1,300 feet long; after which it is carried by a syphon 327 feet in length under the Viuda ravine. The lowest point of this

* Irrigation in Southern Europe.

syphon is about 180 feet below the mouth, and 90 feet below the present bed of the torrent which crosses it. There is a fall through it of 13 feet.

Article 38. Retrogression of Levels.

Retrogression of levels, or the lowering of the bed of a channel by erosion, *on long lines*, is a serious evil in any irrigation channel, especially in a canal carrying a large volume of water, say over 1,000 cubic feet per second. Scour or erosion is usually referred to local action of the water, while Retrogression of Levels is usually applied to long reaches of a channel. It is caused by giving too great a slope, and, therefore, too great a velocity to the canal. For example, a canal is constructed with a slope of two feet per mile, the bed of which is shown by the line *AB*, Figure 124. The canal



Retrogression of Levels in Canals.

has a high mean velocity, over three feet per second. The material through which the canal runs is sandy loam, which cannot bear a higher mean velocity than 2.25 feet per second without erosion. In the course of a few years the current in the canal scours the bed to such an extent that retrogression of bed levels has taken place from *AB*, with a grade of two feet per mile, and a mean velocity of over three feet per second, to *CB*, with a grade of one foot per mile, and a velocity of about 2.25 feet per second. Retrogression of levels ceases at the line

CB, and on this grade line the canal has established its regimen.

In another case, through the same material, the bed of the canal, from *A* to *E*, Figure 125, was given a fall of two feet per mile. At *E* was a vertical drop of four feet to *F*, and then a grade of two feet per mile from *F* to *B*. The fall *EF* was so badly constructed that it was washed away and not rebuilt, thus practically adding four feet to the fall of the bed from *A* to *B*. Retrogression of levels took place until all scour stopped at the line *CB* at a ruling grade of one foot per mile.

Bad results generally follow the lowering of the bed, of which a few are here mentioned.

The beds of the distributing channels taken from the main channel between *A* and *B* were fixed with reference to the bed of the canal, *AB*, Figure 124, and any lowering of this bed would diminish the depth of water at, and, therefore, the supply entering their heads. For example, midway between *A* and *B*, at *E*, a small channel is taken out with its bed three feet above the bed of the main channel, but after some time, retrogression of levels has lowered the bed of the main canal four feet from *E* to *F*. The surface of water in the main channel, at full supply of six feet in depth, is, therefore, one foot below the bed of the distributing channel at *E*. In order, therefore, to get water through the distributary, a regulating gate would have to be constructed on the main channel below *E*, so that, by closing this gate as required, the level of the water could be raised. Another plan would be to deepen the distributing channel for some distance from its head. This deepening of the distributing channel would flatten its grade and cause a diminution of its velocity and discharge. Furthermore, the land on each side of the distributary, for some distance from its head, would be too high above it for irrigation by gravity.

Another evil caused by lowering the canal bed would be the lowering of the sub-surface water in the land on each side of the canal, where in some cases such lowering is not required.

Any one who has inspected the old Irrigation Channels in parts of California will have seen that retrogression of levels has taken place with bad results in numerous cases. As a rule, too much grade has been given to the old canals.

In the early days of the construction of large irrigation canals, by the British Government, in India, this mistake was made. The greatest canal engineer that ever existed, General Sir Proby Cautley, the designer and constructor of that magnificent work, the original or Upper Ganges Canal, decided, after careful thought and due regard to the experience gained on canals previously opened, that 15 inches per mile was required as the grade of this canal. This slope was too great, and probably six inches per mile would have been ample. After the canal was in use for some years, retrogression of levels took place to an alarming extent; deep holes were scoured out below many of the falls and bridges, thereby endangering their stability, and the bed of the canal was in some places deepened, and in others widened beyond the original cross-section.

When Cautley fixed the slope of the Ganges Canal, nothing was then known of the experiments and investigations of Humphreys and Abbot, D'Arcy, Bazin, Gordon, Kutter and Ganguillet and others. Cautley fixed his slope in accordance with the formula of Dubuat, a formula that was used for many years in India, both before and after the opening of the Ganges Canal. Neville's *Hydraulics* was then a standard work, in use by the canal engineers of Northern India, and in the last edition of this work, 1875, a table based on Dubuat's

formula is given *for finding the Mean Velocity of Water flowing in Pipes, Drains, Streams and Rivers.*

No blame whatever can be attached to Cautley for determining the slope of the Ganges Canal by this formula, for it was generally used in India at the time, and was believed to be correct. It is now known to be very inaccurate.

This mistake of the slope was the only radical defect in the design of the Ganges Canal; and, with this exception, there has never been constructed a work of equal magnitude, that showed so few mistakes, or that displayed more originality and boldness in design and execution.

Notwithstanding all this, a set of carping critics made the last years of the life of General Cautley miserable, by direct and indirect, unjust attacks on his great work.

In 1864 a committee of five Royal Engineers—not a single Civil Engineer was on it—recommended that Captain J. Crofton, another Royal Engineer, should report on the remodelling of the Ganges Canal. Captain Crofton did so report in 1866, and he estimated the cost of remodelling at \$12,500,000.

One able Civil Engineer, Mr. Thomas Login, proved conclusively that protective works, at a comparatively small expense, would ensure the safety of the Canal. He raised the crests of the falls in some places by planking, and crib-work filled with bowlders was placed below them in the bed of the canal. By these means water-cushions were formed below the falls, which materially reduced the destructive effect of the falling water. For a detailed description of this work see the account given by Mr. Thomas Login, C. E.* His only thanks was removal to another work, and he was never again appointed

*Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. XXVII. 1867-68.

to the Ganges Canal. Mr. Login and the writer of this work were intimate friends, and in justice to the former this brief reference is made to his work on the Ganges Canal, for which he did not get the credit that he deserved.

In 1868 Mr. Login stated:* “Six years ago the Author stood almost alone in maintaining the opinion that the Ganges Canal needed only some protective work, and did not require the radical alterations then proposed. The Author will only add the expression of his firm conviction, that the works may be placed out of danger by the judicious use of wood and iron, at a less cost than if stone be employed, without depriving the country of the benefits of irrigation beyond a short time.”

Time has fully justified Mr. Login’s opinion, and a few years since General C. E. Moncrieff, R. E.; testified to his sound judgment.† He states:

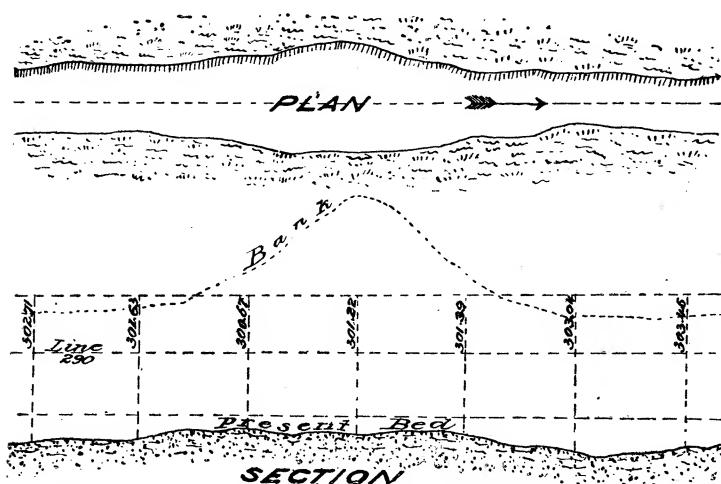
“Did they not remember how a committee of engineers had pronounced Cautley’s great Ganges Canal unsound, and how they would have spent fabulous sums on it, had not Brownlow’s common sense and attention to details shown that the work was all right, as it has triumphantly proved to be.”

Had General Moncrieff given the credit of this success to Login instead of Brownlow, his statement would be more in accordance with the facts. It was mainly due to Login’s sound judgment, sturdy independence, and having practically proved what could be done at comparatively small expense, that overtaxed India was saved from the great expense that was proposed to be incurred in remodelling the canal, and another serious matter, the closing of the canal for one or two years.

* Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Vol. XXVII, 1867-68.

† Irrigation in Egypt in Nineteenth Century. February, 1885.

Figures 126 and 127 are plan and profile of the original Ganges Canal, through the Toghulpoor sand hill in mile 37.* There was here more erosion in the width than in the depth. The plan, Figure 126, shows the widening, and the profile, Figure 127, shows that the bed of the canal through this wide section is higher than the narrow channel above and below that place.



Figs. 126, 127. Widening of Ganges Canal at Toghulpoor.

The Eastern Jumna Canal,† having a discharge of 1,068 cubic feet per second, had, when originally constructed, a grade of 372 feet in 130 miles, or at the average rate of 2.86 feet per mile. In some reaches the grade was considerably more than this.

Immediately after the water was admitted into the canal the effect of a rapid current was apparent. Retrogression of levels on an extensive and dangerous scale took place. From the Nowgong Dam to the Muskurra River, where the fall was eight feet per mile, deep

* Report on the Ganges Canal by Captain J. Crofton, R. E.

† Notes and Memoranda on the Eastern Jumna Canal, by Colonel Sir P. T. Cantley, K. C. B.

erosion took place. A specimen cross-section on this reach is given in Figure 128, where the shaded portion shows the part scoured out. The silt resulting from the erosion was carried down the canal until it got to a level reach, where it was deposited, causing the bed and banks to silt up, as shown in Figure 129. The shaded part shows the silting up; the top of the bank and outside slope are shown dressed up.

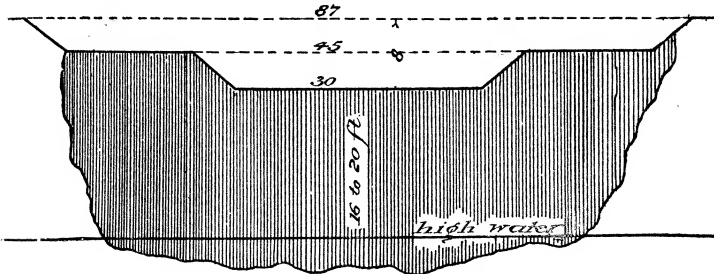


Fig. 128. Erosion on Eastern Jumna Canal.

To prevent the canal from being destroyed it had to be reconstructed at great expense.

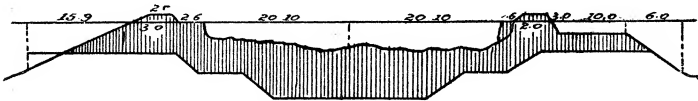


Fig. 129. Silting up on Eastern Jumna Canal.

Twenty-three falls were constructed, being at the rate of about one fall to six miles of canal, and the grade was reduced, varying from 17 to 22 inches per mile.

Article 39. Falls—Drops—Checks.

In designing an artificial channel for the passage of a large volume of water, the first thing that presents itself for decision is the rate of slope that is to be given to the bed, to insure that velocity of current which prevents the deposition of silt, keeps the channel clear of weeds and other impediments, and, at the same time, shall not erode the bottom and sides of the channel.

possible to control or maintain in a fixed position. In the canal banks it has a tendency, when soaked with water, to melt and flatten out, and to preserve in good form and for good service the channel has proven a very difficult and expensive matter."

Long experience on thousands of miles of large and small channels in northern India has proved that, when a flatter slope than $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 is adopted in construction, it cannot be maintained with economy after the channel has got into its working velocity.

With muddy water and on flat slopes, especially where weeds grow, silt is deposited on the sides of the channel and they eventually take a slope of about $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. It is found advantageous to allow this slope to remain and not to flatten it during the annual repairs.

The same thing has been observed in America, but, in this country, the recorded observations are not so full as in India.

Captain Edward L. Berthoud, of Golden, Colorado, in a paper on Irrigation, published by the Denver Society of Civil Engineers, is quoted as having stated:—

"I find that cuttings in our ditches should not be less than 1 to 1. If flatter they will be more exposed to the wash of sudden rains, and finally reduced to 1 to 1, or even steeper slopes."

With reference to the inner side slopes of canals, Major W. Jeffreys, R. E., in a note in the Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, states:—

"Opinions are divided as to the pitch with which the inner slopes of distributaries should be made. In the Punjab a slope of $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 is adopted, while in the Northwest Provinces 1 to 1 is preferred, chiefly for economical reasons. For very light soils the former of these is, of course, the stronger construction, but an

When the slope or grade of the canal is the same as the natural fall of the country through which the canal is excavated, and when the current is adjusted, as above explained, to prevent silting up and erosion, then the level of its bed will, of course, remain at a uniform depth below the surface of the ground.

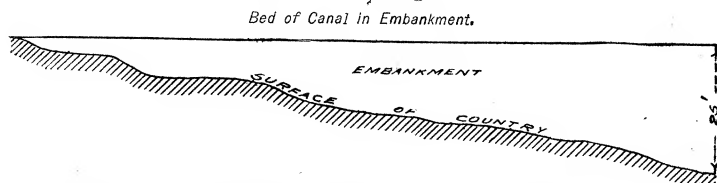


Fig. 130. Longitudinal Section, Canal in Embankment.

Usually the slope of the country is greater than that of the canal, and, with canals having a large discharge, that is, from 1,000 to 6,000 cubic feet per second, this is invariably the case, and the excess of slope of the country has to be disposed of, either by embankments or by works variously called falls, drops, and sometimes in America, checks.

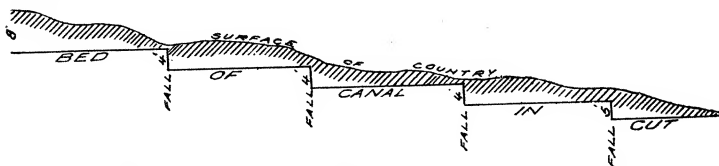


Fig. 131. Longitudinal Section, Falls in Canal.

In brief, then, the object of falls is to get rid of a greater declivity of bed than it is advisable to allow in mere earthen channels, and it is sought to be attained by giving at intervals sudden falls protected by masonry, between which the simple earthen bed may preserve its proper slope.

Figure 130, not drawn to scale, shows a reach of a canal in embankment, five miles in length. In this five miles the grade of the country has gained 25 feet on that of the canal, and, it is obvious, that an em-

bankment is out of the question on account of its great cost, the danger of breaches in its banks and several other good reasons. To compensate, therefore, for the difference of slope, *falls* are constructed on irrigation canals, as they are safer and cheaper than embankments.

Figure 131, not drawn to scale, shows how the falls are arranged so that the canal is, either in whole or in part, in soil. The canal is laid out in a series of *steps*, so as to keep it at a tolerably uniform level below the surface of the country, until the flat country is reached. By this time, the supply of the canal is diminished, and it, therefore, requires a greater slope to keep up the original velocity, and usually a point will be reached where the slope of the country is the same as that fixed for the canal.

When designing an irrigation canal, a minimum depth of excavation is determined, and then, when the depth of cutting becomes less than this, it is time to locate a fall.

The shape and construction of falls are questions requiring much thought and consideration. Their location should evidently, from the diagrams, Figures 130 and 131, be near the places where the canal bed, if continued without a break, would have to be carried in embankment above the surface of the country. Their *exact* location is generally made to coincide with the requirements of a highway bridge, regulator, or some other masonry work, such as are herein described, for the sake of economy, or for some other good reason.

In America, falls are usually constructed of timber, and they have not only the disadvantage of being built of perishable material, but they have also other defects, the chief of which is the great velocity of the water at and near them, which often causes their destruction.

Outside of America, in India, Italy and other irrigating countries, the falls are permanent works, constructed of brick or stone masonry. On the best works the banks of the canal, both above and below the fall, are protected from the erosive action of the water.

Six descriptions of falls are in use:—

1. The Ogee Fall.
2. The Vertical Fall, with water cushion.
3. The Vertical Fall, with gratings attached.
4. The Vertical Fall, with sliding gates.
5. The Vertical or Sloping Fall, with plank panels or flash boards.
6. Rapids.

Rapids are described in Article 40.

Ogee Falls.

There has been much difference of opinion with reference to the exact shape of the fall. *Ogee* falls, similar to that shown in Figure 132, were adopted by Sir Proby Cautley, on the Ganges Canal, with the view of delivering the water at the foot of the fall as quietly as possible.

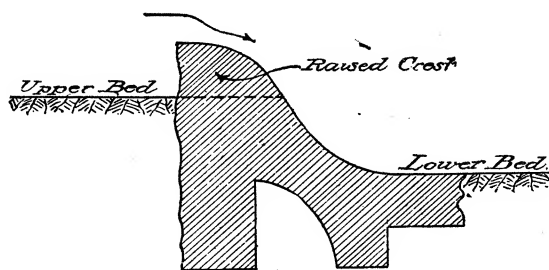
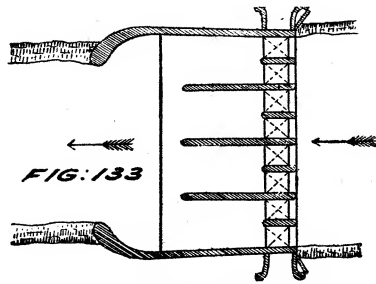


Fig. 132. Section of Ogee Falls.

The following is a description of one of the Ogee falls on the Ganges Canal: Figure 133 shows a plan, and Figure 134 a view of the Asufnuggur Fall on the Upper

Ganges Canal. This fall is shown attached to a bridge. The bridge consists of eight spans of 25 feet in width each, which crosses the canal on the upper levels. To the tail or apron of this bridge the ogees are attached, delivering the water into four chambers of $54\frac{1}{2}$ feet in width, every alternate bridge-pier being prolonged on its down-stream face, so as to divide the space, which is occupied by the lower floorings, into four compartments. In advance of the three dividing walls, which are carried to a distance of 84 feet from the down-stream face of the bridge, there is an open space of masonry flooring, which is protected by an advanced area of box-work, or heavy material filled into boxes or crates, and covered with sleepers, so as to retain the material in position.



Plan of Asufnuggur Falls.

Additional defenses are given these floorings by lines of sheet piling. The flanks of the chambers below the descent are protected by revetments, equal in height to the dividing walls. Between and on the flanks of these two jetties, lines of piles and other protective arrangements are distributed, so as to secure the safe passage of the water over the floorings, and to admit of the currents escaping from the works with as little tendency to danger as possible. The Ogee Falls have proved failures, both on the Upper Ganges and Baree Doab Canals. Col. Crofton, in his Report on the Ganges Canal, states

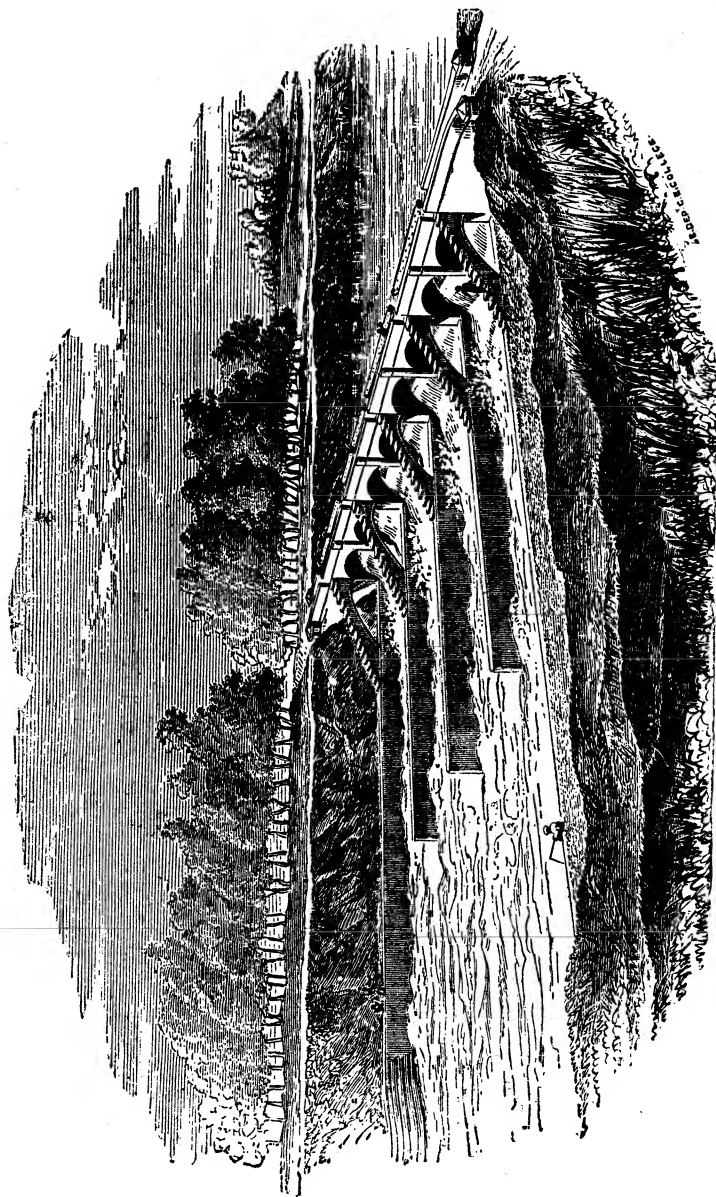


Fig. 134. View of Asufnuggur Falls, Original Ganges Canal.

that the greater number of the Ogee Falls on this canal suffered injury more or less severe, in their lower floorings from the action of the water, and in one or two cases the brick, on edge covering to the Ogees was stripped off, but timely repairs and protection saved the evil from spreading.

Vertical Falls with Water Cushions.

Vertical Falls with water cushions are illustrated in Figures 135 to 140 inclusive.

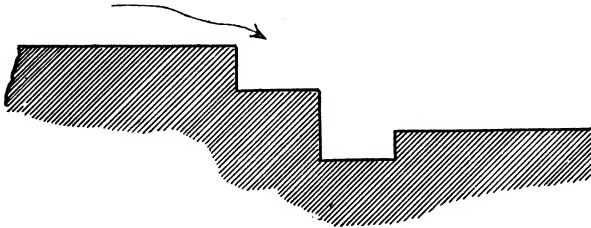


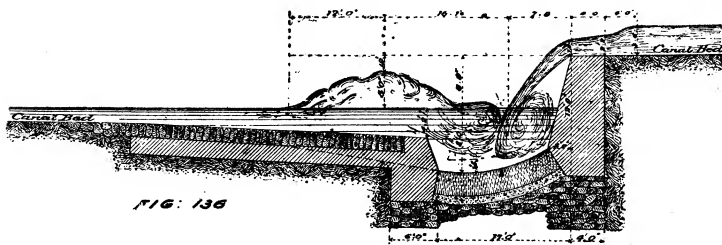
Fig. 135. Section of Vertical Fall.

These falls have been found much safer than the Ogee Falls. On the Baree Doab Canal, and generally on the new canals in India, Vertical Falls are used. These falls have a cistern on the lower side, and this cistern acts as a water cushion, and opposes a dead resistance to the falling water. The velocity of the falling water in a forward direction is also checked.

To lessen the destructive action of the falling water Mr. T. Login, M. I. C. E.* secured a framework of timber about five feet in height, above the crown of the Ogee Falls, instead of trusting to sleepers which were constantly giving way. By this arrangement the water was held up, so that erosive action on the bed and banks

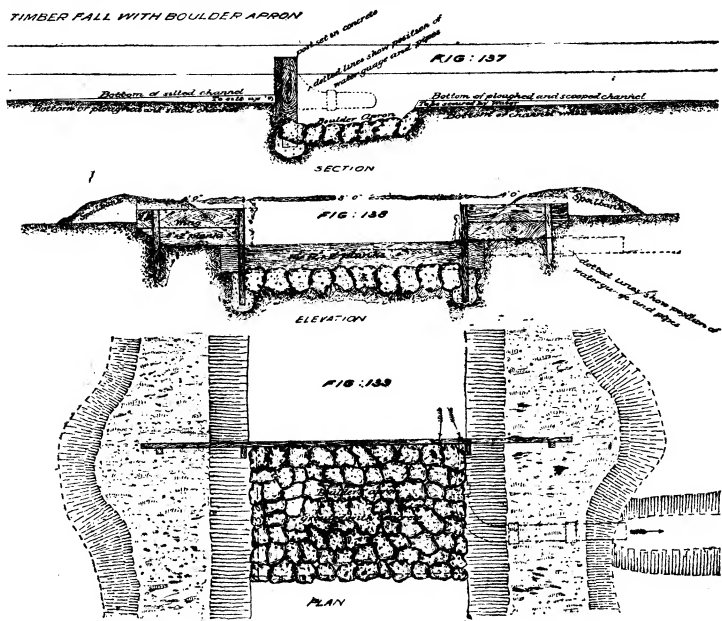
*On the Benefits of Irrigation in India, and on the proper Construction of Irrigation Canals by Thomas Login, M. Inst. C. E., in Proceedings of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Volume XXVII.

was prevented on the up-stream side of the canal, and it is a remarkable fact, that though there was a perpendicular fall of five feet or more on the crown of the Ogee,



Section of Vertical Fall on Baree Doab Canal.

no injury was done to the brickwork at the point where the water impinged. Probably this was owing to the



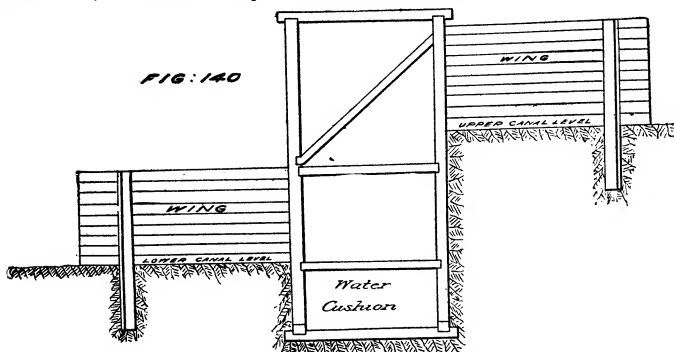
water, which passed through the open spaces of the timber framework, forming a cushion for the descending water.

Mr. Login also constructed a rough sort of submerged weir $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet high across the chambers of the falls, by which a cistern was formed to receive the descending mass, and in this manner diminished the destructive effect of the falling water.

Figure 136 shows a vertical fall with water cushion on the Baree Doab Canal, India. It will be seen that the bed is protected for some distance, on the lower side, with masonry and paved flooring.

Figure 137 shows a longitudinal section, Figure 138 a cross-section, and Figure 139 a plan of a vertical fall with water cushion, constructed of timber and bowlders, on a small irrigation canal on the Canterbury Plains, New Zealand.*

The maximum discharge of this canal is about 50 cubic feet per second. A water gauge, for delivering the required quantity of water to one of the distributing channels, is shown by the dotted lines.



Section of Timber Fall with Water Cushion.

Figure 140 shows a vertical fall with water-cushion on the Turlock Canal, California. This diagram is taken from a paper by Mr. H. M. Wilson, C. E., in Transactions of Am. Soc. C. E., Vol. XXV.

* Water Supply and Irrigation of the Canterbury Plains, New Zealand, by George Frederick Ritso, Assoc. M. Inst. C. E., in Proceedings of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Volume LXXIV, 1883.

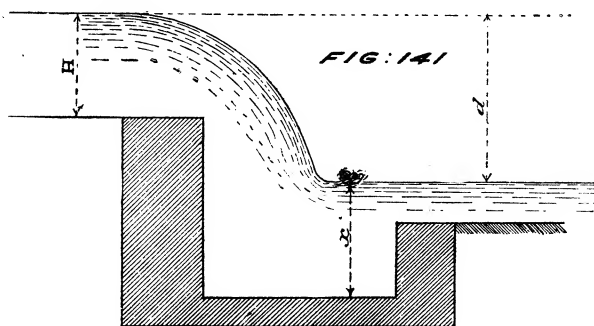
The following formula has been used in India to find the depth of the cistern below the lower bed of the canal. It is:—

$$x = (h)^{\frac{1}{2}} \times (d)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

in which x = the required depth of cistern below the lower bed of the canal.

h = the height or fall, that is, the difference of level between the surface of water above the fall and the surface of water below it.

d = full supply depth of water in the channel.



Section of Vertical Fall with Water Cushion.

It has been stated that all the cisterns constructed with depths thus obtained, have answered admirably, having required but slight repairs since they were built.

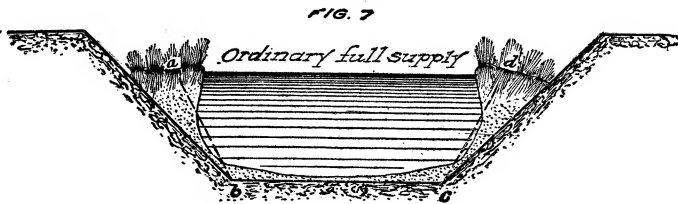
The very dangerous scouring and cutting action of a large body of water falling over a height of even a few feet can be readily understood. The greater the height of the fall and the depth of water, the more violent, of course, will be the action. Those on the original Ganges Canal are not higher than eight feet, but the destructive action of over 6,000 cubic feet of water per second, and having a depth on the crest of the fall of six feet or more, is very great, and nothing but the best masonry is capable of resisting it.

If stone of good quality can be obtained it should always be employed, laid on an unyielding foundation, with fine mortar joints. The banks must be protected with masonry for a considerable distance down stream, and the bed of the canal protected by a solid masonry flooring, the down stream end of which is protected by a row of sheet piling.

The depth of water over the crest of a fall is less than that in the canal above the fall, and it follows that the effect of a fall occurring at the end of a canal reach is to increase the grade, and, therefore, the velocity, and to diminish the depth of water for a considerable distance above the fall. The increase of velocity and diminution of depth are gradual from the point where the action commences down to the fall itself, where, of course, they attain a maximum, so that the depth of water passing over the fall is very much less, as the velocity is very much greater, than the normal depth and velocity above. This increase of velocity, before the water reaches the fall, produces a dangerous scour on the bed and banks of the canal, and in order to guard against this, it has been found necessary to head up the water at the falls on the Ganges Canal by means of sleepers dropped in the grooves of the piers, which has virtually increased the height of the fall, and has been one cause of the flooring, on the lower side of the fall, suffering in places from the violent action of the water. It has also been proposed to narrow the falls to produce the same effect.

The method most commonly adopted in India is to raise the crest of the falls by a masonry weir, as shown in Figure 132. At first the crest of the fall was on the level of the bed of the canal on the upper reach. The height to which it is necessary to raise the crest of the weir may be found from the following investigation, as

officer of irrigation experience is able to distinguish between a rajbuha (lateral or distributary) newly made, and one that has settled down into an irrigating line. Whatever slope is adopted in construction, it is found that this cannot be advantageously maintained after the channel has been in use for some time. A distributary at the close of an irrigating season invariably assumes the following shape, except when the soil is impregnated with reh (alkali).



When the time for clearance comes round, the engineer in charge, if he is wise, will not attempt to restore the original section which is opposed to the form that nature adopts. It is only waste of money to dig away the long slopes which are soon recovered with silt, while in theory it does not afford a maximum hydraulic depth which it is the great object to attain in channels with low velocities. The custom on the Ganges Canal Distributaries is to trim off the slope at $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1, as shown by thick dotted lines, *ab, cd*, in Figure 7; and this, in practice, is found to conform more closely to the average working section than any other. To arrive, then, approximately, at anything like the working results, the discharge tables employed by the rajbuha (distributary or lateral) designer should be based on these conditions."

The following canals have the side slopes mentioned opposite their names. More information relating to these and other canals will be found in Article 10.

IRRIGATION CANALS

AND OTHER

Irrigation Works.

Article 1. Canals divided into two Classes.

Canals are divided into two great classes, those for irrigation alone, and those for irrigation and navigation combined. The conditions required to develop one of the former class successfully, are:—

1st. That it should be carried at as high a level as possible, so as to have sufficient fall to irrigate the land for a considerable distance, on one or both sides of it.

2d. That it should be a running stream, so as to be fed by continuous supplies of water from the parent river, to compensate for that consumed in irrigating the lands.

The conditions of a canal for combined navigation and irrigation are, on the contrary, that it should be a still-water canal, so that navigation may be equally easy in both directions; and, as no water is consumed except by evaporation and absorption, and at points of transfer at locks, the required quantity of fresh supply is comparatively small, and it is thus most economically constructed at a low level.

given by Colonel Dyas, modified, however, by the writer to suit the symbols used, and also Kutter's formula, as simplified in this work.

v = mean velocity in feet in open channel.

a = sectional area of open channel in square feet.

r = hydraulic mean depth of same in feet.

s = sine of slope.

h = height in feet of surface of water in channel, above crest of fall.

l = length of crest of fall in feet.

m = co-efficient of discharge over weir varying from 2.5 to 3.5.

c = co-efficient of discharge of open channel.

Allowing for velocity of approach, we have discharge over fall *complete*, that is, a free fall:—

$$Q = m l \left(h + \frac{v^2}{2g} \right)^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

$$\text{but } v = c \times (rs)^{\frac{1}{2}} \therefore v^2 = c^2 \times rs$$

substituting value of v^2 we have:—

$$\text{Discharge over fall } Q = m l \left(h + \frac{c^2 rs}{2g} \right)^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

The discharge in channel above weir:—

$$Q = a c (rs)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\therefore m l \left(h + \frac{c^2 rs}{2g} \right)^{\frac{3}{2}} = a c (rs)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\therefore m l \left(\frac{2gh + c^2 rs}{2g} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \times \left(\frac{2gh + c^2 rs}{2g} \right) = a c (rs)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\therefore l = \frac{1}{m} \times a c (rs)^{\frac{1}{2}} \times \left(\frac{2g}{2gh + c^2 rs} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \times \left(\frac{2g}{2gh + c^2 rs} \right)$$

$$\therefore l = \frac{1}{m} \times 2a g c \times \left(\frac{2g r s}{2g h + c^2 r s} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \times \frac{1}{2g h + c^2 r s}$$

$$\therefore l = \frac{1}{m} \times 2a g c \times \frac{(2g r s)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{(2g h + c^2 r s)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$$

Now, to find h , we have from equation above by squaring,

$$m^2 l^2 \left(h + \frac{c^2 r s}{2g} \right)^3 = a^2 c^2 r s$$

extract cube root

$$(m^2 l^2)^{\frac{1}{3}} \times \left(\frac{2g h + c^2 r s}{2g} \right) = (a^2 c^2 r s)$$

$$\therefore \frac{2g h + c^2 r s}{2g} = \left(\frac{a^2 c^2 r s}{m^2 l^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

$$h + \frac{c^2 r s}{2g} = \left(\frac{a^2 c^2 r s}{m^2 l^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

$$\therefore h = \left(\frac{a^2 c^2 r s}{m^2 l^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{3}} - \frac{c^2 r s}{2g} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (A)$$

Having thus got the value of h , deduct it from the depth of water in the channel, and we have the height to which the weir should be raised above the bed of the canal, Figure 132, in order that the water in its approach to the weir may not have any increase of velocity.

Example:—Let the bed width of the channel above the weir be 60 feet, depth 9 feet, side slopes 1 to 1, grade 6 inches per mile and $n = .025$. Also, let the length of the crest of weir be 55 feet. Now, let us compute to what depth the crest of the weir must be raised, in order that the water approaching the weir may not have a greater velocity than the mean velocity in the open channel.

In the open channel we have: (see *Flow of Water*)

$$r = \frac{a}{p} = \frac{621}{84.726} = 7.3295 \text{ and } \sqrt{r} = 2.7 \text{ m} = 3,$$

$$\text{and } c = 86.4$$

$$s = 6 \text{ inches per mile} = .000094697;$$

substituting values of a , c , r , s , m , l , and g , in above formula (A) we have

$$h = \left(\frac{621^2 + 86.4^2 + 7.3295 \times .000094697}{3^2 \times 55^2} \right) - \left(\frac{86.4^2 \times 7.3295 \times .000094697}{2 \times 32.2} \right) = 4.1808 \text{ feet.}$$

Now, as a check, let us compute the discharge over weir:—

$$Q = 3 \times 55 \times 4.1808 \sqrt{4.1808}$$

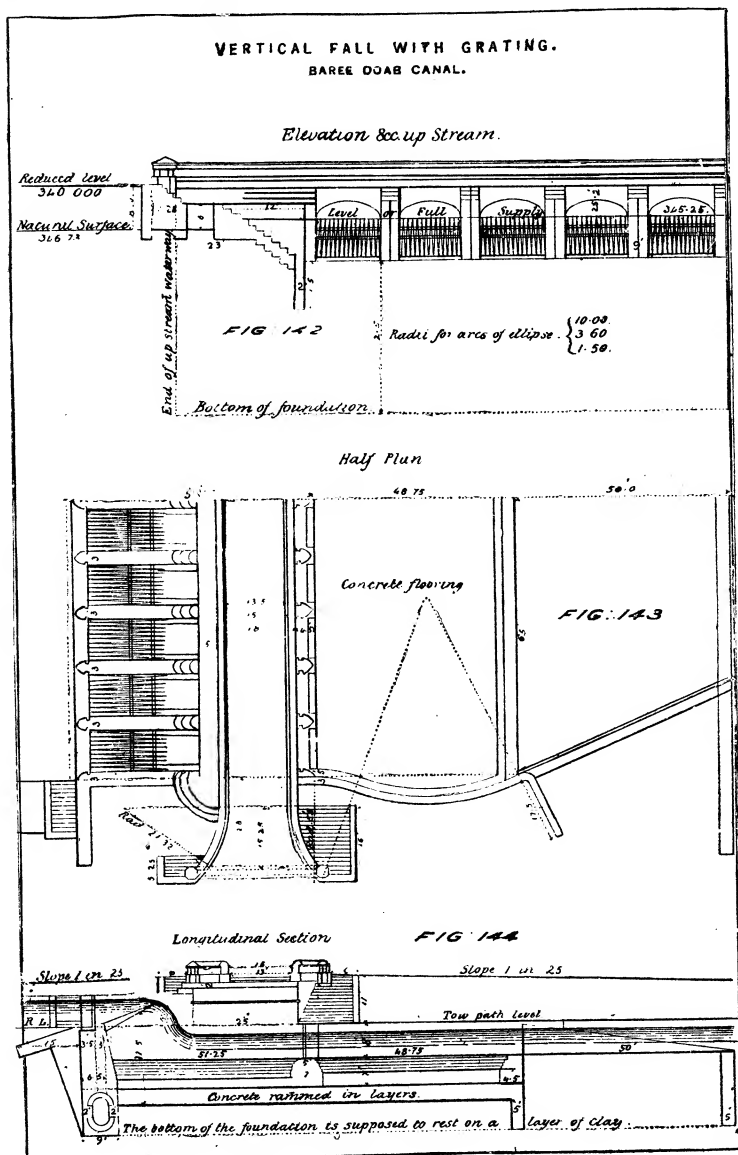
= 1409 nearly, which is also the discharge in the open channel, computed by Kutter's formula, with the dimensions above given. Now $9 - 4.1808 = 4.8192$ feet is the height above crest of fall to which the weir must be built. This raising of crest, however, is suited to only one depth of water in the open channel. A much better plan by which the crest of the weir can be adjusted to any depth of water in the channel, is shown in Figures 152, 153 and 154.

Vertical Falls, with Gratings.

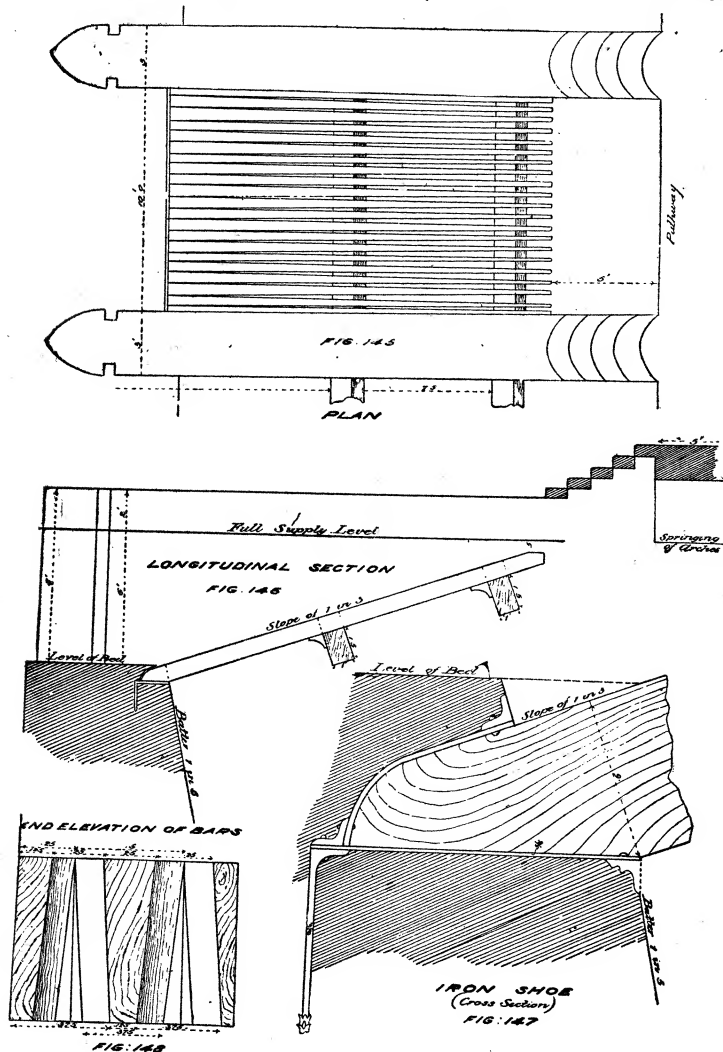
The result of experience seems to show that Vertical Falls with Gratings, as used on the Baree Doab Canal, and illustrated in Figures 142 to 151 inclusive, are the best that have yet been adopted.

By referring to the drawings, it will be seen that the water is made to fall vertically through a grating laid at a slope of about one in three, and that its action on the surface below is thus spread over as large an area as may be wished. Owing to the several filaments of water

being separated by the bars, much air is carried down with the water, and the action below is reduced to a



minimum. The bars are laid longitudinally with the stream, and at their lower ends, which rest on the crest



of the fall, they are close together, and at the upper end they are farther apart. The teeth of a comb give a good idea of the arrangement.

The grating consists of a number of wooden bars resting on an iron shoe built into the crest of the fall, and one or more cross-beams, according to the length of the bars. They are laid at a slope of one in three, and are of such length, that the full supply level of the water in the canal, tops their upper ends by half a foot.*

The grating divides the water into a number of filaments or threads, and spreads the falling volume over a greater area, thus lessening very much its destructive action on the floor of the cistern.

The scantling of the bars as well as of the beams should, of course, be proportioned to the weight they have to bear, plus the extra accidental strains to which they are liable, from floating timber for instance, which may possibly pass between the piers and so come in contact with the grating. In consideration of strains and shocks of this nature, the supporting beams are set with their line of depth at right angles to the bars instead of vertically.

The dimensions of the bars used on the falls of the Baree Doab Canal, where the depth of water is 6.6 feet, are as follows:—

Deodar Wood.

Lower end of bars, 0'.50 broad \times 0'.75 deep,

Upper end of bars 0.25 broad \times 0.75 deep,

and they are supported on two deodar beams, each measuring one foot in breadth \times 1.5 feet in depth; the first beam being placed at a distance of 7.5 feet (horizontal measurement) from the crest of the fall, and the second 7.5 feet beyond the first beam.

The bars of the grating on these falls were originally placed touching each other, side by side, at their lower

*Captain J. H. Dyas in Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Volume 3. First Series.

ends, as there was not then a full supply of water in the canal. There were thus 20 bars in each 10-foot bay. Since then the number of bars has been necessarily reduced to 19 and to 18, the latter being the present number. The reduction of the number of bars and the equal spacing of the remaining bars is done with ease, as they can be pushed sideways in the iron shoe and along the beams, to which latter they are held with spike nails. Once the correct spacing is arrived at, cleats and blocks are preferable to spike nails.

The bars are undercut from the point where they leave the shoe, *i. e.*, from the crest of the fall, so as to make each space, as it were, "an orifice in a thin plate," and it facilitates the escape of small matters which may be brought down with the current. Large rubbish, which accumulates on the grating, is daily raked off and piled on one side of the fall. This is done by the establishment kept up for the neighboring lock. There is considerable advantage in thus clearing the canal of rubbish, which would otherwise stick in rajbuha (distributary) heads, on piers of bridges, etc., or eventually ground on the bed of the canal, and become nuclei of large lumps and silt banks. But supposing that there were no one at hand to rake the *debris* off, and that the grating became choked, the water would merely rise until it could pour over the top of the grating, and the rubbish would be swept over with it.

Where gratings are used they act instead of a weir in checking the velocity of the water above the falls, and the principle to be adopted in spacing the bars, is to arrange them so that the velocity of no one thread of the stream shall be either accelerated or retarded by the proximity of the fall. This effected, it is evident that the surface of the water must remain at its normal slope, parallel to the bed of the canal, until it arrives at the grating.

To take an example, let us assume that:—

mean vel. $v = 0.81 v_{\max}$

$v_b = 0.62 v_{\max}$ (in every vertical line of the
current flowing naturally.)

where v = mean velocity in feet per second,

v_{\max} = surface velocity in feet per second,

v_b = bottom velocity in feet per second.

Then if we make $v = 2.5$ feet per second, we shall have the following velocities at the given depths below the surface in a stream 6 feet deep:—

Depths below surface in feet.	Velocities in feet per second	REMARKS.
Surface.....0	3.0864	Common difference 0.1955 nearly.
“ “1	2.8909	
“ “2	2.6955	
Center.....3	2.5	
“ “4	2.3046	
“ “5	2.1091	
Bottom .....6	1.9136	

What is required, then, is to shape the sides of a given number of bars, placed in a given width of bay, so that the above velocities may be maintained till the water touches the grating, when, in consequence of the clear fall, the velocity becomes considerably accelerated. This accelerated velocity multiplied by the reduced area, of space between the bars, should give the same discharge, with the canal running full, as the product of the original normal velocity and the original undiminished space, the width of which is, of course, the distance between the centers of two contiguous bars.

Thus, taking the lowest film, along the bed of the canal, whose normal velocity is 1.9136 feet per second, and supposing 20 to be the number of bars in each bay, then the undiminished space for each portion of the stream will be half a foot, which multiplied by the above velocity gives a product of 0.9568. Again, taking, the same lowest film as it passes through the grating, with a clear fall, and under a head of pressure of six feet, we find its velocity to be 19.654 feet per second. Now, if we called the required width of space between the bars at this point x_a , and assume the co-efficient of contraction to be 0.6, we shall have:

$$x_a = \frac{0.9568}{19.654 \times 0.6} = 0.08 \text{ foot.}$$

Similarly, taking the film on the level of the tops of the bars, or 0.5 foot below the surface of the water, the normal velocity of which is 2.9887, the undiminished space being, as before, 0.5 foot, we get a product of 1.4944; and as the velocity of the film falling through the bars is 5.673 feet per second, we get:—

$$x_s = \frac{1.4944}{5.673 \times 0.6} = 0.44 \text{ foot.}$$

And lastly, taking the center film, the normal velocity of which is 2.5 feet per second, we have a product of 1.25, and as the velocity of the same film passing through the grating is 13.89 feet per second, we get:—

$$x_t = \frac{1.25}{13.89 \times 0.6} = 0.15 \text{ foot.}$$

Hence, it is seen that the sides of the bars should be cut to a curve, as shown in Figure 149, convex towards the open space; but in practice this nicety is scarcely requisite, and they may be made as shown in Figure 150.

The above remarks have been limited to a consideration of the effect caused by the grating on the channel

above the fall. Its effect on the channel below the fall is equally important. The velocity, eddies and consequent erosion below the fall are much diminished by the gratings.

Fig. 149.

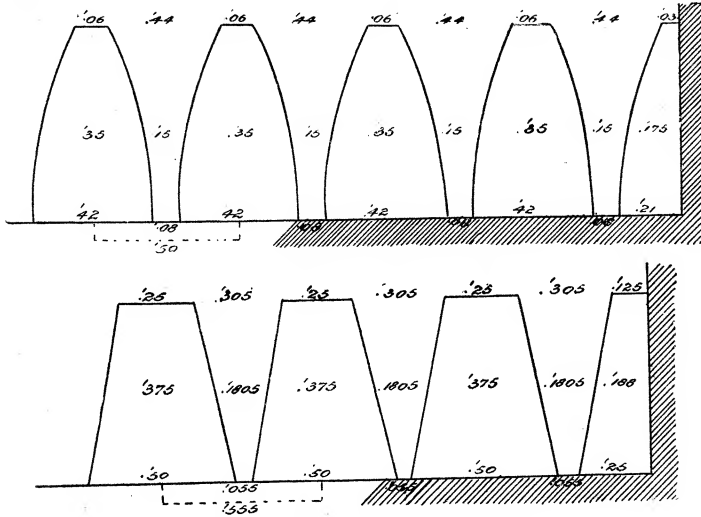


Fig. 150. Plans of Bars of Grating.

Colonel Dyas, an engineer of great experience, when in charge of the Baree Doab Canal wrote on this subject*:

“In my opinion the Grating Fall is the best fall yet known, and the next best is the Vertical Fall without grating. We have but one Ogee Fall on the Baree Doab Canal, and that one has given us more trouble in repairing it than all the rest together. Indeed we have not had to touch the others although we have had a flood down the canal that submerged them. You can have no idea without seeing them how completely under control the water is by their means. *Divide and conquer* is their motto, and I think it is the true principle.”

*Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Volume 1. First Series.

TABLE 3. Giving the inner side slopes of canals in earth and sandy loam.

Ganges Canal, India.....	$1\frac{1}{2}$ (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Sone Canals, India.....	$1\frac{1}{2}$ (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Sutlej Canal, India.....	1 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Agra Canal, India.....	1 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Cavour Canal, Italy.....	$1\frac{1}{2}$ (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Henares Canal, Spain.....	$1\frac{1}{2}$ (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Del Norte Canal, Colorado.....	3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Citizens Canal, Colorado.....	3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Turlock Canal, California.....	2 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).
Central Canal, California.....	2 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).

TABLE 4. Giving the natural slopes of materials with the horizontal line.

	Degrees.		Degrees.
Gravel, average.....	40	Shingle.....	39
Dry sand.....	38	Rubble.....	45
Sand.....	22	Clay, well drained.....	45
Vegetable earth.....	28	Clay, wet.....	16
Compact earth.....	50		

Article 8. Grade or Slope of Bed of Canal.

The method of finding the grade of a channel of given dimensions, in order that it may have a certain velocity or discharge, is fully explained in the article on the *Flow of Water*, as well as the solution of all the other problems relating to open channels, likely to occur in practice.

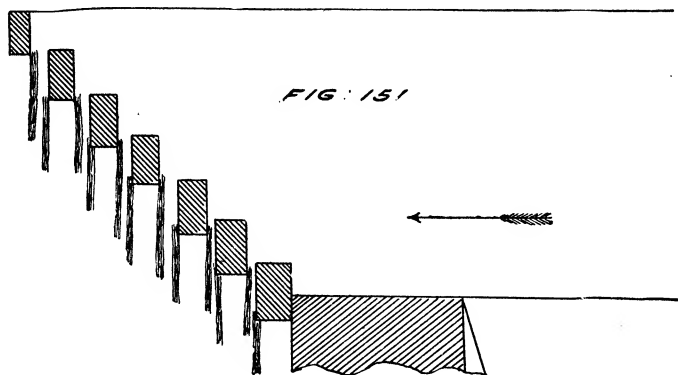
The discharge of an irrigation canal is diminished in proportion to the quantity of water expended for irrigation from its head to its tail end. There are three methods by which the diminution of the discharge is regulated:—

1. By diminution of sectional area and an increase of slope, so proportioned that, though the discharge is reduced as required, still the velocity is not diminished throughout the full length of the canal channels.

2. By keeping the same sectional area and diminishing the longitudinal slopes or grades.

3. By maintaining the same grade and diminishing the sectional area.

Figure 151 is a cross-section of a grating having horizontal bars at right angles to the axis of the canal.



Section of Grating having Horizontal Bars.

Fall with Sliding Gate.

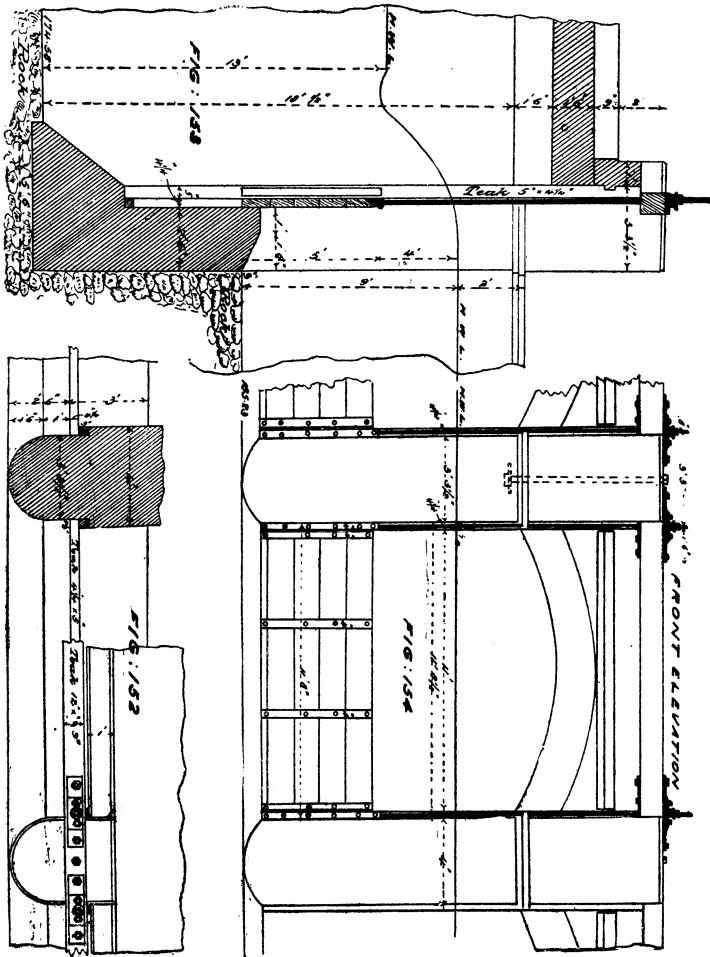
A Fall with a sliding gate, on the Sukkur Canal, in India, is shown in Figures 152, 153 and 154.*

Above the fall the canal has a bottom width of 60 feet, depth 9 feet, side slopes 1 to 1, and a fall of 6 inches per mile. The mean velocity is 2.27 feet per second, and the discharge 1,410 cubic feet per second. Kutter's formula, with a value of $n = .025$, applied to this channel, will give the mean velocity mentioned of 2.27 feet per second. See the *Flow of Water*.

The fall is divided into five bays of 11 feet each in width, by piers 4 feet thick. The plan of one of these bays is shown in Figure 152. The difference of level between the beds of the canal above and below the fall is 7.55 feet, and of the high water lines 3.55 feet. The crest of the masonry portion of the weir is nine inches above the bed, Figure 153.

* Col. J. Le Mesurier, R. E., in Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Vol. 5, Second Series

The thickness of the weir is two feet six inches. It is in fact nothing more than a brickwork facing to the rock, forming an even surface, on which the timbers are fixed, against which the gates can slide.



Fall on the Sukkur Canal, India.

There is no cistern or basin to form a water-cushion under the falling water, as the bed at this place is com-

posed of sound rock. The bed and banks, for a distance of 400 feet below the falls, are protected with rough stone pitching, laid dry, about one foot six inches or two feet thick.

The plan of using *sliding gates* to form the weir, instead of building up a mass of masonry above the bed, is believed to have been introduced for the first time on the Sukkur Canal, to regulate the depth of fall to actual discharge on a canal with a maximum capacity of over 1,400 cubic feet per second.

The gate, Figures 153 and 154, is constructed of four-inch teak plank, with a strip of $3\frac{1}{2}$ -inch angle-iron along the top and bottom of the down-stream face. The gate is strengthened, at front and back, by four strips of three-eighths inch plate iron four inches wide, and by two cross-pieces of $3\frac{1}{2}$ -inch angle-iron at the back. The gate, when lowered to the full extent, rests on a piece of teak $11' 8\frac{1}{2}" \times 5" \times 4\frac{1}{4}"$, fastened to the brickwork by bolts, and its top is then level with the crest of the masonry, or nine inches above the bed of the canal. It slides up and down against two vertical straining pieces of teak scantling $5" \times 4\frac{1}{4}"$, fastened by lewis bolts to the piers, which are recessed for the purpose; the thickness of the pier being four feet, and of the upper cutwater three feet three and one-half inches.

When the full supply is going over the gate its top is five feet above the level of the bed, or its bottom nine inches below the crest of the masonry. The man in charge of the falls has orders to keep the gauges at the head regulator and at the falls, reading the same, and when this is the case, the surface slope of the water is six inches per mile. If less than nine feet is admitted at the head, the gates at the falls are lowered until the two gauges read the same. If at any time it is necessary to admit a greater depth than nine feet, the gates are raised.

The apparatus for raising or lowering the gates is very simple. Across the cutwaters, a teak beam nine inches wide by twelve inches deep, is laid and bolted down to the piers by a two-inch bolt. The screws which are attached to the gates are of two-inch rod, cut to one-quarter inch pitch; they pass through holes cut in the teak beams, and are wound up and down by a brass nut, turned by an iron handle. In the cold weather, when the canal is dry, the wood and iron work of the gates are well dressed with common fish oil, procured from the fishermen on the river.

The gates are eleven feet eight inches long, and as the opening in which they slide is eleven feet eight and one-half inches, they have a play one-quarter inch at each end. There is also a small play between the front of the gate and the back of the masonry of the weir wall; one-quarter inch is shown in Figure 153, but it is in reality less than this. The four-inch strips of plate iron are countersunk into the front of the gate, but not into the back, and all the rivets and bolts as well, so that the face of the gate is perfectly level and flush; and there is no reason why more than one-sixteenth of an inch play should be given. It was considered advisable, however, as the gates had to be made in Karachi, and sent up to Sukkur ready to be put up, to allow for one-quarter inch play when building the masonry.

One advantage of this kind of fall, and a very great one, is that it suits a variable depth in the canal, as the gate can be raised or lowered, according to the depth of water admitted. Another advantage appears to be that, the action of the water upon the bed and banks below the fall is reduced to a minimum. The canal is merely protected by a comparatively thin layer of rough stones, procured from the excavation, and laid dry, and up to the present time no repairs of any sort have been re-

quired. The bed and banks of the canal above the falls are almost as clean as the day they were cut, as, whatever the depth of water is, the surface slope is kept fixed at six inches a mile, and the mean velocity never exceeds two and one-quarter feet per second, which is the velocity with maximum supply.

Fall with Plank Panels or Flash Boards.

Figure 155 shows a timber fall on the Calloway Canal, California. Flash boards can be placed on the framing of this fall to regulate the height of the water in the upper reach of the canal. This is a very light structure, and it is built on a somewhat similar plan to that of the Kern River Weir, Figure 20.

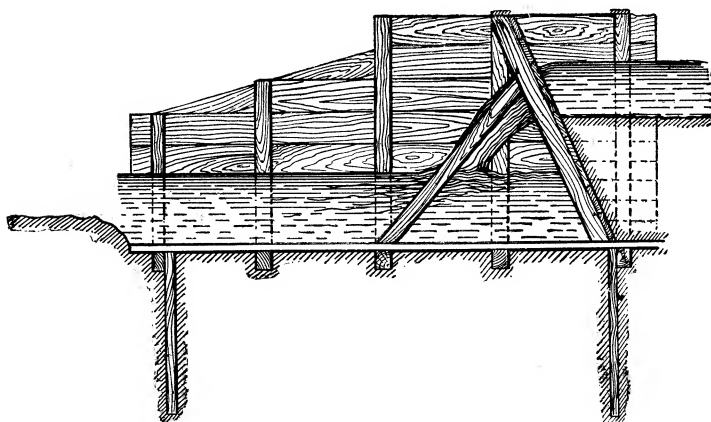


Fig. 155. Timber Fall with Plank Panels or Flash Boards.

A good floor for the lower part of drops is sometimes made in the following manner: A wooden box is constructed as large as the intended floor, and from one to three feet in depth. If the material is sand or loam, the joints of the boards are covered inside with thick tarred brown paper, after which the box is filled with sand or loam and the cover nailed on. The filling gives the box weight and stability.

At the lower edge of the box a row of sheet piling is sometimes fixed. The sheet piling should not be driven. The best way to fix it is to excavate a trench and, if not too large, to frame the sheet piling together and put it into the trench framed in one piece, then fill in the material on each side and tamp it in layers. A piece of timber can then be fixed and spiked to the top of the sheet piling and the box.

On the Uncompahgre Canal in Colorado, carrying 725 cubic feet per second, the water drops 230 feet over a precipitous rocky cliff into the bed of a dry wash.

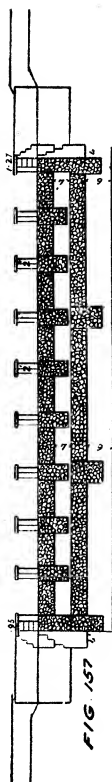
Article 40. Rapids.

Instead of falls, and to accomplish the necessary change of level, *Rapids* have been employed with success on the Baree Doab Canal,* that is, the fall is laid out on a long slope of about 15 to 1, instead of by a single drop. The slope is paved with bowlders, laid with or without cement, and confined by walls of masonry in cement, at intervals of 40 feet, both longitudinally and across stream. The longer and flatter the slope, the more gentle is, of course, the action of the water; but the greater, also, is the quantity of masonry employed. In general the choice between the two is a mere question of expense and material available. On the Baree Doab Canal, rapids were adopted wherever bowlders were procurable at moderate cost. Figures 156, 157 and 158 show a rapid on the Baree Doab Canal.

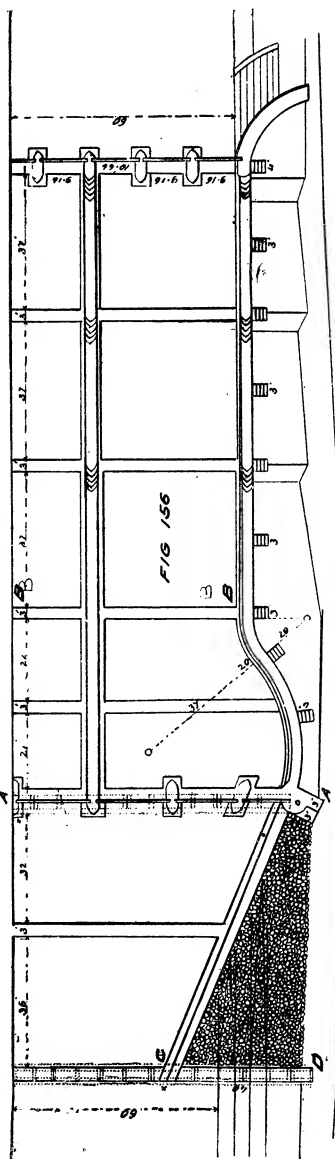
Bowlders or quarry stone are the proper material for the flooring of a rapid, and soft stone or ordinary brick work should not be used in contact with currents of such high velocities. Even the very best brick work cannot

*Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Vol. 1, First Series, and Roorkee Treatise on Civil Engineering.

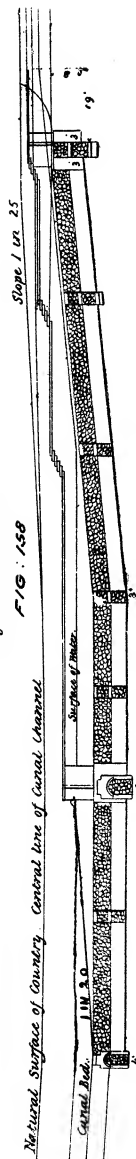
Transverse Section at Crest and Tail or at commencement and end of Slope.



Half Plan



Longitudinal Section



Rapid on Baree Doab Canal.

stand the wear and tear, for any length of time, of water at a high velocity and carrying sand and silt. Hard stone should be used with all surfaces in contact with velocities exceeding, say, ten feet per second.

The bowlders should generally be grouted in with good hydraulic mortar and small pebbles or shingle. Portland cement mortar, if available at moderate cost, would be the best cementing material. Dry boulder work is not to be depended on for velocities higher than 15 feet per

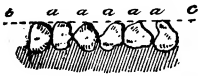


Fig. 159.

second, even when they weigh as much as 80 pounds each, and are laid at a slope of 1 in 15. There should be no attempt made to bring the surface of the boulder work up smooth, by filling in the spaces *a, a, a*, Figure 159.

All that is necessary is to lay the bowlders, and to pack them, so that their tops are pretty well in line as *b, c*; any further filling in would stand a good chance of being washed out very soon, and if it remained, its effect would be to increase the velocity of the current on the rapid by diminishing the resistance presented to the water by the rough boulder work.

The Baree Doab Canal Rapids have tail walls of peculiar construction, Figure 156, for the purpose of destroying back eddies, and of protecting the canal banks below the rapid from the direct action of the current. These tail walls are intended to be so arranged that the heaviest action of water at the foot of the rapid shall take place in the widest part *AA*, the normal width of the rapid being represented by *BB*, and they incline towards each other from this point so as to direct the set of the stream well to the center of the canal, thus protecting the banks from the direct action of the current for a considerable distance. At the same time, as may be seen from the longitudinal section, Figure 158, the tail walls are not

kept at their full height throughout, but beginning a little below where the curve ends, at the level of full supply only, they gradually become lower and lower, slope 1 in 20, till they vanish altogether, where they are on the same level as the bed of the canal. The triangular spaces. *A C D*, behind the walls in plan, are filled in with dry bowlders, to the level of the top of the sloping tail wall. When the full supply is running, these tail walls are submerged and invisible, the rapid appearing to end just below *A A*. These tail walls do not check the "lap-lap" or ceaseless wave-like undulation of the water below the rapid. That is not their office, and indeed it would be difficult to check that movement, but they effectually do away with back eddies by keeping the current always in onward motion, exposing no abruptly terminating projection behind which an eddy can form, and at the same time they protect the banks by making that motion moderate in the neighborhood of the banks.

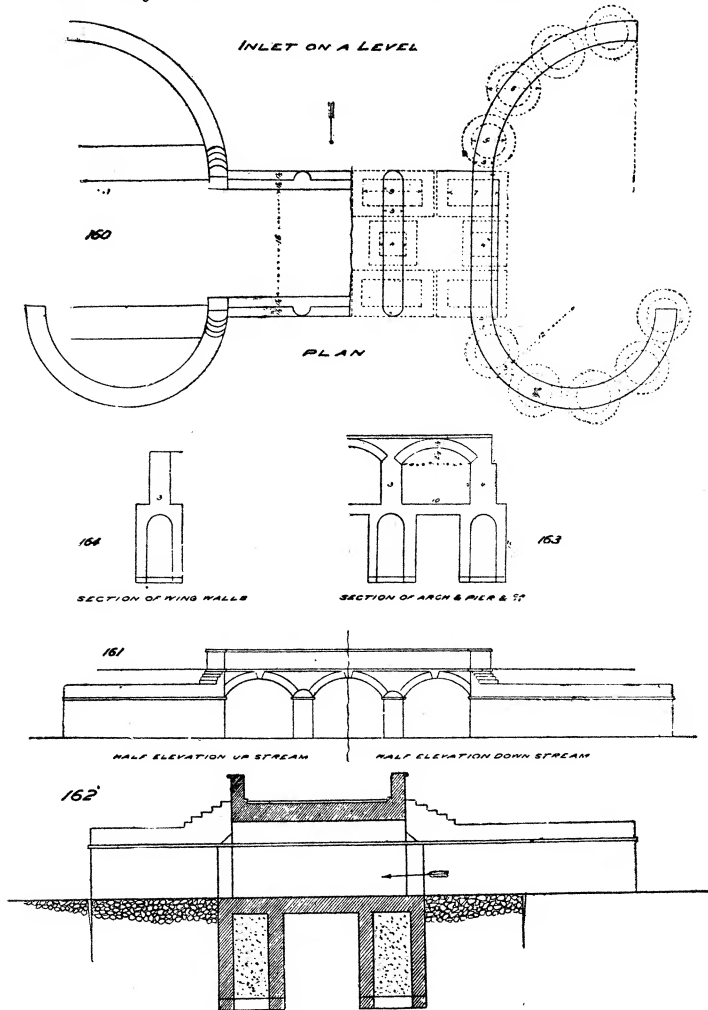
In case no such tail walls are given, experience has shown that the banks of the canal when constructed of ordinary loam, should be faced with bowlders or some other protection for a length of 300 feet below the rapid and on each side of the canal.

The maximum velocity of current which a boulder rapid will stand without injury cannot be exactly determined, but experience has proved that a rapid, such as is shown in Figures 156, 157 and 158, with a flooring composed of bowlders, weighing not less than eighty pounds each, well packed *on end*, somewhat similar to Figure 159, and at a slope of 1 in 15, will *not* stand a mean velocity of 17.4 feet per second.

A good example of a wooden flume rapid has already been illustrated in Figures 87 and 88, page 153.

Article 41. Inlets.

When a canal crosses a small drainage channel that is filled only occasionally, in very heavy rains, and



whose duration of flood lasts but a short time, an Inlet is provided in the canal embankment to allow the flood

An example of the *first method* is herewith given in detail.

Where the fall of the country is tolerably uniform, the slope of the bed of the main channel should be less than that of the branches, which again should be less than that of the minor channels and cuts. The object of this is to secure, as far as possible, a uniform velocity so that the alluvial matter held in suspension may be carried on from the head, and deposited uniformly over the lands irrigated.

There are two important reasons why the silt should be carried on to the land, the first is that the annual silt clearance from the canal may be lessened as much as possible, and the second is, that the silt, if it has fertilizing qualities, is of great benefit to the land. The benefit derived from this is fully explained in the article entitled *Fertilizing Silt*.

As to the actual fall which should be given to a main canal, of say bed width 100 feet, and depth of water 6 to 10 feet, experience shows that about 6 inches to 1 foot in a mile is ample, with a wetted border of average roughness.

The *List of Canals*, in Article 10, gives the grade of the principal Irrigation Canals in existence.

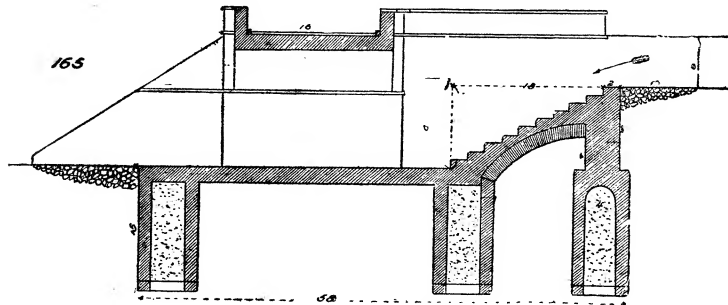
Let us now assume that a canal having a capacity of 1,700 cubic feet per second is required to irrigate a certain district. Experience on other canals in the district has shown that a mean velocity of 2.5 feet per second will prevent the deposition of silt, whilst at the same time it will not erode the bed or banks. It is therefore determined to give the canal a bed-width of 100 feet, a depth of water of 6.5 feet, and side slopes of 1 to 1. By Kutter's formula, with $n = .025$, we find that a slope of 10 inches per mile will give a velocity of 2.5 feet per second, and that therefore the discharge is 1,730.6 cubic feet per

water to pass into the canal. On the Indian and Italian canals, this inlet is usually also a bridge to keep communication open along the canal embankment.

Figures 160 to 164 show details of an inlet on a level,* that is, the level of the bed of the drainage channel is at, or nearly on, the same level as the bed of the canal. There are usually no gates to an inlet. Sometimes perennial streams, when they carry no debris or silt, are admitted into the canal by an inlet.

An inlet differs from a level crossing, shown at page 167, in so far as that it has not an outlet on the opposite side of the canal.

Figure 165 shows an inlet with 10 feet fall, from the



Section of Inlet.

bed of the torrent to the bed of the canal. To pass the torrent over the canal by a Superpassage, *Article 36*, or by an Inverted Syphon, *Article 37*, would be a very expensive work, therefore, an inlet was adopted as being by far the least expensive.

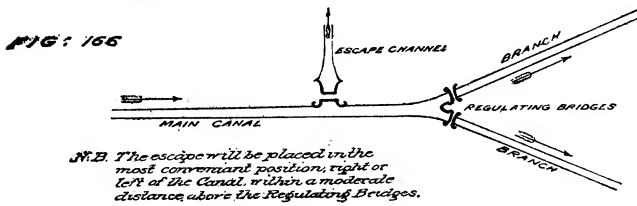
For small streams, cement pipe or vitrified stoneware pipe are very suitable as inlets.

* Sone Canal Project, by Col. C. H. Dickens.

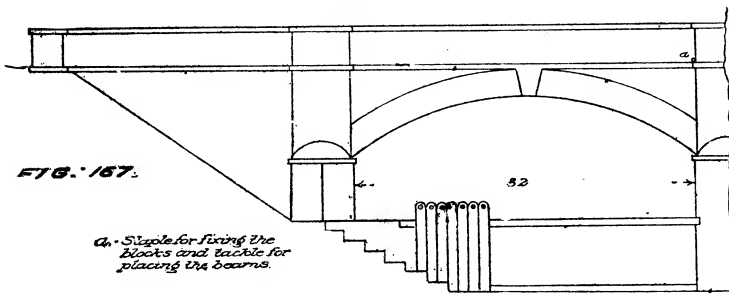
Article 42. Heads of Branch Canals.

On the first-class Indian Canals it is usual to place a Regulator, both on the main line and at the head of a

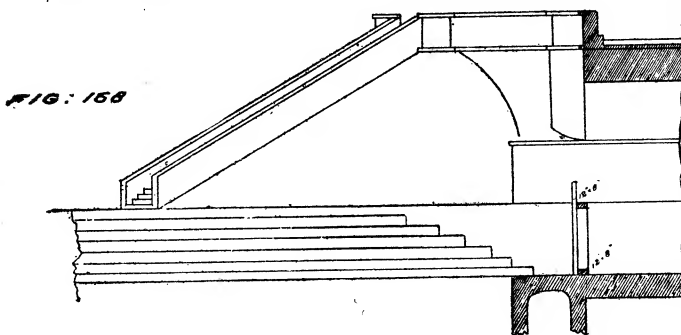
Diagram showing the relative position of the Regulating Bridges and Escapes at Branch Heads.



REGULATING BRIDGE ON BRANCH HEAD



Up-stream Elevation of one span of a bridge showing the stop-boards partially applied.



Section of Bridge, half roadway, with stop-boards fixed.

branch canal, as shown in Figures 166 and 169. These regulators are usually combined with highway bridges constructed of masonry.

On the Sone Canals, India, the original plan provided for branch regulators, on the French Needle Dam plan, Figures 167 and 168, and an escape above each bifurcation, of sufficient capacity to lay both the lower channels dry, as shown in Figure 166. Where the object is to diminish the supply of water in both, it will be unnecessary to do more than open the requisite number of bays of the escape bridge. But when it is desired to keep up the whole supply in one channel, and reduce it, or altogether cut it off, in the other, it will be necessary to drop the sill beam in by the grooves, Figures 167 and 168, using the blocks and tackle, in the deep channels, for the ends near the pier, and afterwards to fix the beam in its seat by the same means. After this, using the upper beam as a bridge, the needles will be applied by hand, to such an extent as may be desired.

The plan will not be so expeditious as that of the drop-gates and windlasses shown in Figure 62. It will, however, provide in a simple way for all that is wanted for small regulators. By the use of a few long drop boards, let down from the parapet of the bridge, the openings could be partially closed without stopping navigation.

In Figure 167 a tow-path for convenience of navigation is shown under the bridge, and seven wooden needles in position to partly close the opening, and in Figure 168 the needles are shown in section, and masonry steps are shown leading from the bridge roadway to the canal.

The following details of the working of a needle dam on the Sidhnai Canal, India, are given here:—*

* The Sidhnai Canal System, by Loudon Francis MacLean, in *Proceedings of the Institution of Civil Engineers*, Volume CIII, 1891.

“ The needles are made of deodar wood, and are seven feet six inches long, by five inches by three and one-half inches, with a stout handle 18 inches long, ending in a knob; they weigh 36 pounds dry and 40 pounds wet, and can be manipulated by one man. After placing the needles in position at first, they are forced up close together by a man standing on the pitching below the dam, who inserts a crowbar with a wedge-shaped end into the opening, causing the needles to slide along the face of the crest wall, any leakage between them being stopped in the following way: A basket fixed to a bamboo about 10 feet long, and filled with shavings or chopped straw, or some similar substance, is slipped down in front of the leak, so that the light material may be sucked by the current into the opening, which it effectually closes. It was not found that the shock of closing on the crest wall, when first placing the needles in position, ever caused them to break when the wood was sound.

“ When there is a great difference of level between the water above and below the dam, a rush of water through the interstices makes it very difficult for a man to stand on the pitching below and use a crowbar. The difficulty is overcome in the following way: A piece of tarpaulin or oiled canvas, eight feet long and six broad, is fastened at one end to a wooden bar six feet four inches long, with handles at each extremity, and at the other end to a bar of round iron six feet four inches long and one inch in diameter. It is then rolled upon the iron bar, and placed horizontally against the needles, above where the excessive leakage occurs, and the wooden bar, which remains on the outside of the roll, is either tied or held in position by the handles; the roll is then let go, and the weight of the iron bar causes it to unroll itself down the face of the needles, at once

closing all the leaks. In order that the screen may be more easily recovered, a cord is attached to a loose collar at each end of the iron bar, and when the needles have been closed up, the screen is pulled up from the bottom by these cords.

For the purpose of regulating the height of water above the dam, it is sufficient in most cases to push some of the needles forward at the top, the water escaping through the open spaces left in this way; but should it be necessary to provide for a greater flow, a sufficient number of them are removed altogether. This can generally be done by hand, but if they have "jammed" from any cause, or if the pressure of the water against them is too great, they are lifted by means of a bent lever.

"An eye bolt is attached to each needle just below the handle; this serves as a fulcrum for the extracting lever, and also to fasten tackle to when the pressure is too great for the needles to be drawn forward by hand. It was found dangerous to work them from the beams, which are only 18 inches wide, and after one life had been lost, and the Author himself had a narrow escape, a foot bridge was added to the dam. * * * *

"Arrangements have been made to send warnings by telegraph of any rise of one foot in the Ravi at Madhopur and Lahore during twenty-four hours. As floods take a minimum of five days from the former, and two days from the latter place to reach Sidhnai, these warnings have been of the greatest service."

Figure 169 is a plan of the regulator at the head of the Kotluh branch of the Sutlej Canal, designed by Major J. Crofton.* With reference to this work he states:—

* Report on the Sutlej Canal.

“The Kotluh branch will take off at an angle of 45° from the main channel, the direction of the central line remaining unaltered. A water-way of 64 feet is given to the central line, and 50 feet to the Kotluh branch,

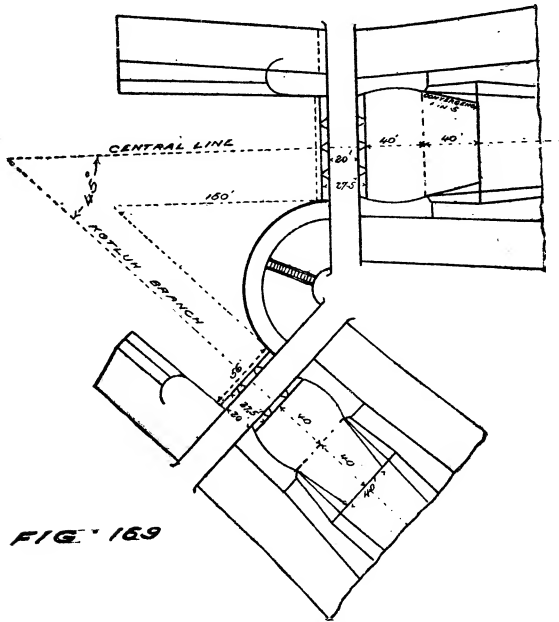


FIG. 169

Kotluh Branch Head at Suranah, Sutlej Canal.

the mean waterway of the channels below being 57.5 and 41.5 feet respectively, divided on the central into four bays, two of 14 feet each and two at the sides of 18 feet each; on the Kotluh branch, two at the sides of 18 feet each, with one central bay of 14 feet; the piers nearest the sides three feet thick, the central one two feet thick, built up to the same level as the tow-path.

* * * * *

“One main object of the arrangement of the works, as shown on the plan, was to bring the bridges as close together as possible, so as partially to obviate the silting

up, which invariably takes place in the upper channel below the point of divergence.

“A drop of half a foot is given to the flooring of the Kotluh branch, for greater facility in adjusting the supply, as it is advantageous to regulate altogether, if possible, by one bridge, leaving the passage through the central line quite free. The regulation at both heads will be effected by vertical sleepers, the needles already described, their lower ends resting in a groove in the flooring, confined above between two beams resting on the piers or side, retaining walls. This is an economical expedient, though, in some respects, not so efficient as the method with drop-gate, shown in Figure 62, still it will answer all the purposes of adjusting the supply. It has the advantage of dividing the entering stream into vertical films, by which the impact on the flooring will be diminished, and it can be worked by a couple of men.”

Article 43. Escapes—Relief Gates—Waste Gates.

In order to provide for the control of the water in the canal, *Escapes*, also called *Relief Gates* and *Waste Gates*, should be made at certain intervals along the line of the canal. An excess of water in the canal, and for which an escape should be available, may arise from a breach in the canal, either at the headworks or at one of the numerous drainage channels crossing the line. Extraordinary floods also cause breaches in the banks, and at times the water is not required for irrigation, and there are various other causes, that point to the necessity of making ample provision, for emptying the canal, *above* the point in danger, in a short time.

The escapes should be made of the shortest possible length, from the canal to some natural water-course, into which the water can be discharged without inun-

dating or damaging the country through which it flows. The dimensions of the escape channel should be fixed so as to be large enough to discharge the maximum supply in the canal.

The location of an escape channel will be determined by the topography of the country, but, as a rule, connection from the canal can be made at intervals with some natural water-course.

An escape should be located above a heavy embankment, and above any part of the canal likely to be breached by floods.

Where possible to do so, they are, in India, provided at regular intervals along the line of the canal. Where they are taken off from the canal, a double regulating head should be built, as shown in Figure 170, one across the canal *AB* to prevent the water flowing down that

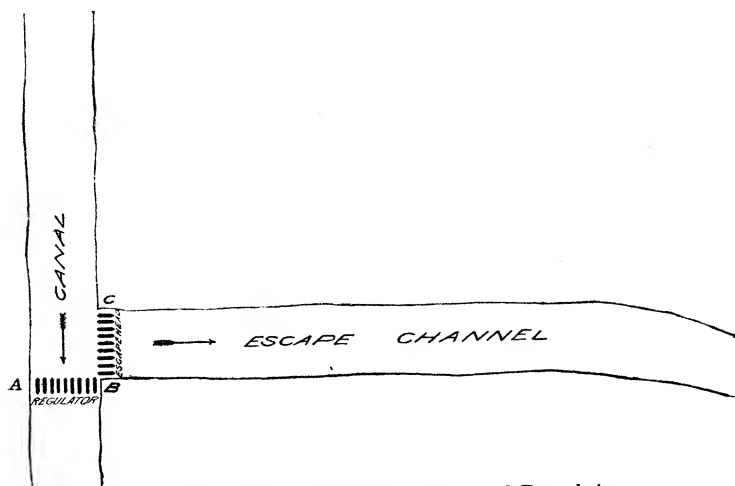


Fig. 170. Plan of Escape Head and Regulator.

way when the escape is in use, and the other across the escape head *BC* to prevent the water flowing down that way when the canal is in use.

Figure 166, page 221, shows the relative position of

an escape to a regulating bridge at an off-take of a branch canal on the Sone Canals, India.

To prevent artificial escape channels from being choked by brush, they should be occasionally cleared, otherwise, when required for use, they may be found choked and prevent the discharge of the water, thus causing an inundation and the destruction of life and property.

On the Ganges Canal, India, escapes were provided every forty miles.

An escape near the head of a canal is sometimes used as a *scouring escape*. An instance of this is on the Agra Canal, India, where a scouring escape is placed one and a-half miles below the canal head. Its waterway is somewhat in excess of that of the canal head, and the object of this is to generate velocity enough in the first one and a-half miles of the canal, to stir up and carry away the silt deposited between the escape and the canal head.

In America, in order to save expense, waste gates are sometimes made in the sides of flumes, but this plan is liable to the objection that the falling water is likely to wash out the foundations and destroy the structure. A channel taken out in cutting, and connected with the water-course, would be the safer plan; the bed and banks of the channel being protected from scour, by paving or some other method.

A few years since, the Naviglio Grande, the Muzza and Martesana Canals, in Italy, had no sort of regulating bridge across their heads, and the flood waters were allowed to enter the canal with their full force, finding an exit in a series of escape-sluices and weirs. The Naviglio Grande has a number of these sluices in the first few miles of its course, and two weirs running along its side of 300 feet and 65 feet in length, with their crests about three feet lower than the surface of the

canal full-water supply. These are blocked up by strong wooden fences, closed up tightly with bundles of fascines. The Martesana and Muzza Canals are also furnished with long over-fall weirs near their heads. That the sytem has gone on so long, among an intelligent people deeply interested in their irrigation, is sufficient proof that no very great harm can arise from it. The soil is so stiff and firm, that it is capable of resisting a heavy flood, and there are few masonry works near at hand to be damaged by it. There must, however, after a flood, be heavy deposits of gravel and silt in the canal channels.

Article 44. Depositing Basins—Silt Traps—Sand Boxes.

Depositing basins for large canals are fully described in Article 18, page 52, entitled *On Keeping Irrigation Canals Clear of Silt*.

Small channels taken from rivers carrying large quantities of sand or silt, sometimes have *Silt Traps* or *Sand Boxes* located at convenient points for clearing them out. These traps intercept the sand and silt carried by the water, and prevent the rapid silting up of the channel. These silt traps are flushed out, when required, with canal water. Care should be taken to locate them in such a position that the debris does not choke the outlets from the traps. In order to accomplish this the debris should be run into a channel that has a living stream, or that is scoured out occasionally by flood water. In consequence of neglecting this precaution in locating some of the silt traps on the Deyrah Dhoon Irrigation channels in India, their outlets got choked and, after some time, they became useless.

Mr. A. D. Foote, M. Am. Soc. C. E., fixed a trap and small gate for the purpose of intercepting and scouring out debris in a canal from the Boise River, Idaho. This

second which is near enough to the required discharge for all practical purposes.

Let us now suppose that branches are drawn off to supply water for irrigation, and that, after these supplies are drawn off, the bed-width and depth of the channel are reduced, below the head of each branch. As the mean velocity throughout is to be maintained at what the channel had at starting, the grade of the canal will have to be increased at each diminution of discharge. For example, at the tenth mile from the headwork an irrigation channel takes off a supply of 550 cubic feet per second. This leaves a supply of 1,150 cubic feet per second in the main canal. Arranging the dimensions required for this supply, we find that a bed width of 80 feet, depth of water of 5.5 feet, side slopes of 1 to 1, and a grade of 13 inches per mile, will, by Kutter's formula, with $n = .025$, give a discharge of 1,175.6 cubic feet per second, and a velocity of 2.50 feet per second.

These agree near enough to the required velocity and discharge for all practical requirements.

At the 10th mile a branch takes off 550 cubic feet per second.

At the 19th mile a branch takes off 350 cubic feet per second.

At the 31st mile a branch takes off 300 cubic feet per second.

At the 40th mile a branch takes off 260 cubic feet per second.

At the 54th mile a branch takes off 140 cubic feet per second.

At the 60th mile a branch takes off 50 cubic feet per second.

The channel at the tail of the canal has only 50 cubic feet per second for ten miles.

trap is a trench cut in the bottom of the canal, and running diagonally upward across it from the gate. In this trench all small stones and sediment that may be loosened from the high banks by spring thaws, will be caught, and on opening the gate they will be carried out of the canal by the rapid current through the opening.

On the Marseilles Canal, in the south of France, with a maximum capacity of 424 cubic feet per second, the water of which is used, not only for irrigation, but also for domestic use, settling basins were provided to rid the water of the sediment mechanically suspended, in order to render the water fit for domestic purposes. After several settling basins were silted up and rendered useless, one of them having a capacity of about 159,000,000 cubic feet, another large basin was constructed with the necessary works for flushing it out periodically. This basin has an area of fifty-seven acres, and its capacity is about 81,000,000 cubic feet. It is formed by constructing a masonry dam across a valley 654 feet in length, 72 feet in height, and $55\frac{3}{4}$ feet in width at the base. At the end of each year, when a deposit of about five feet of sediment has accumulated at the bottom, it will be flushed out into the river Durance at a low level.

Where the line of a canal passes through rolling ground, or skirts the bottom of low hills, a hollow in the ground, within a few miles of the head of the canal, is sometimes available and can be utilized for the deposition of silt. Sometimes a few low and cheap dams have to be built in the lower depressions.

The silt-laden water enters the reservoir at its upper end. Its velocity is then checked, and it deposits its load of gravel, sand and slime, and after passing through the reservoir, it again enters the canal at its lower end, comparatively clear water.

No doubt it is only a matter of time for such a basin to fill up and become useless for its intended purpose, but, as the following instance will prove, a useful depositing reservoir can, with due forethought, be made at a small expense.

The Wutchumna Canal, in Tulare County, California, is taken from the right bank of the Kaweah River, at a point where this river sometimes, when the water is most required, carries large quantities of sand and silt. The clearance of this sand and silt at the close of the irrigation season, from other canals in the same district, entails heavy annual expense.

When locating the Wutchumna Canal, Mr. Stephen Barton, C. E., with happy forethought, carried it through a hollow in the ground with the intention of converting the hollow into a depositing basin. This he accomplished successfully, and the writer is not aware of any depositing basin in existence, of the same capacity as the Wutchumna reservoir, that is so well adapted to the duty it has to perform.

This reservoir is situated about seven miles from the headworks of the canal, and the velocity of the canal, through this seven miles, is sufficient to prevent the deposition of sand and gravel until it enters the reservoir.

Mr. W. H. Davenport, C. E., the present Superintendent of the Wutchumna Canal, has lately sent the writer the following additional information on this subject:

“When the reservoir is at what we call low water, just now, its area is 61 acres, with an average depth of 3 feet. What we call a full reservoir is 154 acres in area, and has a depth of 7 feet above low water. The discharge of the Wutchumna Canal is 208 cubic feet per second.

“There is at present an average depth of 1.25 feet of deposit over the lower water area of 61 acres. Where the ditch enters the reservoir I find a *bar* of sand and

gravel, which the high grade of the canal has carried. This bar I estimate to have an area of 20 acres, and a depth of 3 feet.

"The Wutchumna Canal has been in continual use for 10 years, drawing its supply every day without interruption. I think I can safely say that, the reservoir will be useful for a silt deposit for the next 100 years. The conditions are such that the reservoir can be made 6 feet deeper."

Article 45. Tunnels.

There are occasions, as explained further on, when a tunnel can be adopted with advantage, but they are seldom used when the supply required is over 2,000 cubic feet per second. There are no tunnels on any of the large irrigation canals in India that discharge over 2,000 cubic feet per second.

The High Level Canal in Colorado, with a discharge of 1,184 cubic feet per second, has a tunnel at its head 600 feet in length. It is 20 feet wide and 12 feet high, with a grade of 1 in 1,000.

The Merced Canal in California, with a discharge of 3,400 cubic feet per second, has a tunnel 1,600 feet in length, through solid rock, and another tunnel 2,000 feet in length, through ground so unstable, that it was necessary to timber its whole length, a work which required over 1,000,000 feet, board measure, of redwood. In India, timber in a similar position, would, in a few years, be destroyed by the white ants.

The Henares Canal in Spain, with a discharge of 177 cubic feet per second, has a tunnel 9,513 feet in length. The tunnel is lined throughout with brick. It has a semi-circular arch on top, and an inverted arch on the bottom. Its height at the center is 11.2 feet, its width at springing of invert 7.2 and its grade 1 in 3,067.

In Madras, India, a tunnel is to be constructed to convey the waters of the Periar River into the Viga Valley for irrigation. This tunnel is in rock 6,650 feet in length. Its cross-sectional area is 80 square feet and it has a slope or grade of 1 in 75.

Under certain conditions a tunnel,* when in sound rock, is preferable to an open channel for conveying water. The conditions are, that no water is required to be drawn off this part of the line, and that a heavy grade can be given. By sound rock is meant rock not subject to percolation, to any appreciable extent, that will stand the high velocity without injury by erosion, and also that will not require lining for its sides or arching for its roof. When, in addition, a steep grade can be obtained, a high velocity can be given to the water, and the cross-sectional area and consequent expense reduced.

In such a tunnel, the loss of water by evaporation and percolation, and the expense of maintenance are at a minimum. It has several advantages over the open channel in steep, side-hill ground. Its sides and bed are impervious to water, and it is covered from the sunlight. It shortens the line, there is no compensation to be paid for land, and it does not interfere with or cross the drainage of the country on the surface. Should it be required, at any future time to increase the carrying capacity of the canal, the discharge of the tunnel can be increased without, however, increasing its dimensions. See *Flow of Water*.

All that will be necessary is to fill all the hollows between the projecting ends of the rocky bed and sides with good cement concrete, and after this to give a coat of good plaster to the surfaces in contact with the water and make them smooth. Although the section will be

* Report on the proposed Works of the Tulare Irrigation District by P. J. Flynn, C. E.

diminished, still, the velocity and consequent discharge will be doubled.

Let us assume the loss of water in a certain length of open channel at six per cent. of the total flow. If by adopting a tunnel line, the loss of water is only one per cent., it is evident that it would pay to expend the value of five per cent. of the water on the tunnel line above that on the open channel.

Another argument in favor of the tunnel is that the amount saved yearly in maintenance capitalized could be expended on the tunnel over that upon the open channel, in order to give a fair comparison with the latter. See *Flow of Water*, page 52.

On the Marseilles Canal, in France, there are, in all, ten miles of tunnelling, the mean velocity through them being nearly 5 feet per second. The maximum discharge of this canal is 424 cubic feet per second.

On the Verdon Canal, in France, the number of the tunnels is seventy-nine, of a total length of twelve and a-half miles, the three most important of which are respectively about three and one-fourth, two and five-eighths and one and seven-eighths miles in length. The capacity of the main canal is 212 cubic feet per second, and it has a sectional area of 113 square feet.

Tunnels are employed in several instances in Southern California, to *develop* water. Where there is a water-bearing strata a tunnel is driven, and in several instances, sufficient water has been developed to make the money expended a good paying investment, and by the use of this water for irrigation, land has been raised in value from \$5 to \$500 per acre.

A good example of this kind of work is the San Antonio Tunnel, which is being constructed at Ontario, Southern California, by F. E. Trask, Chief Engineer of the Ontario Land Improvement Co., who has supplied the following account of the work:

SAN ANTONIO TUNNEL.

At an early date the founders of Ontario concluded they would need a larger supply of water than the one-half flow of San Antonio Creek—which gave them 365 miner's inches—and it was decided to tunnel for the underflow of this creek, at the point where it enters the San Bernardino Valley. Land controlling the mouth of the cañon having been secured, the work of driving the tunnel began in the early part of 1883. The objective point of the tunnel was the lowest point of *bed rock* in the cañon about one-half mile from its mouth. Here it was estimated that from eighty to one hundred feet of gravel, boulders, etc., laid above bed rock. It was decided to start the tunnel about 3,000 feet south of the objective point and run on a grade of one-half inch per rod—with a cross-section of twenty-eight square feet. The alignment and grade have not been strictly adhered to, although no serious changes have been introduced. The first two thousand seven hundred feet were driven through the rock and gravel formation of the cañon, and required lining, which was as follows: the bents were of 8"x8" redwood and spaced 4 feet center to center—the bed pieces were 2"x8" and the lagging 2". The clear dimensions were, height 5' 6"—top width 2'—bottom width 3' 6".

The above portion of the tunnel has been lined in the following manner: slabs of concrete, four inches thick, were laid in hydraulic cement over the entire bottom. Between the bents and on these concrete slabs for a foundation, the side walls eight inches thick were carried up of concrete blocks (rock was used in some portions of this section), to a height of 4' 2" on which the arch was turned. The arch was composed of two segments, with a tongue and groove joint at the center. These walls and arches were laid in cement, care being

taken to make water-tight joints. The only deviation from this was at points where veins of water were intercepted, there, rectangular openings, of sufficient size and number, were left to admit the water at a height of two feet above the bottom of the tunnel. The accompanying section shows both the method of timbering and lining.

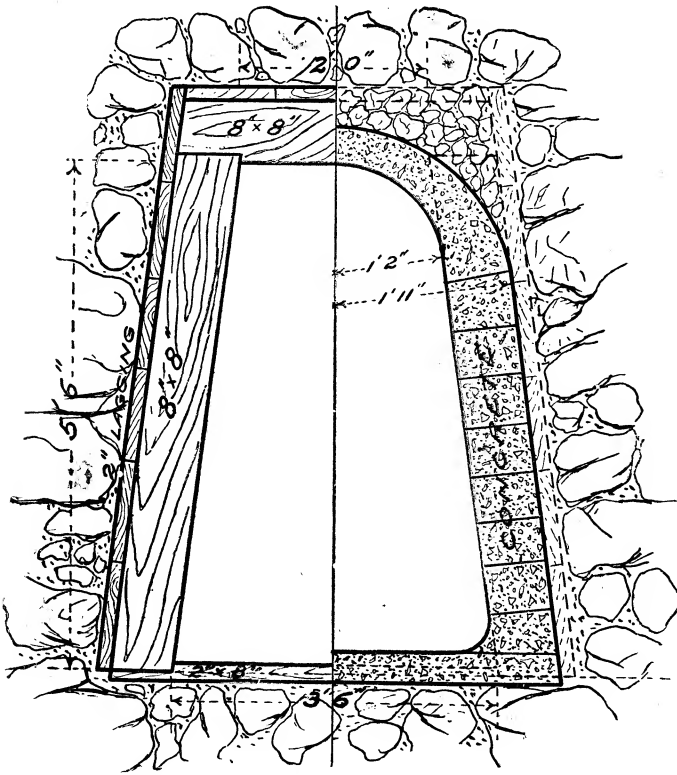


Fig. 171. Cross-Section of San Antonio Tunnel.

Bed-rock was reached at two thousand seven hundred feet, and up to January, 1891, the tunnel had penetrated six hundred feet into bed rock, making a total length of tunnel of 3,300 feet. At this time the heading was con-

sidered to be beyond the lowest point in bed rock, and it became necessary to investigate the material above the roof of the tunnel. For this purpose a *diamond drill* plant was procured, and about four months work was required for defining the surface of bed rock. From the data thus obtained, it was found that *three low points* in bed rock existed—one about fifty feet from the point where bed rock was first struck; another 340 feet; while a third was found to be about 200 feet beyond the heading of the tunnel. Up to the time bed rock was struck, the minimum flow of the tunnel has been about fifty miner's inches. On September 15, 1891, there were 137 inches; and at the present writing (October, 1891), about 300 inches have been developed. As yet the work of development above bed rock has hardly begun, and from one to two years work will be required to complete the proposed plans, when it is believed 1,000 inches will have been developed.

In general terms the proposed method of development consists of a complete network of supplementary tunnels and drifts above bed rock, and on the *up stream* side of the main tunnel, which will be connected by means of shafts to the main tunnel some twenty feet below. On bed rock on the *down stream* side of the main tunnel will be built a submerged dam of sufficient height to intercept the summer underflow.

Seven shafts have been used in the entire length of tunnel, and increase in depth from No. 1, 20 feet, to No. 7, 104 feet. They are unevenly spaced, the greatest run being 600 feet.

Quicksand was encountered at several places and gave much trouble. Cost: The cost of driving the first twenty-seven hundred feet, including temporary wooden lining, varies from \$2.50 to \$20 per lineal foot. The contract for concrete lining was \$2.50 per lineal foot.

The total cost for completed tunnel (2,700 feet), as above, including six shafts, was about \$50,000. The cost of the 600 feet in bed rock was \$8 per lineal foot. The rock being firm no lining of any kind is required. The supplementary tunneling, above bed rock, has not progressed far enough to justify a statement of cost, at this date.

Article 46. Retaining Walls.

Various complex formulæ have, from time to time, been given for finding the thickness of retaining walls, and they differ considerably in the results obtained by them. *Engineering News*, of May 24th, 1890, states with reference to this, for thickness of wall at any height:—

“ We have our own pet formula which we want to air on this occasion. It is short and simple: ‘three-seventh of the height, and throw in some odd inches for luck,’ and we believe this to be more strictly and more truly ‘general’ than any one of a number of much more complex formulæ which lie before us. It is certainly foolhardy to build retaining walls much thinner than this formula calls for under any conditions. While experience indicates that any well-built wall, proportioned in accordance with it, is pretty sure to stand.”

There is more practical engineering in the above extract than in long articles discussing the pressure of the earth on the wall, under various conditions. The odd inches in the above formula are probably intended to meet the requirements of the materials composing the wall, having different specific gravity. Another rule is one-third of the height in feet plus one is equal to the thickness. This rule gives almost the same result as that given above by *Engineering News*.

The foundation course of retaining walls has its width increased beyond the thickness of the wall, by a series of

steps in front, two only are shown in Figure 172. The objects of this are at once to distribute the pressure over a greater area than that of any bed joint in the body of the wall, and to diffuse that pressure more equally by bringing the center of resistance nearer to the middle of the base than it is in the body of the wall.*

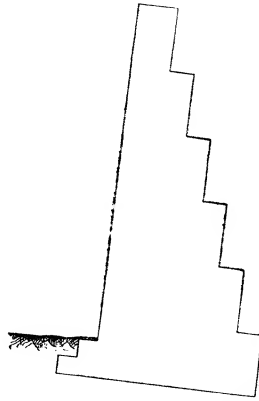


Fig. 172. Cross-Section of Retaining Wall.

The body of the wall may be either entirely of brick, or of ashlar, backed with brick or with rubble, or of block-in-course backed with rubble, or of coursed rubble, built with mortar, or built dry. As the pressure at each bed-joint is concentrated towards the face of the wall, those combinations of masonry in which the larger and more regular stones form the face, and sustain the greater part of the pressure, and are backed with an inferior kind of masonry, whose use is chiefly to give stability by its weight, are well suited for retaining walls, special care being taken that the back and face are well tied together by long headers, and that the beds of the facing stones extend well into the wall.

Along the base and in front of the retaining wall

*Rankine's Engineering.

The table given below shows how the dimensions and grades of the channels are arranged to give the discharge required, which is shown in the sixth column.

It will be seen that the discharge by formula, given in column seven of the table, differs a little from the required discharge in column six, but a slight difference of this amount does not affect the work to any appreciable extent.

TABLE 5. Giving full details of channels computed by Kutter's formula with $n = .025$.

Bed, Width in Feet.	Depth in Feet.	Side Slopes	Grade per mile.	Computed Mean Veloc- ity in feet per second.	Required Discharge in Cubic Feet per second.	Computed Discharge in Cubic Feet per second.
100	6.5	1 to 1	10 inches	2.50	1700	1730.6
80	5.5	"	13 inches	2.50	1150	1175.6
60	5.0	"	15 inches	2.48	800	806.0
40	4.5	"	19 inches	2.52	500	504.6
20	4.0	"	2 feet	2.43	240	233.3
10	3.0	"	4 feet	2.64	100	103.0
6	2.5	"	5 feet	2.45	50	52.0

From the length of the different reaches of the canal and the fall in feet per mile in each reach we find that in the whole distance of 70 miles the total fall is 150 feet, being an average fall of 2.2 feet, nearly, per mile. If the fall of the country did not admit of so high an average, it might be easily reduced by maintaining a greater depth in the channels and diminishing the width. A greater depth would give a greater hydraulic mean depth, and, according to the increase of the hydraulic mean depth, the slope could be diminished.

there should run a drain. In order to let the water escape from behind the wall, it should have small upright oblong openings through it called "weeping holes," which are usually two or three inches broad, and of the depth of a course of masonry, and are distributed at regular distances, an ordinary proportion being one weeping hole to every four square yards of face wall.

The back of the retaining wall should be made rough, in order to resist any tendency of the earth to slide upon it. This object is promoted by building up the back in steps, as exemplified in Figure 172.

When the material at the back of the wall is clean sand, or gravel, so that water can pass through it readily, and escape by the weeping holes, it is only necessary to ram it in layers. But if the material is retentive of water like clay, a *vertical layer* of stones or coarse gravel, at least a foot thick, or a dry stone rubble wall, must be placed at the back of the retaining wall, between the earth and the masonry, to act as a drain.

A catchwater drain behind a retaining wall is often useful. It may either have an independent outfall, or may discharge its water through pipes into the drain in front of the base of the wall.

Article 47. Combined Irrigation and Navigation Canals.

It has been found impracticable to combine irrigation and navigation, economically, in the same canal, and to make it a good working machine for the two purposes.

In a canal intended for navigation only, a still water channel is the most suitable, and the lower its velocity is, the less obstruction will it cause to boats proceeding up stream.

In an irrigation canal, on the contrary, the greater the velocity of the water, so long as it does not damage the works, the more economical and better machine it is. The cross-section of the channel can be diminished

in proportion to the increase in velocity of the water, and, consequently, all the works, such as headworks, embankments, cuttings, bridges, flumes, falls or drops, etc., can be diminished in size and expense. In addition, locks to pass the falls would be required for navigation.

Mean velocities exceeding 4 feet per second cause waves, which injure the banks in the greater number of canals, especially in sandy loam.

An irrigating canal requires at least, for average ground, a velocity of $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet per second. It follows, therefore, that when forcing its way against the current at the rate of 4 feet per second the boat is actually making headway only at the rate of $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet per second, and any attempt at quicker velocities would injure the banks, so that, irrespective of the loss of power, the banks could not stand if there was quick navigation. It, therefore, appears evident that for economical working and the safety of the banks, an almost still water canal is required.

Indian experience has fixed about $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet per second as the maximum velocity which ought to be allowed in a navigable canal. The small slope would increase the number of falls required to overcome the greater surface slope of the country, and in addition, the greater cost of all the other works would make the cost of a navigable canal almost double that of the channel required for irrigation alone.

Again, in a navigable channel, a certain minimum depth and width, for the passage of canal boats, must be allowed everywhere; and the amount of water required for this minimum must be allowed over and above the quantity required for irrigation. This has been referred to in Article 5, page 11, entitled *Quantity of Water Required for Irrigation*.

The canal of Beruegado, in Italy, is a notable example of the great difficulty of combining navigation and irrigation in the same channel. It is with difficulty, and only by the strictest measures, that the supply for navigation is secured during the summer, on account of the urgent demand for the water for irrigation. When boats are passing, the whole of the irrigation outlets, between each pair of locks, are necessarily closed, and, with the supply accumulated in the channel by this means, the passage is effected, though with great inconvenience, and with the stoppage of irrigation from this reach of the canal during the time of the boat's transit.

In his Report on the Sutlej Canal, Major Crofton, R. E., gives some of the items which cause an increase of cost for navigation. They are, the necessity of providing for a navigable communication throughout, which involves, besides lockage at the overfalls, increase of excavation in the formation of tow-paths, and considerable additions to every bridge to give towing passages on either side, as well as extra height to afford headway for laden boats. Navigation appears to be satisfactorily combined with irrigation on the Madras canals, and here again, the small declivities and low velocities come into their aid. In a Report by Sir A. Cotton, on some of the Godavery channels, he mentions a mile an hour (or 1.47 feet per second) as the maximum velocity which ought to be allowed in the current of a navigable channel. Were this to be taken as the basis of the calculations for the Sutlej Canal (see *List of Canals*, page 30), the cost of the works in excavation, and falls, to overcome the superfluous slope, would be well nigh doubled. It would probably be a cheaper and more efficient plan to construct an entirely separate channel for navigation, alongside the canal, to which the latter would act as a feeder; the cost of the irrigating channel might then

be considerably lessened by the diminution of the excavation for berms or tow-paths, and the reduction of the width of, and headway under, the bridges, to that necessary for the mere passage of water supply. The latest information on the subject of Navigable Canals, in India, is strongly in support of the above.

In the Revenue Report of the Irrigation Department of the Punjab, India, for 1889-90, it is stated with reference to the Sirhind, or Sutlej Canal, that: "On this, as on the other irrigation canals of Upper India, the cost of providing navigation is not likely to prove remunerative." This is conclusive.

Article 48. Survey.

The same rules which govern the survey of a railroad line are also to be observed in the survey of a canal line. There are, however, a few points which it is well to refer to here.

The level of the floor of the head gate of the canal is a good datum for zero for levels, and the face of the up-stream head wall of the head gate is suitable for the zero of longitudinal measurement for the central channel of the canal, and the same plan can be adopted on their respective regulating head gates in fixing the same points for the branches and laterals.

Correct levels are of primary importance in canal lines, and it is advisable to level twice over the same stations with the same instrument, the second levels being carried in the reversed direction to the first. In a canal carrying over 1,000 cubic feet of water per second, a few inches more or less in a mile will make a serious difference in the velocity.

It is advisable to have frequent *bench marks*, and on permanent objects where possible, and all canal, road, railroad and other bench marks should be connected

with the line of levels. A bench mark should be established close to each heavy cut and fill, crossings of all rivers, canals, bridges, aqueducts and other works on the line of canal.

Where possible to do so, without extra expense, sharp curves are to be avoided. In India, in the plains, flat curves are adopted varying from 5,000 to 15,000 feet in radius. In the Isabella II Canal, in Spain, a recent work, with a discharge of only 89 cubic feet per second, the maximum radius was fixed at 492 feet and the minimum at 328 feet.

Cross-sections should be made of all ravines and water-courses crossing the line of canal, and cross-sections, at right angles to the axis of the stream, should be taken in all channels subject to flooding. The cross-sections should show the surface of the water at the date of observation, and the ordinary and highest flood marks.

The waterway of all bridges and culverts and the levels of their floors, if any, and the lowest part of the superstructure should be noted.

The nature of the ground should be noted, and enquiries should be made as to whether the country is flooded, and as to whether there is any alkali land passed over by the canal line.

In India, in a generally level country, the following plan is adopted preliminary to the survey for a main canal. Cross-sections are taken at intervals, perpendicular to the supposed water-shed. For the general alignment of the main channels between two large rivers, the interval should not exceed ten miles. For the actual location and for the minor channels, the interval probably should not exceed five miles, or possibly less. The cross-sections should be connected by longitudinal lines at their extremities, to test the accuracy of

the work. These levels being platted on a map on a large scale, the line of canal can be laid down *approximately* on the map as a preliminary to the location. The levels will also show the general directions of branches and laterals, and also the natural drainage lines of the country.

If the levels of the water-shed admit of it, the nearer the canal line approaches to it the better, as the interference with surface drainage of the country will then be the least possible. Having determined the lines of the main canal and its branches the next thing to do is to locate the distributaries.

In order to deliver the water under the most favorable conditions, it is clear that the irrigating channels must everywhere follow the water-sheds of the country drainage.

An almost perfect arrangement of distributaries is exemplified in Figure 173, taken from a paper by Mr. H. M. Wilson, M. Am. Soc. C. E.* This arrangement shows the distributaries following the water-shed lines of the country. It is seldom that such a complete distributary system can be located.

The first step then, is to ascertain how many water-shed lines exist, their extent and relative situations. This knowledge can only be obtained from a careful survey of the country it is designed to irrigate, care being taken to delineate on the map the course of all rivers, streams, roads, railroads, canals, etc., and the position of all hollows, swamps and the other salient points of the topography of the country. To each water-shed should be assigned a separate channel of capacity apportioned to the duty it has to perform, the two bounding streams or drainage channels being

*Irrigation in India in Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers. Vol. XXIII.

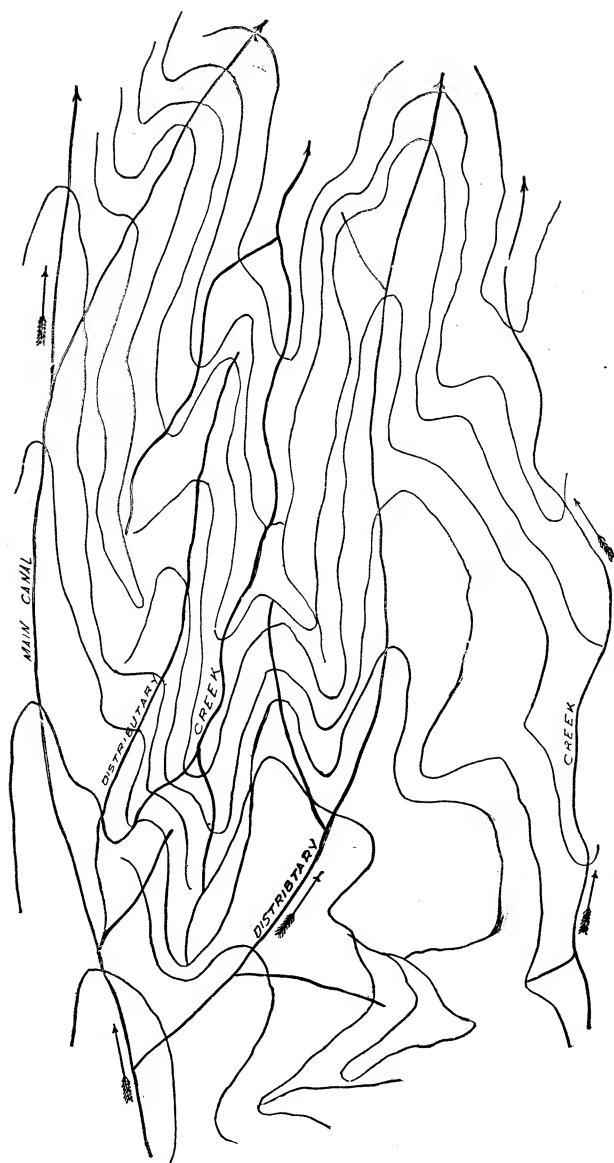


Fig. 173. Drainage Map Showing Arrangement of Distributaries.

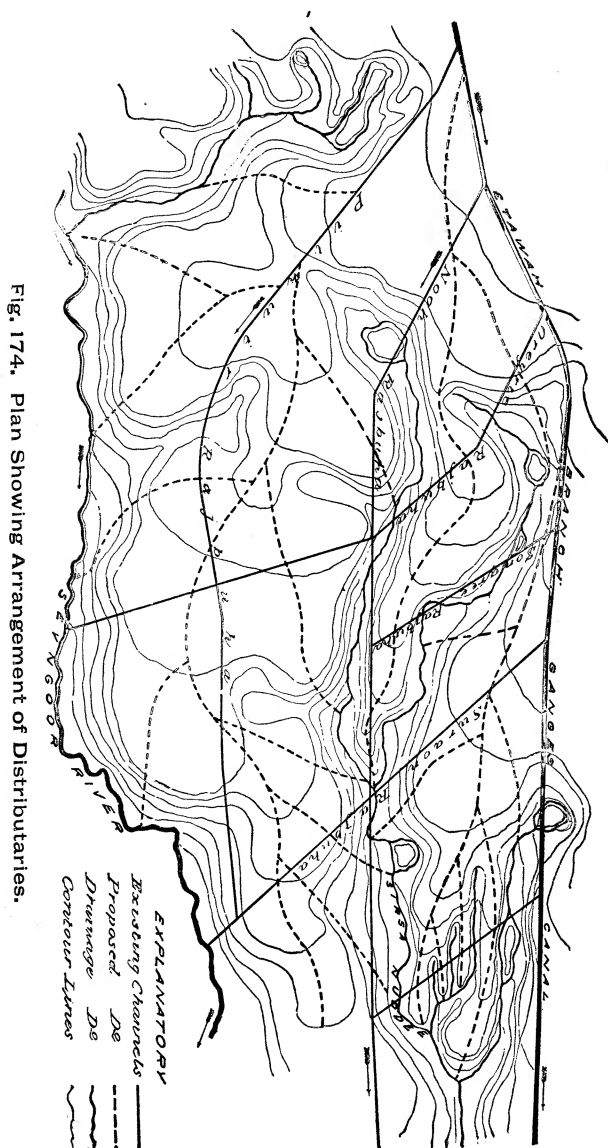


Fig. 174. Plan Showing Arrangement of Distributaries.

considered in this system as the limits to which irrigation from any single line should be carried. This is very plainly shown in Figure 173.* Figure 174 shows a defective location of a distribution system and the proposed improvements. The difference between the location of the laterals on the two Figures 173 and 174 will be apparent on inspection. On the former the channels are kept on the water-shed lines all through, but on the latter the original channels depart so much from the water-shed that large tracts of land cannot be irrigated.

Having then traced out, as above stated, on the drainage survey map the general course of the proposed channels, it is necessary to run a series of cross-levels in order to fix the exact position of the water-shed. With the aid of the information thus obtained, the engineer will be enabled to locate the distributary to the best possible advantage.

Some American engineers may think that too much time and labor is given, by the above method, but the experience of Indian engineers, on thousands of miles of badly located distributaries, proves that too much thought and care cannot be given to the location of these channels.

For the more complete and efficient distribution of the water, minor distributaries should be taken out from the main distributaries where they may be most required; but the engineer should in a measure be guided by the nature of the ground and the character of the soil. As in the case of larger works he should endeavor to secure a command of level for the purpose of affording every facility for irrigation; he should avoid as far as possible crossing minor drainages or stumbling into hollows, by which his object may in any measure be de-

*Professional Papers on Indian Engineering. Vol. IV. First Series. Captain W. Jeffreys, R. E.

feated; he should banish from his mind any idea he may entertain of the relative unimportance of this class of works; for he may be assured that nothing tends so directly to an economical distribution of the water as a carefully constructed system of minor distributaries.

In the system advocated above, the capacity of an irrigating channel should everywhere be exactly apportioned to the duty it has to perform, the section decreasing as the line advances until it loses itself in a small water-course. See Article 8, page 20.

The level of the bed of the distributary should be fixed rather with reference to the full supply level of the canal, than to the level of the canal bed, chiefly because it is an object to keep the bed of the distributary at a sufficiently high level to admit of surface irrigation on its whole line as far as possible. Moreover, the nearer to the surface that water is taken off by a distributary head, the less will be the silt which enters the distributary, and the less the annual labor of clearing the bed. The bed of a distributary will, therefore, generally be from 1 to 3 feet higher than that of the main canal.

When the Eastern Jumna Canal, India, was laid out, the main line was constructed by the engineers, the distribution channels being left to be made entirely by the cultivators. That led to such great evils, that when the Ganges Canal was made, the main distribution channels were laid out and constructed by the Government engineers; but the minor ones were still left to the cultivators to make; and on the Agra Canal a complete system of distributaries was carried out as an integral part of the scheme.

Mr. Forrest* had charge for six years of one of the divisions of the Ganges Canal. It was a tail division,

* Mr. R. E. Forrest, M. I. C. E., in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. LXXIII.

The above will be sufficient to indicate the mode in which the slope of the channel should be regulated, in order to prevent accumulations of silt. In practice, a canal is never perfectly aligned on this principle, but every endeavor should be made to adhere to it, in designing a system of irrigation works, so far as local peculiarities and other circumstances will permit.

The accumulation of silt in channels, particularly in the main channel, is not only a serious impediment to maintaining a supply of water till the crops are matured, but the clearance may be enormously expensive. Even if the silt cannot be carried on to the fields, as in a perfect canal, at least one step in advance is gained, if it is prevented from accumulating in the main channel; for the maintenance of the supply in it, is the most essential point, and if there are deposits in the branches only, it may be possible to clear them in turn, without cutting off the supply from the river. If this might not be feasible with the branches, it would be so at all events with the smaller irrigation channels; and it would not only be advantageous to throw on the slit to them, and to clear them in turn, without cutting off the supply of water from the branches, but the clearance would evidently be much less costly from them than it would be from the larger channels, because the haul would be less.

When the fall of the country is so gentle as not to allow of the fall of the channels being gradually increased from ten inches a mile it would be necessary to reduce the initial slope somewhat. A very slight reduction, would, as it affects the whole of the channel onwards, in the aggregate, amount to something considerable.

If, on the other hand, the fall of the country be too great, the initial slope may be increased, with, if necessary, a reduction in the depth of water; or, if the fall of

where the supply of water was not great, while the demand was large. The engineers had to make water go as far as possible. When he first went there the waste of water was enormous. The cultivators had taken their channels in all sorts of wrong places, down roads and hollows, and across waste lands, and waste water was lying about everywhere. One great cause of loss was this: the country was studded with barren plains, and when a main distributary ran across one of them, the good land on either side was irrigated by means of little channels across the plain, as shown by the dotted lines in Figure 175, some of them over a mile

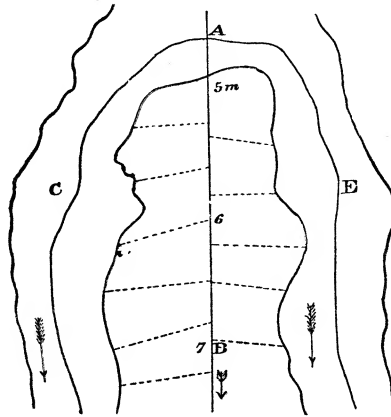


Fig. 175. Plan Showing Arrangement of Distributaries.

long. There was great loss in having so many channels; and, as the banks were made of the silty soil of the plains, and badly made, they were always failing and flooding the plain, which no one minded, as the land was barren. For these channels were substituted properly laid out channels, A C, A E, through the middle of the good land, which, having banks made of good earth, did not break down, and if they did good lands were flooded, so that the canal establishment and

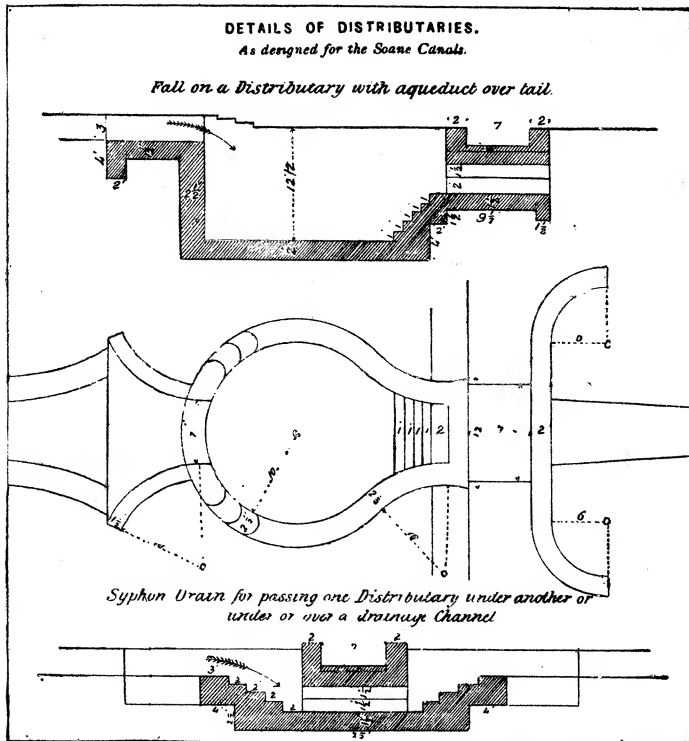
the cultivators had to take pains not to let them fail. The effect of the change was wonderful. Mr. Forrest had two channels, one 40, the other 50 miles long, running through land of that character; and whereas he had previously not been able to get the water half way down them, he then got it down to the very tail. That led him on to making as many of these minor distribution channels as he could. Each of these little water-courses was dealt with exactly as if it had been a big canal. Careful surveys were made and levels taken for it. The line was located, and the longitudinal section and cross-sections carefully fixed. Badly adjusted cross-sections caused a great loss of water. People laughed at so much pains being taken with such small channels, but the labor was not thrown away. That division became one of the best paying ones on the canal, and some of these channels gave a duty of 400 acres per cubic foot per second.

Thus, then, the first thing was to make the distribution channels properly, and the next thing was to work them properly. The water should be moved about and distributed by a careful system of rotation. It was better to move the water in as large volumes as possible. By a good system of rotation, it might be possible to remedy the loss of duty from the water not being used at night; the water could be run on at night to the more distant points. By a system of rotation, the evils of super-saturation could be lessened. The water was made to run through a tract only when it was wanted, and for so long as it was wanted. In some of the Ganges canal channels, the water ran only for a single day each fortnight. The water should be completely drawn from every tract in which it was not in active and immediate demand.

Article 49. Distributaries—Laterals—Rajbuhas.

These channels are also called Distribution Channels, Primary Channels, Ditches, etc., and they derive their supply from the Main Canal.

These channels are, in every respect, a counterpart of the main canal, and require the same class of works, though on a smaller scale, as the main canal.



Figs. 176, 177, 178.

Figure 176 illustrates a section of a fall on a distributary with a small aqueduct over its tail to carry another small distributary, and Figure 177 is a plan of the same.

Figure 178 is a section of a syphon drain for passing one distributary under another, or under a drainage channel.

The design, location, construction and maintenance of distributaries should be as carefully carried out as that of the main canal, for on all these details the economical use of the water will chiefly depend.

Those people acquainted with irrigation centers in America, are aware that proper attention to the minor channels of an irrigation system is very seldom given in this country.

In India, on the older canals, irrigation was carried on from the main channel itself, that is the small irrigation outlets were fixed in the canal banks. On account of the leakage along the outside of these pipes, frequent breaches of the banks took place. During years of

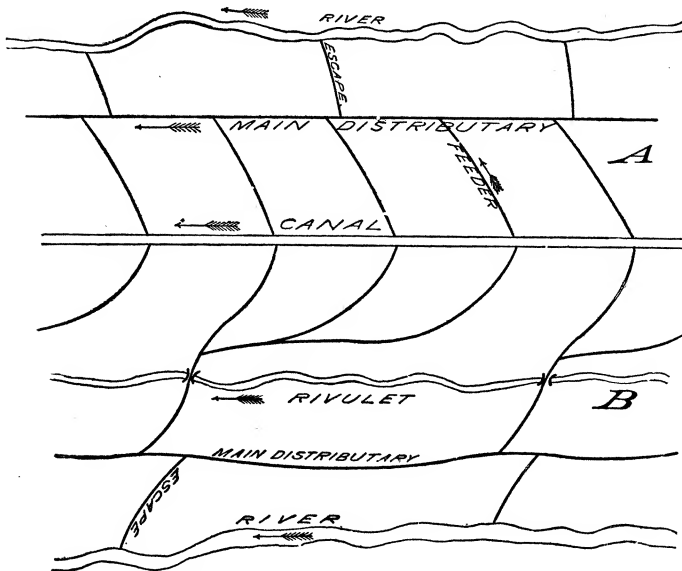


Fig. 179. Plan of Distribution System.

drought the villagers cut the banks and attributed the breach to some other cause. The loss of water resulting from these practices and several other causes, were found to be so great, that the distribution (rajbuha) system is

now generally adopted. In this system all pipes or tubes for the direct irrigation of land, must be taken from the lateral, and not from the main canal.

Figure 179 is intended to illustrate the system of locating the distribution channels in use in Northern India.* In this system, as remarked by Sir Proby Cautley, the greatest canal engineer that ever lived, we may consider the canal as answering to the reservoir or supply channel, in the water supply of towns, the distributaries as the mains, and the village water-courses as the service channels. The village water-courses are not shown in any of the diagrams in this article.

A and *B* show the methods ordinarily used there where the slope of the country is so flat as seldom to admit of the waters of the distributary being returned to the canal. In order to have the same velocity as the main canal a distributary must have a greater grade, and where the slope of the canal is parallel to the surface of the country, it is evident that after a channel with a greater grade than the canal has left the latter, it cannot again return its water into it. In order to have the same velocity, the grades, required for a canal and distributary, are in the inverse proportion to their hydraulic mean depths.

Where the slope of the country is greater than that of the distributary, Figure 180, *C* and *D*, show different methods by which the tail water of the distributary is returned to the canal. *C*, in the diagram, gives an example how this may be done in a case where the canal is too far in soil to afford water at a proper level to irrigate close to its banks. After leaving the canal in cutting at a^1 , a^2 , etc., the distributary does not gain sufficiently on the grade of the country to be able to give surface

*Sone Canal Project by Col. C. H. Dickens.

elevation until it arrives at b^1, b^2 , etc., passing there, over a syphon or fall conveying the returning upper distributary, which from loss of level in the crossing does not irrigate again till it comes to d^1, d^2 , etc., whence it passes over the distributary next but one below it, and irrigates the land close to the bank, before it returns by a drop into the canal. An arrangement of this kind could only be effected with a very good fall of country.

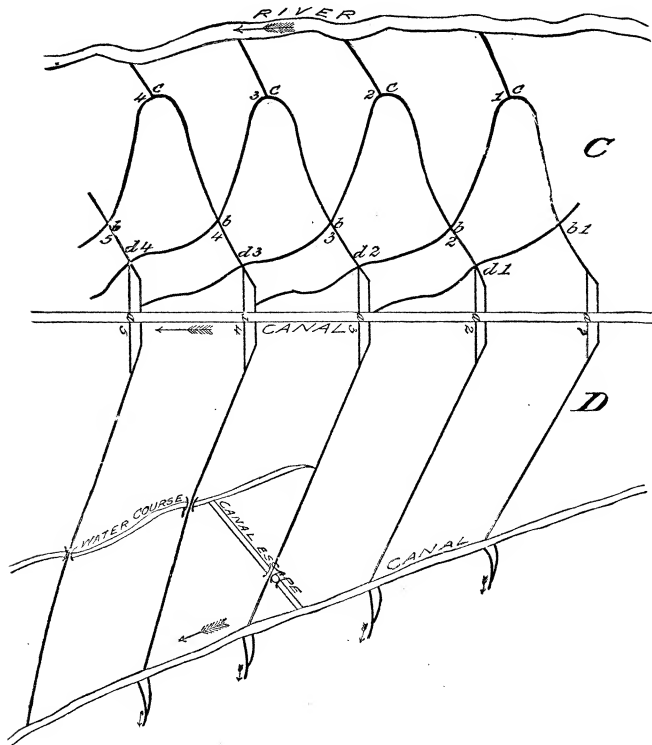


Fig. 180. Plan of Distribution System.

In *D*, in diagram, the tail water from the upper canal is intercepted and utilized by the canal located on a lower level.

The above illustrations are given to show what has

been done in Northern India, where irrigation has been carried on from time immemorial, and where the British Government have developed it to an extraordinary extent.

In locating laterals an engineer must be careful not to attempt to be too systematic, but to be guided by his own ingenuity and the nature of the ground in each case. In the American plains, distributaries are often carried along fence lines, which form sides of either rectangular or square tracts of land.

Fig. 181.



Fig. 182.

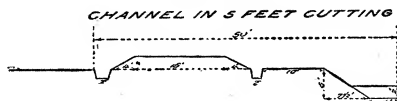


Fig. 183.

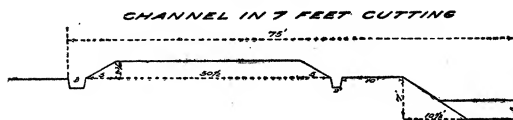


Fig. 184.

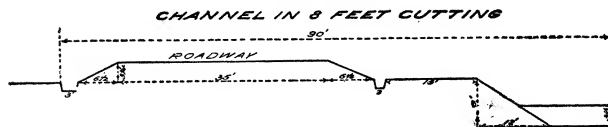
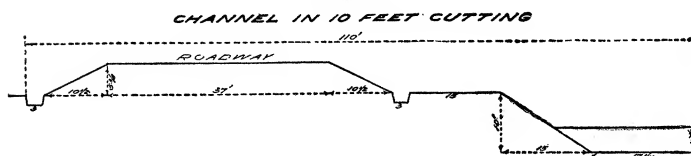


Fig. 185.



Figures 181 to 185 exemplify distributaries *in cut* de-

signed for the Sone Canals, India.* Only half the bed width is shown. These illustrations are given, not only as good specimens of design, but also to show the care that is taken in India, with even the minutest details of design.

Distributaries may be cleared of silt whenever the water is least required. One, or at most two clearances a year are enough for a well designed distributary. The floorings of all bridges and other masonry works, built over them, will, of course, have been carefully laid down to the proper levels, and will give so many permanent bench-marks for restoring the correct level of the beds; besides which, stakes or masonry bench-marks should be fixed at intervals, not exceeding a furlong.

Major Brownlow states, that the greater the amount discharged by a distributary, the smaller will be the proportion of cost of maintenance to revenue derived. This is evident, when we consider that, other things being equal, a channel having a bed width of 12 feet, and side slopes of 1 to 1, discharges almost double the volume discharged by two, each having a bed width of 6 feet, while the cost of patrolling and repairs to banks of the 12 feet channel will be about half of that on the two 6 feet channels. When, however, the channel silts up as illustrated in Figure 7, page 19, and the side slopes average $\frac{1}{2}$ horizontal to 1 vertical, the 12 feet channel discharges more than two 6 feet channels. The transporting power of large volumes of water being also greater than small volumes, the deposit of silt in the 12 feet channel will be less in proportion to the discharge than in the two 6 feet channels, thus doing away with the necessity of frequent clearances required in the latter.

*The Sone Canal Project by Col. C. H. Dickens.

The following table based on Bazin's formula (37) *Flow of Water*, for channels in earth, is proof of what has been stated:—

TABLE 17. Giving velocity in feet per second, and discharge in cubic feet per second, of channels with different bed widths, but all other things being equal, based on Bazin's formula for earthen channels.

Bed width in feet.	Depth in feet.	Grade.	Side slopes.	Velocity in feet per sec.	Discharge in cubic feet per second.	Side slopes.	Velocity in feet per sec.	Discharge in cubic feet per second.
3	3	1 in 2500	1 to 1	1.43	25.65	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	1.39	17.34
6	3	1 in 2500	1 to 1	1.65	44.60	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	1.58	35.59
9	3	1 in 2500	1 to 1	1.80	64.66	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	1.76	55.34
12	3	1 in 2500	1 to 1	1.90	85.28	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	1.87	75.83
15	3	1 in 2500	1 to 1	1.97	106.26	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	1.95	96.74
18	3	1 in 2500	1 to 1	2.02	127.46	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	2.02	117.90

By adopting large distributaries the actual amount of clearances during the year is also diminished, for a great portion of the silt which would be rapidly deposited at the head of a small line, is carried along and dropped into the water-courses branching off from a large one.

In Northern India distributaries are of various sizes discharging from 4 to 200 cubic feet per second, but experience seems to prove, that irrigation may be safely and most profitably carried on from channels 18 feet wide at bottom, with side slopes of 1 to 1, the depth of water being from $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 feet, provided that the depth be kept at least 2 feet below soil for the first ten miles of its course, and that no outlets be allowed in subsequent embanked portions of the line.

On the Eastern Jumna Canal during 1858-59 and 1859-60, the revenue from all distributaries of 12 feet

head water-way and upwards, amounted to \$64,809, while the expenditure on their maintenance was \$8,019 or .123 of the revenue. The revenue from all distributaries below 12 feet water-way at the head was \$133,524, and the cost of maintenance \$28,289, or .223 of the revenue, being very nearly double the proportion in the first case.

The head mentioned is the *width* of water-way of the regulator at the head of the distributary. For example, if a regulator at the head of a distributary has *one* clear opening of 12 feet between the abutments, that is called a 12-foot head, but if there is a pier in the center making two clear openings of six feet in width each, this regulator would also have a 12-foot head.

The economy of water on the large channels is equally marked, for, during the above-named two years, the revenue was, from:—

Seven distributaries of 12 feet head water-way and upwards, \$64,809;

Forty-nine distributaries of 6 feet head water-way and upwards, \$108,216;

Twenty-nine distributaries of 3 feet head water-way and upwards, \$25,308;

Giving an average revenue per annum of:—

\$4,629 from a distributary of 12 feet head water-way.

\$1,104 from a distributary of 6 feet head water-way.

\$436 from a distributary of 3 feet head water-way.

Measurements made gave 90, 32 and 22 cubic feet per second as the relative discharges from 12 feet, 6 feet and 3 feet heads on this canal; from which we have as the relative values of a cubic foot of water per annum:—

\$51 on a 12 foot distributary.

\$35 on a 6 foot distributary.

\$20 on a 3 foot distributary.

The increased action of absorption and evaporation

country is rapid at first and afterwards more gentle, the desired result may be obtained by constructing perpendicular drops at intervals.

Any change of direction causes a certain loss of velocity, and the water thrown into branches and minor channels would lose velocity in passing through headsluices, unless they possessed the full water-way of the channel. Due allowance would have to be made for this by adding somewhat to the slope at the heads of the branches and channels. Where the water supply is drawn from a river highly charged with silt, the principle above described of the necessity of keeping up the velocity to the point of delivery of the water is very often neglected, and as a result canals silt up, causing additional expense to clear them out and a loss of irrigating capacity.

With reference to the *second method* it is sometimes advisable, when there is little silt, to give a uniform rate of fall to the canal, or at all events not to change it too often. It will be sometimes found preferable to reduce the gradient instead of diminishing the cross-sectional area in proportion to distribution of water along its course, and as the requirements for carrying the volume of water became lessened. An illustration of this is found in the Quinto Sella Canal, in Italy, which maintains a constant section for about fifteen miles of its length; and although in this distance about one-third of its waters are drawn off for irrigation, its capacity for the carriage of water is diminished solely by reduction of gradient, the slope of its channel being 1 in 1,000 at its derivation from the Cavour Canal, and which is gradually reduced to 0.3 per 1,000 at the end, according as its requirements become lessened.

An example of the *third method* is supplied by the canal of the Central Irrigation District of California, of which Mr. C. E. Grunsky is the Chief Engineer.

over the greater area covered by water of the smaller channels, accounts for the difference above shown.

The depth of water in distributaries should seldom exceed 4 feet; but in carrying out a new line of irrigation, we should aim at keeping the surface of water at about 1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet above the general surface of country, so as to secure irrigation by the natural flow of water. Under these conditions, breaches in the banks need never be feared, with ordinary care in their construction and maintenance. This object, however, is to be kept in due subordination to the primary *desiderata* of a reasonable longitudinal slope, and an alignment following the watershed of the country.

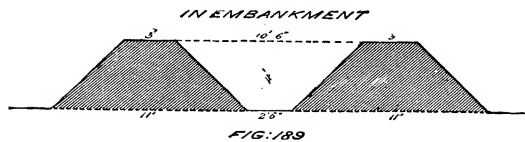
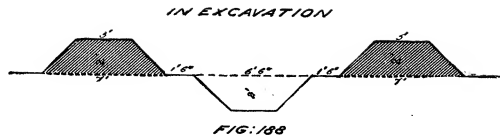
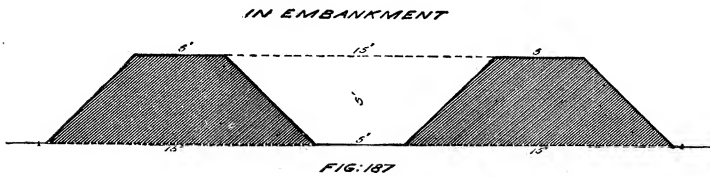
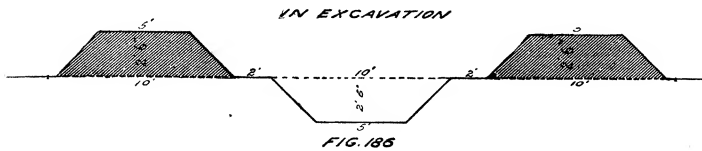
Where the existing supply on a distributary becomes insufficient for the demand, it will be, in the end, found more economical to increase the discharge by widening the original channel for a suitable distance, than to do so by carrying the required additional volume down from a second head, as used to be often done. Against the latter course, all the arguments before adduced hold good, while the back-water from the head which is running the strongest, is sure to check the velocity of the water in the other, and so immensely accelerate the deposit of silt.*

The Roorkee Treatise states, that the system of raising water to the level of the country, where it runs below the surface of the soil, by *stop dams* or *planks*, introduced into grooves constructed for that purpose, cannot be too strongly condemned. These convert what should be a freely flowing stream, into a series of stagnant and unwholesome pools, encourage the growth of weeds and the deposit of silt, and are in every way objectionable. Besides, with a reasonable slope in the surface of the country, it will generally be found that, for every acre of

*Roorkee Treatise on Civil Engineering.

land thus secured, ten can be obtained further on by the natural flow of water. Be this, however, possible or not, it is decidedly better to resort to any other means of raising the water to the level of the country than the above wasteful and unhealthy expedient.

CROSS-SECTIONS OF DISTRIBUTARIES.



The writer has seen, in California, land irrigated by the use of stop planks that, without their use, could not have been irrigated. No bad results whatever followed

from raising the water. As a rule, there is no necessity to keep the stop planks in more than twelve hours, and in this short time little if any damage can result. It is simply a question of utilizing so many acres of land, by raising the water for about twelve hours at certain intervals of time.

Figures 186 to 189 show distributaries, not drawn to scale, in embankment and excavation.*

Article 50. Submerged Dams.

Submerged dams, also called sub-soil dams, are frequently constructed, across and under the beds of streams, with the object of intercepting the subterranean flow of water in channels whose beds, after rain ceases, soon become dry on the surface.

In the construction of a submerged dam a trench is excavated through the sand and gravel down to the impervious material underlying them. After this the trench is filled with puddle, or a wall of masonry or concrete is built up to, or nearly as far as, the surface of the bed of the channel. Then, if there is no leakage, the water rises to the surface and is conveyed away, by either an open channel or a pipe.

If the rocky sides of a channel or its bed are fissured, or if the bed-rock is porous, it is almost certain that no water can be intercepted. The foundation for a submerged dam should be, in every respect, as sound and impervious as that of a reservoir dam, but too often this has not been the case in Southern California, as the numerous failures of submerged dams there prove conclusively.

Colonel Richard J. Hinton states†:—

* Irrigation by Rajbhuas (Distributaries) by Lieutenant W. S. Morton.

† Irrigation in the United States.—Senate Report.

“ It is first ascertained by sinking shafts across the channel whether water is thus passing subterraneously. This will be observable in some cases by floating substances traversing the shaft, but if the flow is very slow it may not be detected by this means, and coloring the water with a dye will show it by a replacement of the colored, by pure water passing through the shaft. A subterranean water flow is frequently brought to the surface by impervious strata traversing its course. Localities in which this occurs are the best sites for weirs. It is not probable that such natural bars are to be found in the plains, far removed from the sources of supply, and to produce them artificially in such situations would necessitate very deep and probably very extended walls. The trial shafts should therefore be made where the valley is well defined in character.

“ Of course these submerged dams can only bring water to the surface of the channel, where the latter is of sand or gravel, through which the water would rise, forming an artesian supply. Where the surface of the bed is of sand, in which the water could be again lost, the elevated water would of course be diverted to an impervious channel provided for it. Where such subterranean water can be intercepted a considerable supply might be expected for some months after the water ceased to flow previous to the interception, for doubtless in many cases a considerable proportion of the rainfall is absorbed and given off gradually to subterranean strata.”

Article 51. Construction—Canal Dredger.

The following brief notes are given, chiefly for the information of engineers in other countries, outside of America, and who have never seen American methods of construction.

“To begin with the simplest kind of construction,* that of field ditching; the farmer does this, as a rule, with his plow, with which he can easily run a ditch of a few inches capacity across his field. If he intends to widen it while keeping it shallow, he employs the ditch plow, which consists of a blade suspended behind the shear so as to push the earth which it cuts to one side. In many soils this is found to be an invaluable implement. When the work is more roughly done, what is known as a V scraper is brought into play. This varies from a mere log of wood with a couple of old spade heads nailed in front forming a sharp prow, which is its rudest form, to a triangle some six feet wide at its wooden base, from which proceeds two long iron blades forming the acute angle. Its use is always the same. It is drawn by horses and steadied by the driver's weight so as to push the earth outwards from a simple plow furrow, or series of furrows, and thus form a ditch. When this is over six feet wide a “side wiper” is generally substituted, which is a long iron blade, lowered from a frame which rests upon four wheels, so that when drawn by a powerful team it slants the plowed soil to one side. In light soils and for large ditches, an elaborate machine is used, which not only plows the earth, but takes it up and shoots it out upon the banks a distance of ten or twelve feet on either side, at the rate of from 600 to 1,000 cubic yards per day. But the implement most in use for operations of any extent is the iron “scraper,” well known in Victoria as the “scoop,” which is found in many forms, sometimes it runs sledgewise, sometimes upon wheels, and ingeniously fitted so as to be tilted without effort. For a long pull, wheels are considered best, and for steep banks runners have the preference. The kind

*Irrigation in Western America, Egypt and Australia by the Honorable Alfred Deakin, M. P., Victoria.

of soil to be moved and worked upon, and the length of haul, are always taken into account in determining the class of scoop used. There is another implement known as the buck scraper, which for ordinary farming use in light soils, and in practiced hands, accomplishes remarkable results. It consists of a strong piece of two inch timber, from six feet to nine feet long, and one foot three inches high, with a six inch steel plate along its face projecting two inches below its lower edge, and is strengthened with cross-pieces at the back, where there is a projecting arm, upon which the driver stands. Like the ordinary scraper it is also found on wheels and runners, and in many patterns, and is drawn by a pair of horses. Instead of taking up the earth as the scraper does, it pushes the soil before it, and, when under good command, does such work as check-making, ditch excavating, or field levelling, in sandy soils, with marvellous rapidity."

A novel method of excavating a canal has been adopted in Northern California. It is illustrated in Figure 190, which is a view of a canal dredger invented and operated by the San Francisco Bridge Company. It is now in use digging the main canal of the Central Irrigation District, which is fifteen feet deep, six miles long, sixty feet wide at the bottom and one hundred feet wide at the top.

The following description of this machine is taken from the *California Irrigationist* of August 1, 1891:

"The bid of the Bridge Company for this work was about thirty thousand dollars lower than that of any of their competitors. It was the only firm of contractors who figured on doing this work by machinery; the other contractors estimated on doing it by the old method of scrapers and horses.

"The machine, a cut of which is herewith presented,

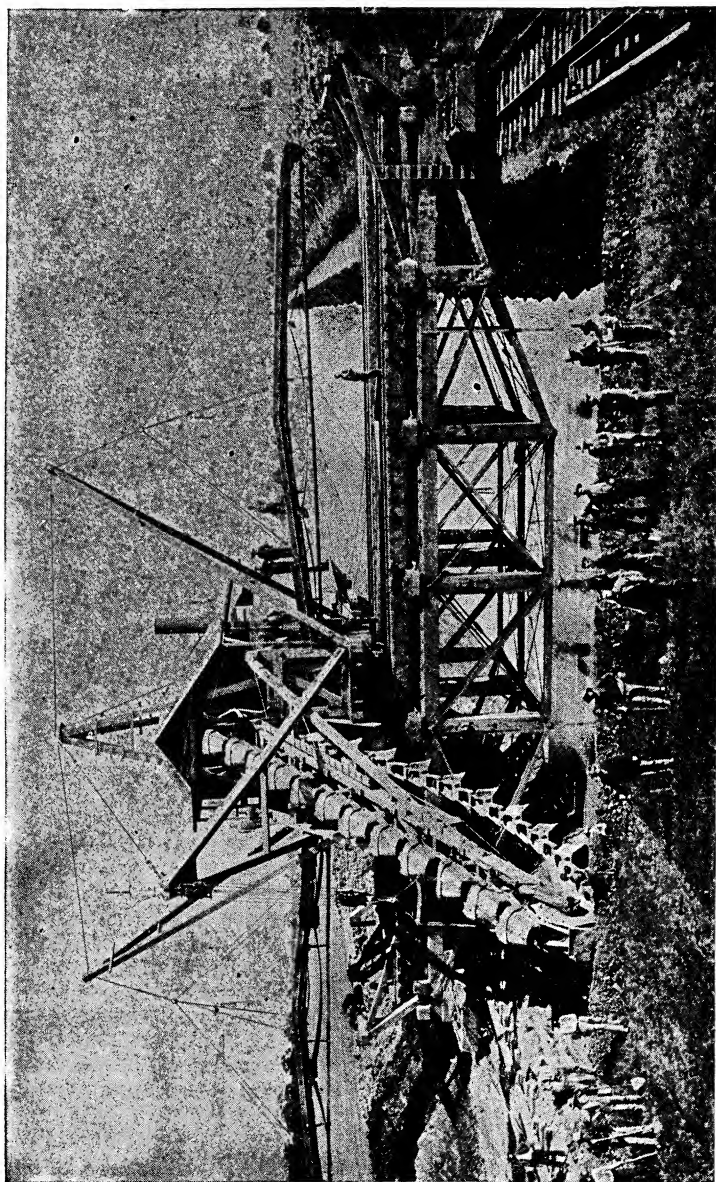


Fig. 190. Canal Dredger.

was conceived, invented and designed by the Bridge Company for the carrying out of its contract, and it has proved remarkably well adapted to the work and is in every way a success. It would have been absolutely impossible to have excavated this ditch in the old way with scrapers, owing to the presence of water, which in the summer months stood about two feet deep in the ditch, and in the winter months was often as deep as five to seven feet. The designers of the machine anticipated this condition, and ingeniously arranged the machine to rest on the original ground at the foot of the spoil bank at the top of the ditch, and not on the bottom of the ditch as steam excavators usually do. A standard-gauge railroad track is laid on either side of the ditch, as may be seen in the cut; on each of these tracks are located three very heavy railroad trucks, similar to flat cars only shorter; on these trucks are rested the three trusses that span the ditch and carry the car, which runs on double track standard-gauge, and on which is located all the excavating and transporting machinery, as shown in the illustration. The cars on the tracks on either bank are moved forward eight or ten feet at each shift by means of wire ropes worked by steam drums, fastened to "dead men," or anchors fixed in the ground 100 or 200 feet ahead of the machine; then the excavating chain and buckets are lowered, by means of another steam gypsy, until the buckets come in contact with the ground, and the car is started across the transverse track by means of another steel cable worked by a steam drum; and the buckets, as the machine passes transversely across the ditch, take a cut off the top of the ditch of the whole area of the eight or ten feet which the machine moved forward, and when the machine arrives at the other side of the ditch, the boom is again lowered and the car started back, and another cut is excavated by the buckets.

“This operation is repeated until this section of the ditch is taken out clear to the bottom, then the ladder is raised by a steam drum so that the buckets clear the ground, and the side cars are again run ahead another eight or ten feet as before, and the buckets are again lowered until they come in contact with the ground, and the car started on the transverse track again. The buckets dump or discharge into a hopper, the bottom of which is inclined and reversible, and the material after falling into a hopper falls down over this incline bottom, which delivers it on the rubber belt conveyor, which carries it to the spoil bank. When the machine passes the center of the ditch, the bottom of the hopper is tilted to the other side and the material is thrown on the other conveyor, which delivers it on the opposite bank.”

Article 52. Water Power on Irrigation Canals.

Water power is utilized to a far greater extent on the canals of France, Spain and Italy than it is on the irrigation canals of India or America.

The Hon. Alfred Deakin, M. P., gives an account of the application of the water power of an irrigation canal for the purpose of irrigating land on a higher level than the canal.* He states that:—

“On the Cigliano Canal, above Saluggia, is the only instance in Italy in which the motive power of water is used on a large scale in connection with irrigation. Three canals, the Rotto carrying 565 cubic feet per second; the Cigliano, carrying 1,766 cubic feet per second; and the Ivrea, carrying 600 cubic feet per second, round the side of a steep hill, one above the other in the order named. The waters of the highest, the Ivrea, feed the

*Irrigation in Western America, Egypt and Italy.

Cigliano, while the waters of the Cigliano, by a fall of twenty-one feet into the Rotto, generate a sufficient force to lift part of the waters which have been poured from the Ivrea to the crest of the hill sixty-two feet above it, and 130 feet above the Cigliano. From this height it is distributed over the surrounding plateau, which is 164 feet above any natural water supply. The first cost of the machinery employed was \$140,000, and a further outlay of \$20,000 was incurred before it could raise twenty-five cubic feet per second, the volume desired. The working expenses are small, but capitalizing the rent paid to the government for the water, the total cost of the work amounts to \$200,000, or nearly \$8,100 per cubic foot per second. From such illustrations it is evident that, ingenious and economical as many of their works are, the Italians appraise the value of water almost as highly as the Southern Californians, and are prepared to undertake the most expensive and difficult works where it cannot be obtained without them."

To show the extent to which the water power of irrigation canals has been utilized in other countries the following examples are given:—

The Crappone Canal in France, having a capacity of from 350 to 500 cubic feet per second, moves thirty-three mills situated on its course.

On the Marseilles Canal in France, the owners of one hundred and seven mills use the fall of the water in the canal for motive power, developing about 2,000 horse-power. Probably over twenty per cent. of its revenue is derived from this source, and the tariff for the use of the water for motive power at the numerous falls along the canal was, a few years since, \$40 per horse-power per annum. A horse-power was fixed at 43,296 pounds of water falling through one foot per minute. The water, after being used for motive power, had to be returned

The main canal of this district has a constant slope of 1 in 10,000, and a constant depth of six feet, and its discharge is diminished by contracting the bed width of the canal.

Sometimes the fall of the ground, that is, the profile of the line, will determine the grade of the canal, after which the bed width and depth are fixed.

Mr. T. Login, C. E., has stated with reference to the water of the river Ganges, admitted into the head of the Ganges Canal at Hurdwar, that it is nearly free from silt from October to March; but as soon as the snow begins to melt in April, the water is highly charged with silt. This silt is carried down the canal in the hot season, that is, from April to September, and is deposited over the canal bed, to be again picked up and carried forward in the cold season, that is, from October to March, when the water becomes more pure. This information may be useful in other works, somewhat similarly situated, as to the period during which the water supply is highly charged with silt.

Article 9. Dimensions of Banks.

The top of the canal banks is generally from 6 to 10 feet in width, according to the material and depth of water, and it is seldom less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet above the maximum level of the water. This, generally speaking, will be sufficient, as irrigation canals, from their position, are not subject to floods, and, as a rule, they do not receive much of the drainage of the country through which they pass, and for this reason, the effect of a very heavy rainfall would be imperceptible.

A roadway is sometimes made on one or both banks, and, in this case, this determines the top width of the banks.

The top width of the bank is made level, or slightly

to the company's canal at a lower level, and not appropriated for any other purpose, except by special arrangement. When the water was not used by subscribers for irrigation, it could be employed temporarily for motive power at the rate of \$5 per horse-power per month.

On the Verdon Canal in France, there existed, some time since, at the numerous falls along the canal, water power to the extent of 2,000 horse-power, which was fixed to be let at \$40 per horse-power per annum.

The water power of the Henares Canal in Spain, has been estimated at 3,630 horse-power for nine months, and 1,450 horse-power for the rest of the year.

Article 53. Cost of Pumping and of Water.*

Fearing the failure of the immense masonry barrage (described at page 97), which crosses both branches of the Nile, a short distance below Cario at the head of the Delta, upon which the supply of water to the perennial canals largely depends, the Government in 1885 made an agreement with the Irrigation Society of Behera, by which it undertook to pay \$210,000 a year for thirty years for a supply up to a certain level, with a maximum of about 2,604 cubic feet per second at Low Nile, lifted by two powerful sets of steam pumps into the Western Canal or Rayah Behera. The weir has since been rendered secure, but the agreement indicates the value of water and the difficulty of obtaining it, even in parts of Egypt. Owing to the defective alignment of some, and the silting up of other canals, the task of raising the water a second time from the channels to the fields has been cast upon a large, if not the largest, body of the cultivators. In 1864, according to Figari Bey, the

* Irrigation in Western America, Egypt and Italy, by the Honorable Alfred Deakin, M. P. of Victoria, Australia.

number of sâkiyehs or wooden water-wheels used in Central and Lower Egypt was about 50,000, turned by 200,000 oxen and managed by 100,000 persons, who watered 4,500,000 acres. The water-wheels are of several varieties, costing on the average, with the well, \$150 each, that most in use sufficing for five acres, or ten acres if worked day and night, and employing three bullocks and two men on each shift.

In the estimate of Figari Bey, some steam pumps were probably overlooked; for twenty years later there were 2,000 of these at work in lower Egypt, with coal ranging from \$10 to \$20 per ton. It can now be bought in Alexandria for \$5 per ton. The cost of steam pumping is about \$1.50, but the price at which it can be hired varies from \$2 up to \$5 per acre. If paid in kind the charge is often one-fifth of a cotton, and one-quarter of a rice crop, as the latter requires more water. A ten-horse power engine gives an ample supply for 100 acres during the season. There are also "shadoofs" (Egyptian water-lifters or swing buckets) innumerable in constant employ, which require six men to keep watered one acre of cotton or sugar-cane or two of barley. "If the thin deposit of mud left by the departing river is kept moist its value remains at par. If the hot sun is allowed to play upon it unopposed, it soon becomes baked, and curls up into tiny cylinders; then, breaking into fragments, it falls dead and worse than useless. Therefore, the process of irrigation must begin at once. The rude sâkiyeh and the ruder shadoof are kept going night and day, and give employment to tens of thousands of people, and cattle as well.*

The cost of this incessant labor cannot be estimated. "There is the greatest dearth of accurate statistics,"† and especially of statistics which would show what is

* "The Modern Nile," G. L. Wilson, Scribner, September, 1887.

† Public Works Report 1884.

paid for the water and what is produced by it. Though twenty-eight taxes were repealed in 1880, and others have been removed since, the taxation now ranges from \$5 to \$10 per acre, and sometimes, in Upper Egypt, amounts to more than twenty per cent. of the gross annual value of the farm. Over 1,000,000 acres of the irrigated land belongs to the State, the Fellâhin upon them being its tenants, with a life interest and a title to their improvements; half as much is included in great estates, while the balance is in the hands of small proprietors. Omdehs, or notables, and sheiks, who control the village communes, often own estates of 1,000 or even 2,000 acres, but the holdings of the great majority of their constituents, who are working proprietors, are very small. The Crown tenants, of course, pay rent, but all pay a "land tax" of from \$1 to \$8 per acre, which might be more properly named a water rent, as no tax is levied if no water is given. It is clear that, if in addition to the taxes, there is the cost of pumping, and four months' labor taken by the *corvée*, the produce must be great to yield any profit to the cultivator. The cost of the crop, including taxes and pumping, averages \$25 per acre. The value of land averages \$60 per acre in Upper Egypt, and from \$100 to \$125 in Lower Egypt, but it not unfrequently reaches \$100 in the one and \$300 to \$350 in the other. Its variation may be judged from the fact that rents run from 50 cents to \$50 per acre. Labor, of course, is plentiful and cheap—wages averaging from 32 cents to 14 cents per day—but, on the other hand, the agricultural implements employed are of the most primitive character; the plough used is made on the same model as is delineated upon monuments thousands of years old, and the Nile mud, though freely and easily worked after the subsidence of the water, requires constant attention throughout the year.

Article 54. Maintenance and Operation of Irrigation Canals.

The defective design and construction of the greater number of irrigation canals in this country, have been already referred to. But this is not all, for the maintenance is equally bad. Repairs are seldom carried out in a thorough and workmanlike manner. Weeds, bushes, and even trees, are allowed to grow in, and obstruct the channels. Brush is allowed to collect and form obstructions to the flow. In some places the channel gets silted up and bars are formed, and in other places extensive erosion takes place. A great loss of water takes place from defective banks and leaky flumes. The channel, in some cases, floods large areas of land, causing serious loss of water. The side slopes and grades of the canals are allowed to take care of themselves, and when breaches occur in the banks, the repairs are done in a hurried and slipshod way. Anything is good enough to fill in the breach in the banks.

When drops are washed out they are seldom replaced, then retrogression of levels takes place, and the surface of the water gets lower and lower, until the velocity of the current has adjusted itself to the material cut through, and the channel has established its regimen. In consequence of the scouring out of the bed of the channel, the sub-soil water passed through is lowered, causing in some cases, great injury to the land. If the channel has fall enough, and it usually has too much fall, it is assumed that the canal can take care of itself.

For the proper conservancy of the canal it should be closed once a year, at least, for repairs. Stakes should be set in the bed, to grade, and the silt removed to this level. The banks should be trimmed up, and all weeds, brush and other obstructions removed. Weirs, head-works, bridges, flumes, sluices, drops, etc., should be

put in thorough repair. This will be found the cheapest method in the end, and, by this means, the water can be kept in better control, and the canal worked to much better advantage, than when it is allowed to fall into bad repair.

Telephone service should be established along the line of the canal, and a roadway on one bank will be found useful. The official in charge, whether engineer or superintendent, should be informed every day by the patrolman of the quantity of water flowing into the canal at the head works, and also the quantity discharged at each irrigation outlet. He should also be immediately informed of any breach in the canal banks, or anything else likely to cause damage, or a partial obstruction to, or complete stoppage of irrigation in its main or distributary channels.

The Indian, Egyptian and Italian Irrigation Canals are closed, at least once a year, for clearance of silt and repairs in general. Some of the Indian canals are closed for about six weeks annually. The Naniglio Grande, or Grand Canal of the Ticino in Italy, is closed twice a year. An instance of frequent closing is given on one of the small Indian canals. In the Irrigation Revenue Report of the Bombay Presidency, for 1889-90, it is stated that:—

“The Palkhed Canal was closed six times during the year for clearance of silt, aquatic plants,” etc.

Mr. Walter H. Graves, C. E., has made some remarks on this subject which will be found useful here. He states:—*

“Maintenance and superintendence are matters of considerable importance in the management and success of any enterprise, but especially important in irrigation

*Irrigation and Agricultural Engineering in Transactions of the Denver Society of Civil Engineers for June, 1886.

plants, for obvious reasons. The roadbed and rolling stock of a railroad might be allowed to deteriorate for some length of time without seriously impairing the operation of the road, but deterioration in the head-works and channel of a canal means speedy paralysis.

“The sources of impairment of canal property are:—

“*First.* As to the channel. The water itself carried by the canal, by the erosion of the banks and channel, and the filling of the channel by the deposition of sediment.

“This is a process of self destruction.

“*Second.* From the storm or flood water. The denuding of the banks by the erosive action of the elements is a constant source of destruction, although it is a comparatively small item. From the very nature of the alignment or location of the canal it must intercept to a greater or less extent the slope, and consequently the drainage of the country it traverses. If ample provision is made to transfer the flood or drainage water across the canal by means of flumes, culverts, etc., destruction from this source is largely prevented. But, as a rule, provisions of this character are wholly neglected. In many cases, where the slope of the country is sufficient, there is no upper bank to the canal, and the drainage channels are allowed to empty directly into it. Thus the surface water of the entire country above the canal is gathered into it, and the result is, in such cases, a constant rebuilding and repairing of banks.

“*Third.* The destruction of the channel, and especially the banks, by the range cattle, which can only be prevented by fencing the canal.

“The deterioration in the structures of a canal are:

“*First.* The head works. If these are of such a character as to be proof against the strain and force of the annual floods, and to meet the requirements of the

wide range of the fluctuations of the average mountain stream they must be very complete and expensive structures, and quite out of the reach of the average company. The class of work usually adopted, however, is such as to make the liability of destruction and the cost of repair important items in the subject of maintenance.

“*Second.* Applying to all structures is *decay*. Timber intervening between water and earth, and alternately soaked and dried, is particularly subject to decay, and the life of wooden structures can scarcely be prolonged beyond six or eight years.

“*Third.* Incendiarism. Strange as it may appear, this has proven, in the experience of the larger canal companies, an item of considerable importance.

“The subject of maintenance directly involves that of superintendence. An ignorant or an indifferent superintendent can increase the cost of maintenance many fold.

“Where incipient disaster may easily and cheaply be curtailed by intelligent vigilance on the part of the superintendent, serious calamities often occur by reason of his carelessness and ignorance. As a case in point, a leak of apparently insignificant proportions was allowed to exist for some time through the embankment adjoining the head-gate of one of the largest canals in Colorado, when it suddenly assumed a magnitude beyond control, until it had almost completed the destruction of the head-gate, a structure costing several thousand dollars. In this case as in many others similar, bad superintendence was credited to bad engineering.

“It seems to be quite the custom in Colorado to select canal superintendents from among any class of men except engineers, the very men best fitted by experience and training for such work.”

In India the irrigation canals are always under the

control of the engineers of the Public Works Department. They control the movement and distribution of the water, and carry out all repairs and additions to the works. In order to know at all times the quantity of water available they have numerous gauges, the readings of which reach the controlling office every day, and it is a rule that he should write them into his gauge book with his own hand.

There is one arrangement, however, which, though it works well in India, is not suited for this country, that is, executive and assistant engineers engaged on the canals there, usually have powers of an assistant magistrate for the protection of canal property.

The following extract is pertinent to this subject:*

“It is too commonly supposed that when the canal is once constructed, there remains little for the executive engineer to do worthy of a man of any experience, ability or education. This is a very great mistake. There may be no great works left to construct, but there are sure to be many small ones requiring much experience and precision to execute properly. There are many points of the purest science still undetermined, such as the true formulæ for the discharge of large bodies of water in open channels, or over weirs, the amount of loss by percolation and evaporation; the effect on the velocity of a stream of a large percentage of silt carried along. The executive engineer may have besides, to train and do battle with rivers of great size, or the not less troublesome hill torrents. He may have in his charge a series of weirs which have to be constantly watched and protected, while repairs, often of the most important character have to be executed within the space of only a few days when the canal can be closed.

*Roorkee Treatise on Civil Engineering.

Alongside of his weirs he may have locks to superintend. His rajbuhās (laterals or distributaries) ought to be a source of constant interest, requiring extension and improvements, while he will find, as he goes on irrigating, that drainage has to be attended to and artificial cuts to be laid out, to correct the over-saturation which only the best administration can prevent from taking place, and to ward off the malaria which over-saturation produces.

“ Besides all this, no man should consider it beneath his attention to exercise almost independent control over a large body of water, bringing in a revenue every year of \$200,000 to \$300,000, and also of being a source of wealth to the country of at least four times that amount.

“ He should possess a general knowledge of the agriculture of the district, and know at what season the various crops most want watering, and what soils most require it. If he is fond of forestry, he will find room for gratifying his taste in cherishing and extending the plantations along the banks of his canal, and may render lasting benefits to the country by the introduction of new trees.

“ Among lesser matters, he may turn his attention to utilizing the water power of his canal, a subject which must claim attention as the country progresses. If the above subjects do not possess sufficient interest for the engineer, he had better choose some other line than the irrigation department.

“ Nor ought he to look for employment on a running canal if he is not prepared for a life of constant moving about, at all seasons of the year. He must expect but little of the pleasures of society, or domestic life, and be prepared for many a long, hot day, by himself, in the canal inspection house.”

Article 55. Methods of Irrigation.

The methods of irrigation are generally classed under four heads, as follows:—

- 1st. Flooding.
- 2d. By distribution through furrows or ditches.
- 3d. Sub-surface irrigation by pipes.
- 4th. Sprinkling.

Of the four methods mentioned, only the first two will be referred to in the following pages, as almost all irrigation on a large scale is carried on under these heads.

Of the above four methods, flooding is most generally practiced, and on the most extensive scale. The flooding is usually done in embanked compartments. These compartments vary in size. In India, they are sometimes as small as 400 square feet, whilst in Egypt, they are often several square miles in extent.

The following, on methods of irrigation, is compiled mainly from a paper in the Minutes of Proceedings of the Institution of Civil Engineers for 1883, by P. O'Meara, C. E., on *Irrigation in Northeastern Colorado*, and also from a paper by the Hon. Alfred Deakin, M. P., of Victoria, Australia, on *American Irrigation*.

FLOODING.

The easiest, simplest and cheapest method of irrigation is by flooding. By this method, the water is directed to cover the whole area under cultivation to a depth varying according to the crop and the quality of the soil. This plan is the most wasteful of water, but cannot be avoided in the cultivation of cereals. The only work it involves in the field is that necessary to permit an even flow of water. With a regular slope this work is sometimes trifling, but, as a rule, some preliminary outlay is required for leveling irregu-

lower on the side furthest from the canal, to allow the rain waters to run off in that direction as, were the contrary the case, during storms a considerable quantity of earth, especially in light soils, might be washed into the canal.

In some cases the top of the bank is made a segment of a circle with a slight rise in the center.

CROSS-SECTIONS

FIG. 8

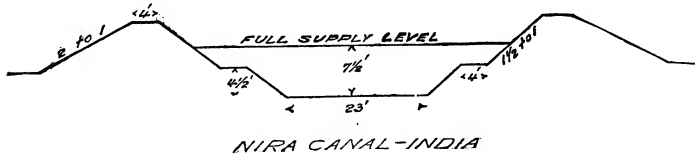
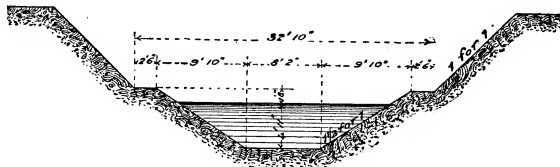
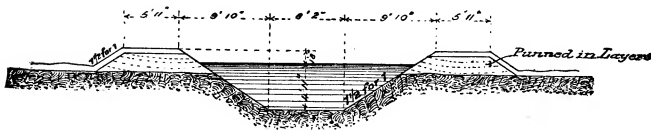


FIG. 9



HENARES CANAL - SPAIN

FIG. 10



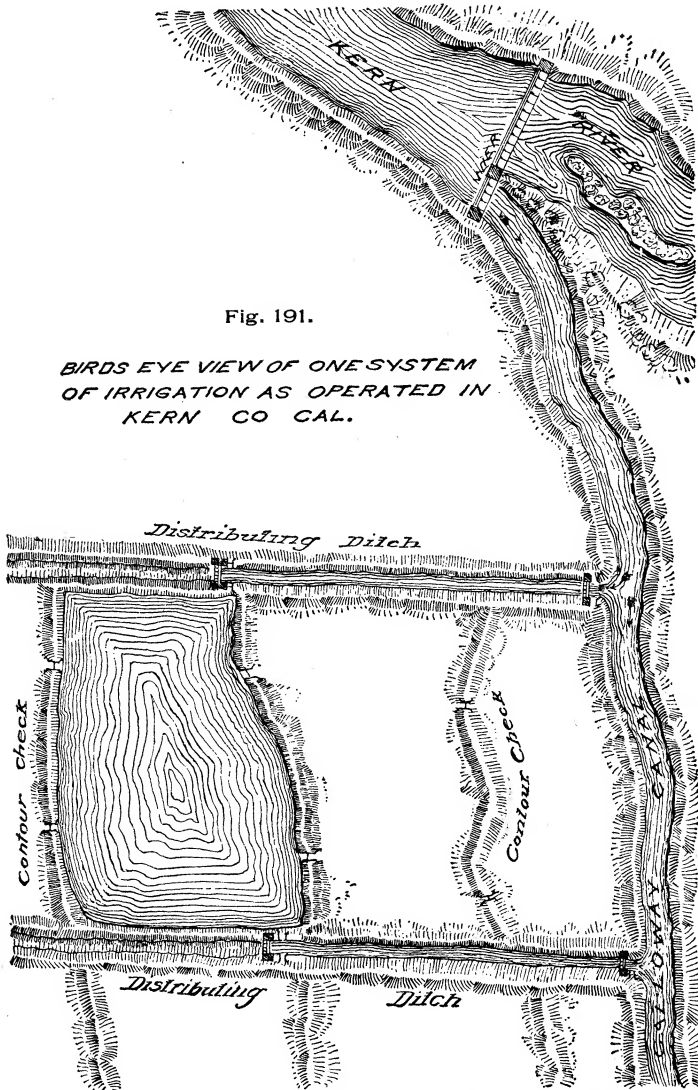
HENARES CANAL - SPAIN

When the channel is partly in cut and partly in fill, a berm of from 2 to 6 feet in width is left between the top

larities, or else providing for the equal distribution of the stream from points of vantage.

Fig. 191.

*BIRDS EYE VIEW OF ONE SYSTEM
OF IRRIGATION AS OPERATED IN
KERN CO CAL.*



To secure the highest degree of economy under the

flooding method, inequalities are removed from the surface of the land, which is then divided by small raised mounds, called "checks," into compartments, each of which is connected with a lateral or branch drain, leading from a lateral by one or more rudely constructed sluice boxes, or other cheap contrivances. The objects of these compartments are threefold, namely:—1, To check the water and to cause it to flow laterally; 2, To arrest the flooding as soon as the amount supplied is sufficient for moistening the soil to the extent deemed beneficial; 3, To diminish the inequality in the depths moistened, which necessarily arises in the circulation of water from a central point.

Figure 191 exhibits the distributing ditch taken from the main canal, the gates leading from the distributing ditch to the compartment.* The compartment flooded is the third from the main canal, and in case the two upper compartments were first flooded, their surplus water would flow through the gates shown in the checks, into the third compartment. Small gates are shown in the three checks for draining the compartments when it is deemed they have had sufficient water.

The smaller the compartments the less will be the resulting inequality, but the greater the expense of constructing and the labor of using them. Lands nearly level and lands with retentive soil admit of the largest compartments, with a given margin for inequality of moistening. The maximum of size is perhaps obtainable when the slope from the point of application is about 1 inch in 100 feet. On nearly level lands the size of the compartments may be directly proportioned to the volume of water in application. The extent of this volume is limited by the difficulty of controlling it,

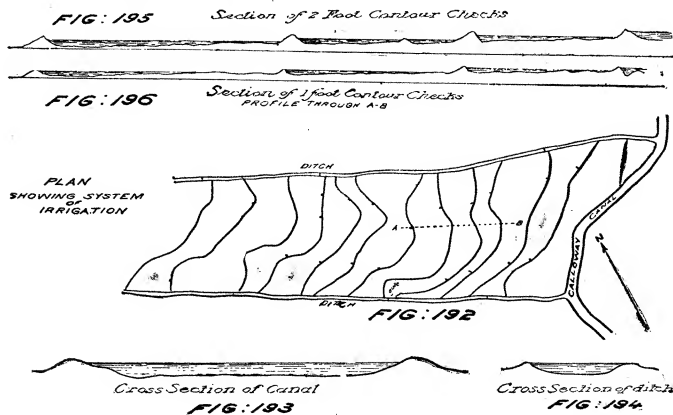
*Report of the Senate Committee on the Irrigation and Reclamation of Arid Lands.

and the damage it would do to the soil or crop if too large. Laterals of three or four cubic feet per second for broken land, and of six or seven cubic feet when the land is unbroken, are manageable under favorable circumstances, by one irrigator, although those which are in use where compartments have been tried in Colorado are much smaller. The whole of the volume in application may be admitted into one compartment through several openings, or into several compartments through one or more openings. In the former case the compartments may be larger, because the inequality of absorption depends on the time of flooding. This, to come within the margin fixed for inequality of absorption, must, in the absence of statistics for different soils, be arrived at by a tentative process, and the size of the compartments then proportioned to the volume or volumes in application.

When the fall is slight, shallow ditches are run, in Colorado, from 50 feet to 100 feet apart in the direction of the fall; when the land is steeper they are carried diagonally to the slope, or are made to wind around it, and from there, by throwing up little dams from point to point, the whole field is inexpensively flooded. When the fall is still greater and the surface irregular, ridges are thrown up along the contour lines of the land, marking it off into plots called "checks," on the whole of the interior of which water will readily and rapidly reach an equal depth on the contour line. When one plot is covered the check is broken and the water admitted so as in the same way to cover the next plot.

Figure 192 shows the contour checks beginning at the main canal, and compartments supplied by a ditch or distributary running almost parallel on each side of the compartments. Figure 193 shows a cross-section of main canal; Figure 194, a cross-section of distributary,

and Figures 195 and 196, cross-sections showing checks.* The ridges, checks or levees must have rounded crests and easy slopes, or else they interfere with the use of farming machinery, such as plows, headers, etc. By



means of diagonal furrows and checks, remarkable results are obtained, even in very broken country. By their means it is claimed that, in Colorado one man can irrigate twenty-five acres per day. Where checks have not been used upon ground with an acute incline the water has soon worn deep channels through it, utterly ruining it for agricultural purposes; or again, where the water has been allowed to flow too freely, the consequence has been that all the fertilizing elements of the soil have been washed away. In flooding, the aim is, therefore, to put no more water upon the land than it will, at once and equally, absorb or can part with without creating a current sufficient to carry off sediment. The neglect of these precautions has caused the abandonment of several settlements made in Utah before the art of Irrigation was properly understood.

*Report of the Senate Committee on the Irrigation and Reclamation of Arid Lands.

Both the depth and number of floodings are varied according to soil and crop. With a clay the waterings are light and frequent, while with a sandier quality they are heavier and rarer. Much, too, depends upon the distance and nature of the sub-soil. There is considerable uncertainty with regard to the measurements given for flooding. It is sometimes so low that it will give a depth of only two or three inches, and at other times it will give a depth of five to ten inches at a single watering. There are cases in which as many feet have been used. The number of waterings is best determined by the crop itself, and the most skillful irrigators are those who study its needs and take care to supply these needs, without giving an excess of water. The quantity used alters, therefore, from season to season, so that only an average can be given. See Article 58.

In Colorado, where water is used more lavishly than in any other State, some good judges have agreed that an average of 14 inches should be ample, and this is certainly not too low. Where the soil is liable to become hard, and will retain moisture, wheat is often grown with two floodings, one before the ground is ploughed and the other when it is approaching the ear. When two waterings are given after sowing, one is given when the wheat commences to "tiller," and the other when it reaches the milky stage. Where irrigation does not precede the plowing, it is postponed as long after the appearance of the crop as possible. Sometimes wheat has three, or even as many as four, floodings, but this is unusual, as over-watering occasions "rust." Experience shows that it is easy to exceed the quantity required by the crop, and that every excess is injurious. Extravagance is the common fault, so much so that the most successful irrigators are invariably those who use the least water. The less water, indeed,

with which grain can be brought to maturity, the finer the yield.

Colonel Charles L. Stevenson states, with reference to the methods of irrigation in use in Utah:—*

“Each farmer has canals leading from the main one to every field, and generally along the whole length of the upper side of each field. Each field has little furrows, a foot or more apart and parallel with each other, running either lengthwise or crosswise or diagonally across, as the slope of the land requires. Into these furrows the water is turned, one or more at a time, as the quantity of water permits, until it has flowed nearly to the other end, when it is turned into the next furrows, and so on until all are watered.

“This is the usual custom, but where the soil is made of clay this method is not so good and another is used. This method is to throw up little embankments six inches high around separate plats of land that are of uniform level, and turn the water in until the plat is full to the top, when the water is drawn off to the next lower plat, and so on to the end. This enables the water to soak in more and so does more good, but where the soil is porous, as is generally the case, it is not so good a method as it wastes water.”

FLOODING IN INDIA.

In India, and also Egypt, flooding is universally practiced. There are two methods adopted in India in supplying water for irrigation, known as *flush* and *lift*. In flush irrigation the water flows by gravitation on to the land to be irrigated. In lift irrigation the water reaches the land at such a low level that it cannot flow over the surface of the land to be irrigated. This

* Irrigation Statistics of the Territory of Utah, by Colonel Charles L. Stevenson, C. E.

necessitates power of some kind, usually manual labor, to raise the water sufficiently to enable it to flow over the land. It is, therefore, to the interest of the irrigator to economize water, and in view of this fact the officials of the Ganges and Jumna Canals charge for lift irrigation only two-thirds of the rates charged for flow.

The proportion of flow to lift irrigation, on the Sone Canals, in Bengal, in 1889-90, was 96.3 to 3.7. During the same period on the Mazzafargarh Canals, in the Punjab, the proportion of flow to lift was as 96.1 to 3.9, but on the Shahpur Inundation Canals, in the same Province, the proportion of flow to lift irrigation was 85 to 15. There is usually more lift irrigation on inundation canals than on perennial canals.

So great was the loss from waste of water in India, some years since, that it was seriously proposed to supply all the water at such a level that it should be raised some height, however small, in order to bring it to the surface of the land to be irrigated. It would then be to the interest of the irrigators to prevent waste, and the duty of water would, in this way, be materially increased.

FURROWS.

Peas and potatoes are not irrigated by flooding, but from furrows four feet to ten feet apart, and this is found the most economical and most successful system for vines and fruit trees. The direction of the furrows is chosen so as to give a fall of from one inch to three inches per 100 feet. The expenditure of water is much less under this than under the flooding method. When the furrows are deep and narrow the practice is similar in principle, though less effective than the pipe method of irrigation, which will be described further on. Irrigation can, in fact, be carried on without flooding the intervening soil, moistening in the latter case taking place beneath the surface, and losses from evaporation

being thereby largely diminished. It is evident that the depth of the furrows should be in some degree proportioned to the depth of the roots of the crop cultivated. Figure 197 illustrates how land is irrigated by furrows.*

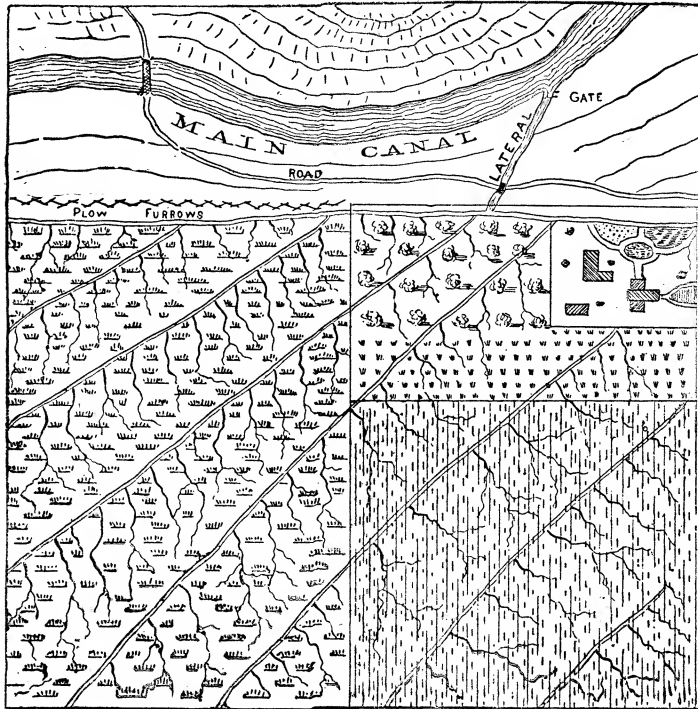


Fig. 197. Plan Showing Method of Furrow Irrigation.

Under the flooding system the ground, if not protected from the sun, cakes quickly. When the water is run down furrows drawn by a plow between the plants, this caking is avoided and the water soaks quickly to the roots. When flooding was practiced in orchards it

*Irrigation by W. H. Graves, C. E. Transactions of Denver Society of Civil Engineers, 1886.

was found to bring the roots to the surface and enfeeble the trees, so that they needed frequent waterings.

Sometimes the furrows feed a small hole at the foot of the tree, from which the water soaks slowly in. When this is done mulching is found desirable over the hole to reduce the loss by evaporation. The general rule is to protect the trees by small ridges, so that the water does not affect the surface within three or four feet of them. The simple furrow, however, is most generally in use.

Oranges are watered three or four times in summer; vines once, twice, or often not at all after the first year or two; and other fruits according to the caprice of the owner, the necessities of the season and the nature of the soil, one to four times. It is impossible to be more exact.

An even greater difference, comparatively, in the quantity of water used obtains in the furrow irrigation of fruit trees and vines, than has been noted in regard to cereals. To such an extent does this prevail that, not only do districts differ, but of two neighbors who cultivate the same fruits in contiguous orchards, having exactly the same slope and soil, one will use twice or thrice as much water as the other. To attain the best results the trees must be carefully watched, and supplied with only just enough water to keep them in a vigorously healthy condition.

Another all important principle, as to which there is no question, and which is testified to on every hand is, that the more thoroughly the soil is cultivated, the less water it demands, a truth based partly, no doubt, upon the fact that the evaporation from hard, unbroken soil is more rapid than from tilled ground, which retains the more thoroughly distributed moisture for a longer period.

Major Corbett published some articles in the *Professional Papers on Indian Engineering* to prove that, by the adoption of superior cultivation, the necessity of irrigation would be very much diminished in India. The native plow enters the ground for only a few inches, and below that depth there is a hard crust that prevents the water from filtering down. He contended that by breaking up this hard crust by deep plowing, and by carrying the cultivation deeper, that there would not be the same necessity for irrigation as was required after shallow plowing, for the reason that evaporation from the land would not take place to the same extent.

For the irrigation of cereals, works are required on a larger scale, proportionately, than for fruit, because in the first case the water is demanded in greater quantities, at particular times, while in the latter the supply can be more evenly distributed throughout the year, though, of course, the irrigating season with both is much the same.

Winter and autumn irrigations are growing in favor. Land which receives its soaking then, needs less in summer, and is found in better condition for plowing. It is argued that moisture is more naturally absorbed in that season and with greater benefit. Everywhere the verdict of the experienced is, that too much water is being used, and the outcry against over-saturation in summer is but one of its forms.

Article 56. Duty of Water for Irrigation.

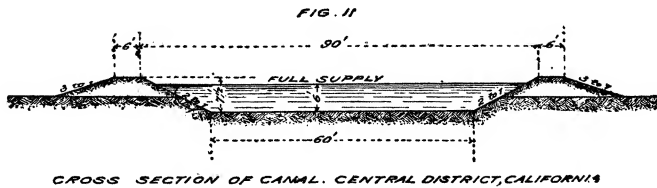
The duty of water is that quantity required to irrigate a certain area of land. In English-speaking countries, it is usually expressed by stating the number of acres that a continuous flow of one cubic foot per second will irrigate. Thus, if a stream discharging 40 cubic feet of

of the bank in cut and the bottom of the fill, and usually the fill has a flatter slope than the cut.

In deep cutting, where the excavated material is run to waste, a berm of at least 10 feet in width should be left between the top of the cut and the bottom of the slope of the waste bank, and the waste bank should be dressed up uniformly along the line.

In side-hill ground an open drain should be made on the high ground above the canal, and the intercepted drainage water carried to the nearest water-course.

In some of the large canals in Colorado, the bed has a slope from the sides to the center of from 1 to 3 feet, and this is called the *sub-grade*. It is said to have a tendency to keep the current in the center of the channel.



Another peculiarity of some canals in Colorado, is mentioned by Captain E. L. Berthoud, already quoted. He states:—

“When the open cutting of a ditch follows around a mountain slope, I find that the transverse ‘slope’ of the ditch bottom should be 0.40 to 0.70 of a foot lower than the ‘bank side’ of the ditch, thus throwing the wearing force of the current near the mountain side, and largely diminishing the tendency in bends to cut the ‘bank’ opposite the slope of cutting.

“This deepening of the transverse slope, practically in a bend, has the same effect as the elevation of the outer rail in a railroad curve.”

water per second is all expended in irrigating 8,000 acres of land, then its duty is equivalent to 200 acres, that is, each cubic foot per second irrigates 200 acres. The duty varies from 35 to 2,200 acres per cubic foot per second.

The duty is sometimes expressed by the average depth of water over the whole land, and again, by the cubic contents, as, for instance, the number of cubic yards per acre.

The duty of water is influenced by different circumstances and varies according to the following conditions:—

1. With the character and conditions of the soil and sub-soil.
2. Configuration of the land.
3. The depth of water-line below surface of ground.
4. Rainfall.
5. Evaporation and temperature.
6. The method of application employed.
7. Length of time the land has been irrigated.
8. Kind of crop.
9. The quantity of fertilizing matter in the water.
10. The experience of the irrigators.
11. The method of payment for the water, whether by the rate per acre irrigated or by payment for the actual quantity of water used.

Payment according to the actual quantity of water used is a good method to make the irrigators use the water with economy.

Mr. J. S. Beresford, C. E., in a paper on the Duty of Water,* enters very fully into all the causes of waste of water. He states, under the heading:—

“*Efficiency of a Canal.*—Take the Ganges Canal. We

*Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Vol. V, Second Series.

may look on it as a great machine composed of many parts, and go about calculating its efficiency in the same way as that of a steam engine. This irrigating machine is made up of four important parts, which are quite separate, and, as things stand at present, at least two of them depend on different interests. They are as follows:—

“ 1. Main Canal.

“ 2. Distributaries.

“ 3. Village water-courses.

“ 4. Cultivators who apply the water to the fields.

“ Each cubic foot of water entering the head of a canal is expended as below:—

“ 1st. In waste by absorption and evaporation in passing from canal head to distributary head.

“ 2d. In waste from same cause in passing from distributary head to village outlet.

“ 3d. In waste from same cause in passing along village water-course to the fields to be watered.

“ 4th. In waste by cultivators, through carelessness in not distributing the water evenly over the fields, causing evaporation, and the ground to get saturated to an unnecessary depth in places. (See page 250.)

“ 5th. In useful irrigation of land.

“ Our object is plainly to increase the fifth by the reduction of all the rest.”

All over the irrigating districts of America, where irrigation is carried on from earthen channels, the duty is low. We see in Table 18 that the average duty in India is over 200 acres, and it is doubtful if the average in America is half of that quantity. There is one fact that may account for this great difference. In America the greater part of the land irrigated is virgin soil, and this may account for the great quantity of water used. In India, on the contrary, the land has been irrigated

for centuries and the average rainfall is greater than in the arid region of America. A great portion of the land now irrigated by canal water in India was irrigated from wells before the construction of the canals. Whatever the cause may be, the fact is apparent, that the duty of water in America is far below that of India.

We have already seen, in page 249, how Mr. A. E. Forrest, C. E., by simply improving the distributaries, raised the duty of water in one of the divisions of the Ganges Canal to 400 acres.

There is no good reason why such a duty of water should not be reached in many districts of America. As the area of irrigated land increases so will the value of water increase, and irrigators will then be compelled to keep their main and distributing channels in good order, to use the water at night to prevent all waste and to put no more on the land than is sufficient to mature a crop.

The following table, showing the duty of water in different countries, is compiled from various sources and includes a table given by Mr. A. D. Foote, C. E., in his Report on Irrigating Desert Lands in Idaho:—

TABLE 18. Giving the duty of water in different countries.

LOCALITY.	COUNTRY.	Duty of water.	REMARKS.
		Acres.	
Eastern Jumna Canal.....	India.....	306	E. B. Dorsey, C. E.
Western Jumna Canal.....	India.....	240	F. C. Danvers.
Ganges Canal.....	India.....	232	E. B. Dorsey, C. E.
Canals of Upper India.....	India.....	267	E. B. Dorsey, C. E.
Canals of India—average.....	India.....	250	Lieut. Scott Moncrieff, R. E.
Bari Doab Canal.....	India.....	155	F. C. Danvers.
Madras Canals (Rice).....	India.....	66	George Gordon.
Tanjore (Rice).....	India.....	40	Roorkee Treatise Civil Engineering.
Swat River Canal, 1888-89.....	India.....	216	Revenue Report of the Irrigation Dep't,
Swat River Canal, 1889-90.....	India.....	177	Punjab, 1889-90.
Western Jumna Canal, 1888-89.....	India.....	143	" "
Western Jumna Canal, 1889-90.....	India.....	179	" "
Bari Doab Canal, 1888-89.....	India.....	201	" "
Bari Doab Canal, 1889-90.....	India.....	227	" "
Sirhind Canal, 1888-89.....	India.....	180	" "
Sirhind Canal, 1889-90.....	India.....	180	" "
Chenab Canal, 1888-89.....	India.....	154	" "
Chenab Canal, 1889-90.....	India.....	154	" "
Nira Canal, 1888-89.....	India.....	186	Bombay Report, 1889-90.
Genil Canal.....	Spain.....	240	E. B. Dorsey, C. E.
Elche.....	Spain.....	1072	George Higgin, C. E.
Lorca.....	Spain.....	2200	George Higgin, C. E.
Jucar (Rice).....	Spain.....	35	George Higgin, C. E.
Henares Canal.....	Spain.....	157	George Higgin, C. E.
Canals of Valencia.....	Spain.....	242	E. B. Dorsey, C. E.
Forez Canal.....	France.....	140	Transactions I. C. E., vol. 65.
Canals south of France.....	France.....	70	George Wilson, C. E.
Sefi, or Lower Nile Canals.....	Egypt.....	350	London Times, 18 Sept., 1877.
Sefi, or Lower Nile Canals.....	Egypt.....	274	Russian Pasha, 1883.
Canals, Northern Peru.....	Peru.....	160	E. B. Dorsey, C. E. No rainfall.
Canals, Northern Chili.....	Chili.....	190	E. B. Dorsey, C. E. No rainfall.
Canals, Lombardy.....	Italy.....	90	Baird Smith, R. E. Including Rice.
Canals, Piedmont.....	Italy.....	60	Baird Smith, R. E. Including Rice.
Marcie.....	Italy.....	1 to 18	Columbani and Brioschi.
Sefi Canals, Southern France.....	France.....	60	Lieut. Scott Moncrieff, R. E.
Sefi Canals, Victoria.....	Australia.....	200	The Honorable Alfred Deakin, M. P.
Sweetwater, San Diego.....	California.....	500	William Fox, M. Inst., C. E. } Pipe
Pomona, San Bernardino.....	California.....	500	William Fox, M. Inst., C. E. } system.
Ontario.....	California.....	500	William Fox, M. Inst., C. E. }
California.....	California.....	80 to 150	Earthen channels.
San Diego.....	California.....	1500	James D. Schuyler, C. E.
Canals of Utah Territory.....	Utah.....	100	C. L. Stevenson, C. E.
Canals of Colorado.....	Colorado.....	100	Nettleton, State Engineer, Colorado.
Canals of Cache la Poudre.....	Colorado.....	193	Prof. Mead, C. E.
Canals of Colorado.....	Colorado.....	55	P. O'Meara, C. E.

Article 57. Pipe Irrigation.

Four things are necessary in order to get the greatest possible duty of water. They are:—

1. That the water should be sold or supplied by measurement.
2. That it should be conveyed to the actual point of use in impervious channels, and best of all in pipes.
3. That its use should be continuous, that is, at night as well as by day.

4. That it should be used intelligently and with a due regard to economy.

The use of pipes refers only to small supplies of water. For large supplies earthen channels are the most economical, not of water, but of money.

If the above four conditions are observed the duty of water, especially for fruit land, will be increased to a great extent, with a corresponding increase in the area of land irrigated.

The use of pipes made of plate iron, vitrified clay, concrete, wood bound with iron bands, open channels made of asphalt or concrete, and reservoirs lined with asphalt or concrete, is steadily increasing in Southern California.

The pipe system has been adopted with great success in Bear Valley, Pomona, Ontario, Riverside, San Bernardino, Los Angeles, and many other localities in Southern California, and this is conclusive proof, that the great expense attending their construction, is more than counterbalanced by the great saving of water effected by their use. By the pipe system the distribution of water is better under control, and easier managed, than by open channels.

Fred. Eaton, M. Am. Soc. C. E., of Los Angeles, has supplied the following relative to irrigation by pipes:—*

“The duty of our streams would be extended by extending the present ditches by pipe systems. Experience has taught us that by economizing the water it is not only the water that we save in seepage alone, but the distribution. The convenience that these pipe systems offer in the distribution of water is a great economizer. We find that we can get along with a half or a third the

*Quoted in *Irrigation in the United States* by Richard J. Hinton.—U. S. Department of Agriculture.

water that we get in running it around in ditches. It was thought that the San Gabriel was being used up by irrigating 2,000 acres, but it has been used since for irrigating 12,000 acres, and it can be increased by the pipe system. The duty of one-fiftieth of a cubic foot per second throughout the valley, under the pipe system, would be one inch to ten acres; that is, for vegetables and all kinds of crops. It depends altogether on the character of the soil. A soil that is well sub-drained, that is, composed of gravel, will require much less water. Such sub-soil is a natural drain, and for that reason water will go a great deal farther on that kind of land than it will on an impervious sub-soil. Taking the average in the San Gabriel Valley, with ten acres, you can irrigate all kinds of crops, orange trees, and all kinds of vegetables.

“The cost runs from \$15 to \$50 per acre. The cement pipes are not cheaper than the pressure pipes, because it requires a good many more of them, and they are not so convenient as the pressure pipes. We generally use sixteen iron. It is practically the sixteenth of an inch thick. A four-inch pipe is more difficult to make than a sixteen-inch. We put asphaltum on, but it is impossible to keep it from being knocked off in spots, and these spots rust there. We cannot inspect them closely enough to get at them all and paint them over. In ordinary soil where there is no alkali, it will wear fifteen or sixteen years. I put in pipes fifteen years ago that are doing service now. The Pasadena pipes were eleven inches with eighteen iron. That system was put in in 1873 and served up to this year. We have not many storage facilities up in the mountains, they are confined practically to the foothills and the valleys. We have to bring our water down and make our reservoir in the valley.”

The following description of the pipe system of Ontario, California, is by F. E. Trask, Chief Engineer of the Ontario Land Improvement Company:—

PIPE IRRIGATION SYSTEM, ONTARIO, CALIFORNIA.

A portion of the Ontario tract of 11,000 acres is under cultivation receiving its water supply from San Antonio Cañon by means of a pipe system of main, sub-mains and laterals. The accompanying *plat* shows only a portion of the north end of the tract, the letters $A A_2 A_3$, $B B B_3$, and $C C C$, marking the location of mains, sub-mains and laterals respectively. Lots are 696 feet by 627 feet, or about ten acres each in area.

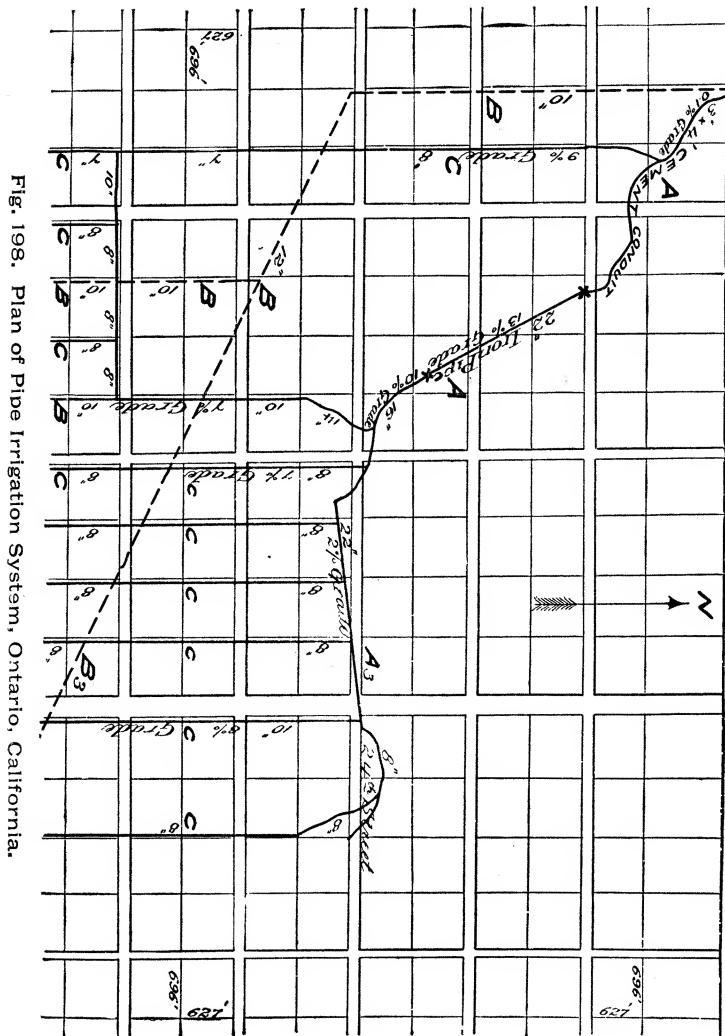
The general slope of the land is southeast, and the grade varies from thirteen (13%) per cent. at the north end—shown on plat—to one (1%) per cent. at the south end of the tract, which is not included in the plat.

The principal main, $A A A_3$, brings the water from the cañon, around the foothills, and down the same, to the head of the colony land, where, running east and west, this main supplies the laterals $C C C$.

Sub-mains $B B B_3$, or as commonly designated, the *supplementary* mains, take water from the main line, $A A A_3$, near the foothills and run diagonally through the colony, furnishing water to the laterals, $C C C$, at points some miles south of their heads, to compensate for that already expended by the latter. For example—the lateral $A_3 B_3$ has supplied four lots by the time it reaches B_3 . At B_3 a new supply is received into the lateral $A_3 B_3$ from the sub-main $B B B_3$, which is used to irrigate land lying south of B_3 .

Laterals $C C C$ are designed to carry water without pressure and deliver the same at the highest corner of each lot. They are parallel to each other and average about six miles in length. Each line is designed to irri-

gate one tier of lots and is located three feet within the boundary of such tier, as shown on diagram. The



diameter and grades of the laterals *C C C* are given on the plat for the section it represents; below which the

grade constantly decreases to the south end of the tract where the grade is flattened, *i. e.*, about one per cent.; but the diameter of pipes remain the same.

Stand pipes of fourteen (14") or sixteen (16") inches diameter are placed in the pipe lines, *C C C*, at points where water is to be delivered to the land. In each stand pipe an iron slide gate is set; this can be dropped to close the whole pipe line or to a sufficient depth to intercept the required volume of water, as the case may be.

The greater portion of the pipe used in this system has been manufactured from cement concrete at convenient points in the tract.

Properly located and designed, the *pipe system* for the irrigation of fruit lands is much more economic than any of the older methods, and irrigators can ill afford to adopt *flume* or *ditch* systems where the topography admits of the pipe system being used.

Article 58. Number and Depth of Waterings.

The number and depth of waterings given to land vary very much in different countries.

The greatest quantity is used in the *Marcite* cultivation of Italy and the south of France, where water is poured over the meadow lands during the winter, in quantity sufficient to cover them to a depth of more than 300 feet, and where the duty has been as low, in some cases, as one acre to one cubic foot of water per second. (See Table 18.)

The other extreme is reached of a small expenditure of water by the pipe system of orchard agriculture in Southern California, where a cubic foot of water per second was estimated to irrigate from 500 to 1,500 acres.

The Henares Canal, in Spain, gives twelve waterings. Each watering is equal to about 916 cubic yards, which

gives a depth of 0.57 foot for one watering, equal to 6.8 feet in depth for twelve waterings.

The Esla Canal, also in Spain, gives twelve waterings. Each watering is equal to about 850 cubic yards, which gives a total depth on the land of about 6.3 feet.

In Valencia, in Spain, where it is very hot, wheat is watered four or five times, giving about 200 acres per cubic foot per second. In other parts of Spain a depth of two and one-half to three inches was considered ample for an irrigation, and two irrigations in the seasons were held to be sufficient.

In some of the gardens of Valencia, Spain, only from 13 to 20 acres per foot are irrigated. Here, however, there are at least two crops a year and a part is devoted to rice.

In the new canal from the Rhone, in France, the summer waterings will generally be twenty in number, given once a week, and representing a total depth of one metre or 3.28 feet.

In the south of France the time for irrigation commences on the 1st of April, and terminates on the 30th of September. The standard quantity of water adopted in the country is one litre (.0353 cubic feet) of water supposed to flow continuously for six months, per hectare (2.471 acres). This quantity of water would cover the ground to a depth of about $62\frac{1}{4}$ inches; consequently it gives fourteen irrigations, each of about four and one-half inches; twenty irrigations of about three inches, or forty-three irrigations of about one and one-half inch depth of water.

There is no fixed rule in the south of France as to the number of irrigations for such crops which require periodical irrigating, during the whole season, as this must necessarily depend, to a great extent, upon the nature of the land, whether light or heavy, whether flat

In silt carrying channels, this lowering of the bed at sub-grade and at the inner slope in sidelong ground, seems of doubtful utility. It is likely that, in time, these channels would make a working section, in which the low parts mentioned would not be very apparent nor be very likely to have any very marked effect on the velocity at these parts.

Article 10. A List of Irrigation Canals, Giving Dimensions, Grades, Etc.

The following list gives some details of irrigation canals in the principal irrigating countries of the world. These details refer to the greatest discharging part of the canals mentioned, that is, the reach immediately below the head works.

The dimensions of the main canal only are mentioned. The laterals or distributaries are not included. For instance, the length of the Ganges Canal is given as 456 miles. This is the length of the main canal alone. It has in addition 2,599 miles of distributaries or laterals and 895 miles of escapes and drainage channels, which makes its total length of drainage channel 3,950 miles.

Again, the Sutlej, also known as the Sirhind Canal, has, including all its channels, a length of 4,950 miles, but of this only 503 miles, the length of the main canal, is given in the list. There are thousands of miles of irrigation canals, in the different countries mentioned, not included in the above list. The Inundation canals of the single province of Sind in India are over 5,000 miles in length.

The mean velocity of the canals varies from 2 feet per second upwards to 7 feet, and the side slopes from 1 to 1 to 4 to 1. As a rule, however, the side slopes of irrigation canals, when first constructed, vary from 1 to 1 to

Article 2. Systems of Irrigation.

In India there are four systems of irrigation in operation, each of them on a vast scale. They are Perennial canals, Inundation canals, Tanks or Reservoirs, and Wells. The inundation canals have no dam in the river at their heads; they give a supply only during floodtime, and the largest and greatest in number are situated on the river Indus.

Irrigation from wells is carried on, by bullock power and manual labor, each well watering from three to ten acres.

In America there are three systems of irrigation, Perennial canals, Reservoirs and Artesian Wells. In some instances in the Western States of America, water has been *developed* in small quantities by constructing *submerged* dams, in the beds of, and below the surface of the ground, of streams, and, in this manner, bringing to the surface, for purposes of irrigation, water that before had flowed to waste under the bed of the river. In other cases tunnels were driven *to bed rock* through the gravel beds of rivers and through hillsides, to *develop* water supplies.

Pumping is sometimes resorted to in America, but the most extensive pumping works in the world for purposes of irrigation are situated in Lower Egypt.

Article 3. American and Indian Irrigation Canals Compared.

In a paper in Volume I, of the Transactions of the Denver Society of Civil Engineers and Architects, by Mr. George G. Anderson, C. E., he describes the Irrigation canals of Colorado. This description is, in a great measure, applicable to the majority of irrigation canals in existence in America. Mr. Anderson states:—

“It was possible to design works on sound principles

or sloping. In most cases the water is given by the companies once a week, which would be equal to twenty-six irrigations during the season. The Marseilles Canal gives the water forty-three times during the season.

Experiments, near the Bári Doab Canal, in India, showed that an average depth of 0.24 feet on the whole surface represents a thorough watering of the average soil of the district, sandy loam, and that for sandy soils 0.31 feet in depth, and therefore the amount of water necessary for an average watering of one acre is $0.24 \times 43,560 = 10,454$ cubic feet.

Wheat in a dry season requires five waterings; the first for preparing the land for plowing at 10,500 cubic feet, and four for the standing crop of 8,000 cubic feet, gives 42,500 cubic feet in all necessary for each crop of wheat that is an average depth of less than one foot.

In Madras 6,000 cubic yards of water are usually given to irrigate an acre of rice. This is equivalent to a depth of 3.7 feet.

In Colorado the expenditure of water for a single irrigation is generally reckoned at about twelve inches in depth. Of irrigations the number applied to the land in one season is about three, in exceptionally dry ones, four. The English company in Colorado has a water right equivalent to a depth of 42.84 inches.

Professor George Davidson, of San Francisco, says that the best authorities assume a depth of from 10 to 12 inches of water to the production of a crop of wheat, barley and maize, when applied in waterings of four times two and a half inches or three times four inches. The smaller of these results is almost identical with the amount deduced from observation in the great valley of California, where a rainfall of $10\frac{1}{2}$ inches, fairly distributed, has insured a large crop of wheat, etc.

Colonel Charles L. Stevenson, C. E., states, with reference to Utah* :—

“ Each farm generally has the right to use the water so many hours once a week or once in 10, 12 or 14 days, as the particular valley and the time of year require. The crops are supposed to get a good soaking at every watering.”

General Scott Moncrieff states, with reference to irrigation in India:—

“ For the wheat crop which is grown in the cold season, four waterings are quite enough, and almost no other crop requires more, except rice and sugar-cane, which are sometimes irrigated as often as twelve times, and are watered by a rainy season as well. From actual experiments in the Northwest Provinces of India, in the months of December and February, when it is by no means very warm weather, I found that one cubic foot of water per second would irrigate in twenty-four hours 4.57 acres of rough, uncleaned ground previous to plowing, and that this same discharge was enough for 5.64 acres of a well-cleaned and level field of young wheat. These results give depths of water of 5.1 inches and 4.1 inches. A safe mean in Northern India is to reckon five acres in twenty-four hours as the area to be watered by one cubic foot per second, where, as is general, the soil is light.

“ We may further take fifty days as about the greatest interval there allowed to elapse between two waterings, and so we shall obtain $5 \times 50 = 250$ acres as the duty to be got out of each cubic foot per second, that is, .28 litre (.009886 cubic feet) per hectare (2.47 acres), supposing it can be used at this rate all the year round, and this is not more than has been done more than once on

* Irrigation Statistics of the Territory of Utah.

the Eastern Jumna Canal. The discharge then is measured at the head of the canal, and the water probably runs on an average more than 300 miles before it actually reaches the field to be watered. It is usual to deduct twenty per cent. for the loss by filtration, evaporation, etc., *en route*, and yet a duty as high as this has been proved attainable without making allowance for the deduction. Of these 250 acres, about eighteen per cent. usually consists of rice, and as much more of sugar-cane, each requiring a large amount of water; fifty per cent. of wheat and barley, and the rest of inferior crops, only watered once or twice. The rain, of which for the greater part falls in June, July and August, consists of about 40 inches a year—more certainly than in Castile. The heat and consequent evaporation must be considerably greater.”

Article 59. Horary Rotation.

Water is supplied for purposes of irrigation:—

1. By fixed outlet or by measurement.
2. By the area of land irrigated to certain crops.
3. By Horary Rotation.

The latter method of supply will be now considered.

In order to obtain the greatest duty from water, it should be used at night as well as during the day.

An irrigating channel passes through the lands of several proprietors. A period of rotation is fixed for this channel. This period varies according to the nature of the crop, rice for example requiring a more rapid rotation than wheat. Each landowner can then have the full volume of the channel turned on to his land, once in the period of rotation, for a certain number of hours, according to the quantity to which he is entitled.

This method is applicable only to laterals or distribu-

taries, having a small discharge, which a landowner can handle with economy.

It is clear that the quantity of water to which any single employer of a canal, common to several, and regulated by horary rotation, is entitled, is in direct proportion to the total volume of the canal, and the number of hours during which he is entitled to possess it, and in inverse proportion to the number of days over which rotation extends. Hence we have the following general formula:—

$$Q = \frac{Q_1 T}{N} \text{ and } \therefore T = \frac{N Q}{Q_1}$$

where:—

Q = the quantity appertaining to a single consumer in continued discharge.

T = the number of hours or days during which he has the right to the whole volume of the canal.

Q_1 = the volume of channel in cubic feet per second, or any other fixed measure.

N = the number of days over which the rotation extends.

Example.—Let 10 days be the period of rotation, and the channel has a supply of 20 cubic feet per second, of which a consumer is entitled to a continuous supply of one-twentieth part or one cubic foot per second. He wishes to change this continuous for an intermittent supply.—

$$T = \frac{N Q}{Q_1} = \frac{10 \times 1}{20} = .5$$

Therefore, he is entitled to the full supply for half a day or twelve hours. His name is placed on the list, say sixth, and he gets the full supply turned on at a fixed hour and turned off at a fixed hour also. Arrangements can be made to have another consumer's gate opened as this one is being closed, and, in this manner, the full

supply of the channel is delivered on the land continuously.

Mr. R. E. Forrest, C. E.,* states:— “That by a good system of rotation it might be possible to remedy the loss of duty from the water not being used at night; the water could be run on at night to the more distant points. By a system of rotation the evils of supersaturation could be lessened. The water was made to run through a tract only when it was wanted and for so long as it was wanted. In some of the Ganges Canal channels the water ran only for a single day each fortnight. The water should be completely withdrawn from every tract in which it was not in active and immediate demand.”

Article 60. Forestry and Irrigation.

The preservation of the forests, and the extensive planting of trees, should proceed simultaneously with the development of irrigation in this country. A stop should be put, and at an early date, to the ruthless destruction of the forests of this country, especially at the head-waters of the rivers, for if this is not done, what has happened in other countries is sure to happen here, and districts which are now fertile will, in the lapse of time, become barren wastes.

A large forest, is in fact, an immense reservoir, which slowly but surely gives out its supply for the wants of man. The greater part of its loss by percolation is again utilized to supply the streams, and it requires no dams or other expensive works. The Government send out engineering parties to locate the sites of reservoirs, whilst, at the same time, they permit nature's own reser-

* Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Volume LXXIII—1883.

voirs, the forests, to be destroyed in the interest of a few individuals.

Parts of Persia that are now desert were, within historic times, fertile lands, which supported dense populations and yielded large revenues. During long periods of time, different large armies, with their countless hosts of camp followers, passed across the country and cut down the trees for fuel. The inhabitants of the country did the same thing, and no trees were planted to replace those that were destroyed. During the existence of the forests the rain fell at regular intervals, and in moderate quantities, and, in this way, was an aid in the cultivation of the land and in maturing the crop. After the destruction of the forests the rain fell, in dense showers, at irregular intervals, thus doing more harm than good, and as a result of this the population gradually diminished until the land became a desert.

In America, an army of wood-cutters is *constantly* employed in destroying the forests. It takes a short time to destroy a forest, but many a year, equal to several generations of men, to reproduce it.

Mr. Allan Wilson, Mem. Inst. C. E., states * with reference to Southern India:—

“ In former times when the tanks (reservoirs) were in good repair, trees were largely planted, and, as is always the case, vegetation attracted the moisture, and the monsoon could always be depended upon. Now, since these works have fallen into decay, the vegetation has disappeared, and the monsoon has been precarious and insufficient.”

Every year we read in the press of destructive floods taking place in the old country, and these floods are almost all due to the destruction of the forests.

* On Irrigation in India in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. XXVII.—1867-68.

The Indian Government, some years since, recognized the importance of this matter, and organized a *Forest Department*, somewhat on the basis of the Public Works Department, and already the good results of this policy are admitted by all those in India who have given any attention to the subject.

The following extract on the *Objects of Forest Management** are pertinent here.

“Forest management has two objects in view:—

“1. To produce and reproduce certain useful material.

“2. To sustain or possibly improve certain advantageous natural conditions.

“In the first case we treat the forest as a crop, which we harvest from the soil, take care to devote the land to repeated production of crops. As agriculture is practiced for the purpose of producing food crops, so forestry is in the first place concerned in the production of wood crops, both attempting to create values from the soil.

“In the second case we add to the first conception of the forest as a crop, another, namely, that of a cover to the soil, which, under certain conditions, and in certain locations, bears a very important relation to other conditions of life.

“The favorable influence which the forest growth exerts in preventing the washing of the soil and in retarding the torrential flow of water, and also in checking the winds and thereby reducing rapid evaporation, further in facilitating subterranean drainage and influencing climatic conditions, on account of which it is desirable to preserve certain parts of the natural forest growth and extend it elsewhere; this favorable influence is due to the dense cover of foliage mainly, and to the mechan-

* What is Forestry, by B. E. Fernow, Chief of the Division of Forestry, U. S. Department of Agriculture.

ical obstruction which the trunks and the litter of the forest floor offer.

“Any kind of tree growth would answer this purpose, and all the forest management necessary would be to simply abstain from interference and leave the ground to nature’s kindly action.

“This was about the idea of the first advocates of forest protection in this country; keep out fire, keep out cattle, keep out the ax of man, and nothing more is needed to keep our mountains under forest cover forever.

“But would it be rational and would it be necessary to withdraw a large territory from human use in order to secure this beneficial influence? It would be, indeed, in many localities, if the advantages of keeping it under forest could not be secured simultaneously with the employment of the soil for useful production, but rational forest management secures both the advantages of favorable forest conditions and the reproduction of useful material. Not only is the rational cutting of the forest not antagonistic to favorable forest conditions, but in skillful hands the latter can be improved by the judicious use of the ax.

“In fact the demands of forest preservation on the mountains and the methods of forest management for profit in such localities are more or less harmonious; thus the absolute clearing of the forest on steep hillsides, which is apt to lead to dessication and washing of the soil, is equally detrimental to a profitable forest management, necessitating, as it does, replanting under difficulties.

“Forest preservation, then, does not, as seems to be imagined by many, exclude proper forest utilization, but, on the contrary, these may well go hand in hand, preserving forest conditions while securing valuable material; the first requirement only modifies the manner, in which the second is satisfied.”

Article 61. Rainfall.

In considering the growth of any crop, the annual rainfall should not so much be taken into account as the particular portion of the rainfall that fell during the irrigating season, and its distribution during that time. In the majority of irrigation countries it was not the deficiency of rainfall throughout the year, but the fact that the rain fell at unsuitable times, that rendered irrigation essential. In some famine years in India, the aggregate of the rainfall throughout the year was more than ample to mature the crops, but it was almost useless for purposes of cultivation, as it fell at the wrong time.

The Honorable Alfred Deakin, M. P., of Victoria, states * :—

“The arid area of the United States, by the terms of Major Powell’s definition, includes only lands where the rainfall is under 20 inches per annum. Over the great belt in which irrigation has so far had its chief development, the record for a series of years gives but little more than half that quantity, so that 10 to 12 inches may be taken as a fair average, though the extremes show a much wider variation. In Northern California, and among the mountains to the east, the rainfall rises to 40 inches, while in the deserts of Southern California it falls to four inches.

“In Western Kansas the fall, not infrequently, reaches 20 inches; but there, as with us, this is so irregular that the farmer who relies solely upon a natural supply loses more by the dry seasons than he can make in those which are more propitious. The question as to whether settlement increases the rainfall in the West, as it has increased it in the Mississippi Valley, is still undetermined; for, though popular

* Irrigation in Western America, Egypt and Italy.

opinion is decidedly in the affirmative, the State Engineer of Colorado points out that official records so far do not support the assertion. The exceptions to this are that Salt Lake, Utah, appears to be steadily gaining in depth, and that dew is now observed at Greeley, in Northern Colorado, a phenomenon quite unknown until irrigation had been practiced for some years. Nor does the mere amount of rainfall indicate sufficiently the necessity for an artificial supply of water, unless also the seasons in which it falls are taken into account. In parts of Dakota and Minnesota, where the rainfall only averages about 20 inches, dry farming is carried on; while in districts of Texas, where the figures are as high, it would be impossible to obtain the same results without irrigation. The explanation is that in Dakota nearly seventy-five per cent. of the rain falls in the season when the farmer needs it, as against about fifty per cent. in Texas. Indeed, a gradation may be observed in this scale from north to south, since in Kansas some sixty-five per cent. of the rain falls in the spring and summer, while in the extreme south, as at San Diego, only half of the whole rainfall, nine inches, falls in the spring, and is consequently useless for agriculture. There is some irrigation in Dakota, as also in Iowa and Wyoming, but not nearly so much as in the States to the southward, where, even if the rainfall were as high, its distribution would render it insufficient. A glance at the rainfall statistics of Victoria will show that, roughly speaking, one-half of it might be included in the arid area, or in that portion of the sub-humid area in which irrigation is little less essential.

“The valleys of the north and the great plains of the northwest, as well as the belt of level country immediately to the north and west of Port Phillip and the eastern coast of Gippsland, all feel the need of a regular



2 to 1, but, it is generally found, that after being in use for some time, and exposed to the action of the water, they become steeper than they were originally constructed. The information about some of these canals differs considerably. For instance, the discharge of the Upper Ganges Canal, and the Lower Ganges Canal, has been stated by some authorities to be 5,100 cubic feet per second and by others as high as 7,000 cubic feet per second. The best available information has, however, been taken with reference to the canals included in the list.

TABLE 6. Giving a list of Irrigation Canals.

NAME OF CANAL.	COUNTRY.	Length in miles	Bottom width in feet	Depth in feet.....	Slope	Discharge in cubic feet per second....
Upper Ganges.....	India	456	170	10	1 in 4224	6000
Lower Ganges.....	"	531	216	8	1 in 10560	6500
Western Jumna.....	"	433				2372
Eastern Jumna.....	"	130				1068
Baree Doab	"	466	120	5.5		2500
Sutlej or Sirhind.....	"	503	190	6	1 in 4800	3500
Agra	"	137	70	10	1 in 10560	1100
Sone, Western.....	"	125	180	9	1 in 10560	4500
Sone, Eastern	"	170	180	9	1 in 10560	4500
Soonkasela.....	"	190	90	8	1 in 3520	3000
Ibrahimia	Egypt.....	170	113	Lois6½	1 in 16600	
Main Delta (Flood)...	"		174	20	1 in 15000	10846
Main Delta (Summer)...	"		174	10	1 in 12000	3943
Sirsawiah (Flood).....	"		20	17	1 in 20633	1138
Nagar	"		20	10	1 in 14000	906
Sahel	"		20	12	1 in 25641	981
Subk	"		13	6	1 in 20000	114
Grand Canal of Ticino	Italy	31			1 in 1860	1851
Cavour	"	53	131	11	1 in 2000	3250
Ivrea	"	92	27.7			700
Cigliano.....	"	102	53			1760
Rotto.....	"	84				600
Muzza	"					2175
Martesana.....	"					738
Henares.....	Spain.....	28	8.23	4.9	1 in 3067	177
Isabella II.....	"	50				89
The Royal Jucar.....	"	25				911

rainfall. Still, there is little of what would be called in America, desert land. The irrigated districts of Southern California are hotter and drier than any portion of our colony, resembling, indeed, the climate of Algiers, rather than that of Southern Europe. There it is always grassless and almost rainless in many seasons, while in the country beyond Swan Hill, though the rainfall drops to ten inches and even less, there are still numerous seasons in which a fair crop of grass can be obtained.

In Victoria, the difficulty for the most part is, that the supply is sometimes insufficient, often irregular, or distributed so as to leave the crops unsupplied at a particular period. The critical season is generally that in which the crop is ripening, toward the end of spring and beginning of summer. A glance at our rainfall statistics for the last four years gives Horsham an average fall of about sixteen inches, and Kerong of about ten inches, of which at the first rather more, and at the second rather less, than twenty-five per cent. falls in the three months, September, October and November. If an emergency watering could always be obtained during this period, our northern farmers would be sure of a harvest, while, as it is, they run the risk of a complete failure every two or three years. So far as rainfall is concerned, then, Victoria appears to be in as good a position as any of the irrigated States except Western Kansas. Enough rain can be calculated upon to materially decrease the quantity of water required to be artificially supplied, and, in exceptional years, to render irrigation unessential. Though there have been, at long intervals, years in which this state of things has been reached in South-western America, yet they are so few as to but little affect the average. To make the comparison perfect, the fall in the various seasons in

Victoria would need to be tabulated for a number of years. The soil of its several districts would also have to be carefully analyzed, for it is to be remembered that one lesson of American experience is that soils which to the 'dry farmer' gave but faint promise of any productiveness, have proved extremely fertile when exposed to frequent saturation and continuous cultivation. The quantity of water needed is also affected by temperature, for the higher it reaches the more water is demanded. The loss by evaporation has not yet been determined for the several States, but, it is stated, that in very arid tracts, it rises to over sixty inches per annum.

As favored in rainfall as America, Victoria is less favored than India, Italy or France, where the precipitation is often twice as great. The fact that irrigation is resorted to under such conditions should be borne in mind, when we consider the wisdom of securing an artificial supply in places where the yearly fall is often sufficient."

The Statistical Review of the Irrigation Works of India for 1887-88, has the following on rainfall:—

"It has not infrequently been assumed that the probabilities of the success of a new irrigation project can be gauged by a consideration of the incidence of the rainfall on the tract commended. The rainfall is, no doubt, one of the chief factors to be considered, but the statistics of rainfall* show conclusively that there must be other factors of at least equal, if not greater, weight, which must be taken into account in determining the success or failure of an irrigation system. For example, the rainfall in Bombay is generally scanty, while at Madras it is copious, but in the former case the irrigation works are entirely unremunerative, whereas in Madras they are, with one exception, most lucrative.

* Not given in this work.

“Even a more striking instance can be found in Madras itself. The Cauvery Canals, which irrigate a larger area and pay a far higher percentage on capital than any other system in India, lie in a district where the average rainfall is 53.9 inches in the year; whilst the Kurnool Canal, which is the most conspicuous failure of all irrigation works in India, lies within 300 miles of the Cauvery, in the same Province, in a tract where the average rainfall is 28.9 inches, or only slightly more than half that which falls on the Cauvery Canals. The causes which produce these striking differences are but little understood, and the available statistics afford no clue to them. It may, however, be said that in Madras the temperature is generally so equable that it is possible to grow two, and even three, crops of rice on the same field during the year; this is not possible in the more variable climate of Bengal, where the total rainfall is not greatly different from that of Madras. It may be that this climatic difference explains the great discrepancy in the results obtained in the two Provinces. It should also be noted that the actual amount of the rainfall is of less importance than its distribution. Differences in soil and in methods of cultivation have also great weight in determining the success of an irrigation project. * * * * What- ever the causes may be which should determine the results obtained, it must be admitted that much ignorance has prevailed concerning them, and this has led to the construction of many works which have signally failed to produce the results which were anticipated by their projectors.”

The following extract is taken from *Engineering News* of May 11, 1889:—

“There is no part of California where the people are more in earnest about irrigation than in Colusa County,

California (see page 175), where they have an annual rainfall of 30 inches. There are two classes of lands requiring irrigation here—one, lands which will yield crops without irrigation, but which will double their yield under the influence of a regular supply of water—say a cubic foot per second to 150 acres—during the growing season; the other, desert lands, which will yield nothing at all without an artificial supply of water, either from a system of irrigation works or artesian wells.”

The following table is from a paper by Mr. P. O'Meara, M. Inst. C. E., in the Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Vol. LXXIII:—

TABLE 19. Statistics

CROP.	COUNTRY OR LOCALITY.	Avail- able rain- fall.	Irrig- ation.	Total.	Number of Arith- ical Irri- gations.
		Inches.	Inches.	Inches	
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Lower Bengal, Patna.....	2.21	9	11.21	2 to 4
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Southern India, Madras.....	7.33	9	16.33	2 to 1
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Punjab, Lahore.....	4.29	None	4.29	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	North Italy, Piedmont.....	17.50	None	17.50	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Bouches-du-Rhône.....	6.30	5	11.30	1 to 3
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Hungary, Debreczin.....	14.26	None	14.26	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Spain, Alcalá.....	6.	None	6.	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Yorkshire, Ferry Bridge.....	12.73	None	12.73	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Ireland, Dublin.....	13.04	None	13.04	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Minnesota.....	10.35	None	10.35	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Missouri, Upper.....	11.23	None	11.23	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Missouri, Lower.....	13.	None	13.	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Mississippi, Upper.....	11.25	None	11.25	None
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	Colorado, Poudre Valley.....	5.67	43	48.67	3
Cereals, wheat, oats, etc.....	{ Colorado, Fort Collins } { Agricultural College. }	4.50	None	4.50	None
Rice, A crop.....	Lower Bengal, Patna.....	25.33	26	51.33	.....
Rice, B crop.....	Lower Bengal, Patna.....	30.44	40	70.44	.....
Rice, A crop.....	Southern India, Madras.....	10.31	26	36.31	.....
Rice, B crop.....	Southern India, Madras.....	38.06	40	78.06	.....
Rice.....	Spain, Valencia.....	7.29	139	146.29	.....
Rice, upland.....	North Italy, Piedmont.....	25.19	62	87.19	.....
Rice.....	Japan, Yeddo.....	51.	None	51.	None
Sugar Cane.....	Lower Bengal, Patna.....	45.83	60	105.83	.....
Sugar Cane.....	Southern India, Madras.....	48.56	60	108.56	.....
Sugar Cane.....	Sub Himalayas, Ranikhet..	48.56	None	48.56	None
Sugar Cane.....	Jamaica.....	40.80	None	40.80	None
Sugar Cane.....	Natal, Ottawa Estate.....	38.78	None	38.78	None
Sugar Cane.....	Mauritius.....	47 to 90	None	47 to 90	.....
Potatoes.....	Colorado, Poudre Valley..	6.	6	12.	2
Potatoes.....	Ireland, Dublin.....	16.	None	16.	None
Summer Meadows.....	Colorado, Poudre Valley..	6.	43	49.	.....
Summer Meadows.....	South of France.....	9.	60	69.	.....
Summer Meadows.....	Italy.....	22.	42	64.	18
Summer Meadows.....	Ireland, Dublin.....	8.22	None	8.22	None
Lucerne, or Alfalfa.....	Bouches-du-Rhône.....	9.	37.5	46.50	.....
Lucerne, or Alfalfa.....	Colorado.....	6.	5.	11.	.....
Indian Corn.....	North Italy.....	22.	23.58	45.58	6
Indian Corn.....	Hungary, Debreczin.....	12.79	.....	12.79	.....
Indian Corn.....	Natal, Coast Districts.....	24.59	.....	24.59	.....
Cotton.....	Central India, Sutna.....	43.	.....	43.	.....
Joár, or Joseph's Corn.....	Colorado, Greeley.....	6.	None	6.	None
Joár, or Joseph's Corn.....	Central India.....	33.48	None	33.48	None
Vines.....	California, San Bernardino..	2.	3 to 12	5 to 15	2 to 4
Orange Trees.....	California, Riverside.....	10.05	10.	20.05	.....
Orange Trees.....	California, Riverside.....	10.05	.5	10.55	.....
Orange Trees.....	Natal, Durban.....	49.74	None	49.74	None

of Irrigation.

IRRIGATION SEASON.	Mean Humid- ity.	Mean Temper- ature.	AUTHORITY.	REMARKS.
Nov. to Apr., inc.....	Satn. 100.	°		
Dec. to Apr., inc.....	60.2	70.6	Allan Wilson.....	Blandford's rainfall tables.
Oct. to Mar., inc.....	65.6	79.7	Allan Wilson.....	Blandford's rainfall tables.
Apr. to July, inc.....	51.	63.	Col. Baird Smith.....	Blandford's rainfall tables.
Mar. to July, inc.....			George Wilson.....	
Mar. to July, inc.....			George Higgin.....	Chiolich's rainfall tables.
Feb. to July, inc.....		50.		
Feb. to July, inc.....				Beardmore's rainfall tables.
May to July, inc.....				Beardmore's rainfall tables.
May to July, inc.....				Signal Officers' rainf'll returns
May to July, inc.....				Signal Officers' rainf'll returns
May to July, inc.....				Signal Officers' rainf'll returns
May to July, inc.....			The Author.....	Signal Officers' rainf'll returns
May to July, inc.....			Prof. Blount.....	
June to Aug., inc.....	73.	86.	Allan Wilson.....	
Aug. to Dec., inc.....	57.	76.1	W. W. Hunter.....	
June to Aug., inc.....	60.	86.	Allan Wilson.....	
Aug. to Dec., inc.....	63.	81.	W. W. Hunter.....	
Mar. to Sept., inc.....		72.3	George Higgin.....	139 refers to dotation, not to [use.
Mar. to Aug., inc.....			Col. Baird Smith.....	
Mar. to Aug., inc.....			Con.Gen. Van Buren.....	Total annual rainfall given.
Jan. to Dec., inc.....	59.	77.8	Allan Wilson.....	
Jan. to Dec., inc.....	65.	82.3	Allan Wilson.....	
Jan. to Dec., inc.....		60.3	Col. Greathead.....	
Jan. to Dec., inc.....			{ Mem. of Geological } { Survey. } { "Natal Colonist," } { Oct., 1879. }	Manual of Geology.
Jan. to Dec., inc.....			The Author.....	
Apr. to Aug., inc.....			The Author.....	
Feb. to Aug., inc.....			The Author.....	Beardmore's tables.
Apr. to Aug., inc.....			The Author.....	{ One cutting, flooding without } compartments.
			George Wilson.....	
			Col. Baird Smith.....	
Mar. to June, inc.....			George Wilson.....	Beardmore's tables.
			"Colorado Farmer".....	Six cuttings.
			Col. Baird Smith.....	{ Four cuttings in third and } subsequent years.
Apr. to July, inc.....				Chiolich.
Apr. to July, inc.....				{ Rainfall Returns of Durban } Botanical Gardens.
Sept. to Dec., inc.....			The Author.....	In black cotton soil.
June to Sept., inc.....	65.	84.9	Col. Greathead.....	
May to Aug., inc.....			"Colorado Farmer".....	
June to Aug., inc.....	63.	85.1	George Higgin.....	{ W. W. Hunter, "Imperial } Gazetter," vol. iv, p. 48).
{ March to May, and } { one irrigation in Oct }			Report.....	{ Ordinary flooding system. } Total annual rainfall.
Mar. to Sept., inc.....			Report.....	{ Asbestine sub-irrigation sys- } tem.
Mar. to Sept., inc.....				Total annual rainfall.

Article 62. Evaporation.

In countries where irrigation is conducted on an extensive scale, the evaporation, that is, the depth of water evaporated annually, does not materially differ. The records of experiments given below in America, Italy, France, Spain, India and Egypt, prove this.

The records of evaporation published by the State Engineering Department of California, show that the mean annual evaporation at Kingsburg bridge, Tulare County, California, for the four years from 1881 to 1885 was 3.85 feet in depth, when the pan was in the river, which is equal to an average depth of one-eighth of an inch per day for a whole year.

For the same period the evaporation, when the pan was in air, was 4.96 feet in depth, that is, equal to a mean daily depth of evaporation throughout the year, of less than three-sixteenths of an inch per day.

The greatest evaporation was in the month of August, when it was more than one-sixth of the evaporation for the whole year. The average for this month is one-third of an inch per day.

During the months when the largest quantity of water is used for irrigation in this district, the table shows that the mean evaporation was:—

For March one-twelfth of an inch per day.

For April one-twelfth of an inch per day.

For May one-fifth of an inch per day.

Mr. Walter H. Graves, C. E., states:—*

“Evaporation is very nearly a constant quantity.

* * * * *

Observation and experiment by the writer in various parts of Colorado tend to show that evaporation ranges

* Irrigation and Agricultural Engineering in Transactions of the Denver Society of Engineers—1886.

from .088 to .16 of an inch per day, during the irrigating season."

To some people these depths of evaporation may appear very small. Let us, therefore, examine the result of observations in other countries:—

Colonel Baird Smith, in his work on Italian Irrigation states that, in the north of Italy and center of France, the daily evaporation varies from one-twelfth to one-ninth of an inch per day; while in the south and under the influence of hot winds it increases to between one-sixth and one-fifth of an inch per day.

In 1867 the total evaporation in Madrid, Spain,* was sixty-five inches in depth. In July of the same year according to the returns of the Royal Observatory, it was $13\frac{1}{2}$ inches in depth or less than half an inch per day, and in May of the same year it was only one-quarter of an inch per day. July was the hottest month in 1867, and it was estimated that during this month the total evaporation of the Henares Canal, carrying 105 cubic feet per second, or 5,250 miner's inches, under a four inch head, amounted to only three-fourths of one per cent. of the total flow.

W. W. Culcheth, C. E.,† states as the result of his investigation on the Ganges Canal in Northern India, that for evaporation, one-quarter of an inch per day over the wetted surface may be taken as the average loss from a canal.

Dr. Murray Thompson's‡ experiments in the hot season in Northern India, with a decidedly hot wind blowing, gave an average result of half an inch in depth evaporated in twenty-four hours.

* Irrigation in Spain, by George Higgin, M. Inst. C. E., in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Volume XXVII.—1867-68.

† Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Volume LXXIX.

‡ Professional Papers on Indian Engineering. Vol. V. Second Series.

In Hyderabad in the Deccan, in India, it was found that the mean evaporation from a tank or reservoir was 0.165 inch per day.

In Nagpur, in India,* the total depth evaporated from October, 1872, to June, 1873, was four feet, which, distributed over the period of the experiment, 242 days, gives an average depth of .0165 feet, or 0.198 inch, being about one-fifth of an inch per day.

Colonel Fyfe, R. E.,† states that in large reservoirs in India, about two square miles in area, the amount of evaporation, that he made allowance for was about three feet in depth per annum in the Deccan, and something less in the Concan district in India.

Major Allan Cunningham, R. E.,‡ conducted experiments, lasting twenty-five months, from 1876-79, to measure the evaporation from the Ganges Canal. He states that, the most remarkable feature of the results is their extreme smallness, amounting to only about one-tenth of an inch per day on the average near Roorkee; whereas one-half inch per day is said to be a common rate in India for evaporation on land. This led at first to the suspicion of the introduction of water from without; but after considering the possible sources of this, namely, leakage, spray, rain, dew, wilful tampering, it still seems that the results may be accepted as substantially correct. The real cause of the small evaporation appears to be the unusual coldness of the canal water, for instance, on May 22, 1877, at 2:30 P. M., the temperature of the air was 165° in the sun, and 105° in the shade, whilst that of the water was only 66° inside the

* The Nagpur Waterworks, by A. R. Binnie, M. Inst. C. E., in Transactions Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. XXXIX.

† Transactions Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. XXXIX.—1874-75.

‡ Recent Hydraulic Experiments in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. LXXI.—1883.

pan and 65° in the canal; also the highest recorded temperature of the canal water was only $75\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$. The canal, in fact, takes its supply from the Ganges, a snow-fed river, at its exit from the hills.

It was, indeed, found that the canal evaporation increased with distance from the head of the canal at Hurdwar on the Ganges. Thus, out of the forty results, twenty-eight were taken near Roorkee, and twelve near Kamhera, at distances of eighteen and fifty-two and one-half miles from the head-works; the evaporation at the latter was much the larger, comparing, of course, similar seasons, being about 0.15 inch against 0.10 inch on an average. This is, no doubt, due to the gradual heating of the water under the hot sun, with increased distance from the head.

Taking the Roorkee estimate of one-tenth of an inch per day, the total evaporation from the whole surface of the canal and its branches, about 487,000,000 square feet, amounts to about forty-seven cubic feet per second, which is about $\frac{1}{150}$ part of the full supply of the canal, or in other words, ten minutes full supply daily.

Little connection could be traced between the evaporation and the meteorological elements; the temperature of the water, which depends chiefly on the amount of snow water in the Ganges, being probably the governing element.

M. Lemaïresse's* observations at Pondicherry, in French India, give a daily evaporation of from three-tenths to half an inch in depth per day.

Trautwine made observations in the Tropics and he found the evaporation from ponds of pure water to be at the rate of one-eighth of an inch per day, but he

* The Irrigation of French India in Professional Papers on Indian Engineering, Volume I. Second Series.

TABLE 6.—Continued.

NAME OF CANAL.	COUNTRY.	Length in miles....	Bottom width in feet	Depth in feet.....	Slope	Discharge in cubic feet per second....
Marseilles.....	France	52	9.84	7.87	1 in 3333	424
Ourcq.....	"		11.48	4.92	1 in 9470	
Crappone.....	"	33	26	6.5		500
Verdon.....	"	51			1 in 5000	212
Alpines.....	"					480
St. Julien.....	"	18			1 in 3333	165
Carpentaras.....	"		33		1 in 4000	212
Del Norte.....	Colorado, U.S.A.	50	65	5.5	1 in 660	2400
Citizens.....	"	45	40	5.5	1 in 1760	1000
Uncompahgre.....	"	32	24		1 in 1560	725
Fort Morgan.....	"	28	30	3.5	1 in 3300	340
Larimer.....	"	45	30	7.5		720
North Poudre.....	"	30	20	4.0	1 in 2640	450
Empire.....	"	32	60	5.5		1400
Grand River.....	"		35	5.0	1 in 2880	
High Line.....	"	70	40	7	1 in 3000	1184
Central District.....	California	60	60	6	1 in 10000	720
Merced.....	"	8	70	10	1 in 5280	3400
San Joaquin and King's River.....	"	39	55	4	1 in 5280	
Seventy-Six.....	"		100	4	1 in 3520	
Calloway.....	"	32	80	3.5	1 in 6600	700
Turlock.....	"	80	20	10	1 in 666	1500
Idaho Mining and Irrigation Co.'s.....	Idaho.....	75	45	10	1 in 2640	2585
Idaho Canal Co.'s.....	"	43	40	4	1 in 3520	
Eagle Rock and Willow Creek.....	"	50	30	3	1 in 880	
Phyllis.....	"	54	12	5	1 in 2640	250
Arizona.....	Arizona.....	41	36	7.5	1 in 2640	1000

observes that the air in that region is highly charged with moisture.

Mr. Willcocks, C. E., in his work on *Egyptian Irrigation*, states that Linant Pasha considered the evaporation in Upper Egypt, as about equal to one-third of an inch per day throughout the year. As a result of his own observations, Mr. Willcocks gives the evaporation for one year in Upper Egypt, as equal to six feet in depth, and in Lower Egypt, as equal to 2.4 feet in depth.

The following table given by General Scott Moncrieff, R. E., shows the general conditions of temperature and rainfall, as measured at Orange, eighteen miles north of Avignon, and at Marseilles in France, for periods of thirty and twenty years respectively:—

TABLE 20. Giving temperature and rainfall in the South of France.

	MEAN TEMPERATURE.			Greatest heat in degrees. F.	Greatest cold in degrees. F.	Annual rainfall in inches.	No. of wet days in the year.
	Summer.	Winter.	Whole y'r.				
Orange . . .	71	41	56	104	5	26.6	96
Marseilles.	70	45	59	87	22	12.8	59

This table shows, in a striking way, the modifying influence which the sea has over climate, the extreme range at Marseilles being only 65°, while at Orange, ninety-three miles distant, it is 99°. The annual rainfall, scanty as it is, does not fully denote the extent to which this part of France suffers from drought, for at Avignon it often happens that there is not a shower of rain during the three hottest months of June, July and August. The evaporation in the plains of Languedoc, not far distant, has been estimated at .079 inch per diem, and it is probably about the same in Provence.

Article 63. Percolation.

Taking a broad view of percolation in channels and reservoirs, through their beds and banks, it denotes infiltration, seepage, absorption and even leakage. If the leakage is of a large quantity through a bank of earth, that bank is not likely to last long.

“In every new canal, through sandy loam, the loss by percolation at first is very serious. Gradually the ground gets saturated, and at the same time the interstices of the porous material of the bed and banks get filled up with particles of clay, which diminish the percolation. The bed of a canal acts as an *elongated filter*. It is well known that the sand of a water works filter bed, if not periodically washed, or if not replaced with clean sand, the interstices between the particles of sand get filled with silt, and the filter ceases to act, or acts so slowly as to be practically useless. The same thing takes place in a canal, but at a slower rate than in a filter bed. There is less deposit in an irrigation canal, in the same time, than in a filter bed, as the greater part of the finer particles of silt do not deposit in it, but are carried in suspension until the water reaches the land to be irrigated.”*

Mr. Walter H. Graves, C. E., in a paper read before the Society of Engineers in Denver, Colorado, in 1866, states:—

“The factor of seepage is a variable one, depending mostly upon the nature of the soil, and gradually grows less through a long term of years. Evaporation is very nearly a constant quantity, depending on the altitude of the locality and the prevailing meteorological conditions. In calculating for the loss from these sources, evapora-

*Report on the proposed Works of the Tulare Irrigation District, California, by P. J. Flynn, C. E.

tion and seepage, in the older canals about twelve per cent. should be deducted from the carrying capacity."

Mr. P. O'Meara, in a paper in the Minutes of Proceedings of Inst. C. E. for 1883, states:—

"From a short time after irrigation is established in any district, the quantity of water required will gradually become less, till an equilibrium is established between the amount of water supplied in the irrigating season, and the quantity removed by filtration and evaporation. * * * * *

"It is a question whether, supposing irrigation were carried out to its full extent in Colorado, there would be any loss of irrigating power other than that due to evaporation. Losses occurring through absorption and surface flow are not final. The waters absorbed or wasted reappear, probably with undiminished volume, lower down in the streams."

Mr. Boyd, President of the State Board of Agriculture of Colorado, in a communication to the Institution of Civil Engineers in 1883, states:—

"In a volume of six cubic feet per second of water flowing in a lateral two miles in length, not less than one-tenth would be lost by soaking and evaporation."

Mr. E. B. Dorsey, C. E., in a paper in the Transactions of the Am. Soc. C. E., Volume 16, 1887, states:—

"That in some of the Colorado canals the loss from evaporation and seepage is estimated at fifty per cent., which is excessive, and shows that the canal is constructed in bad soil, or that there must be something the matter with the construction. Twenty per cent. ought to be, under ordinary circumstances, a liberal loss from these causes, and this should largely diminish as the banks and bottom of the canal become compact."

Mr. George G. Anderson, C. E.,* made measurements

* Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers. Volume XVI, 1887.

on the High Line Canal, in Colorado, in the middle of July, 1886, and found that where 156 cubic feet per second were passing into the head-gates only 80 cubic feet per second were passing a point 45 miles from the head-gates, and no water was used for any purpose in the intermediate distance. This was during the very hottest and driest period of an unusually hot and dry summer in Colorado. The soil through which this canal passes is in many places very pervious. There are long stretches of fine sand, and in places the canal bottom is in rock badly fissured. The alignment of the canal is very crooked, and, no doubt, a great loss is experienced from this source. It is to be expected that this serious loss will gradually diminish as the canal bed and sides become compact and puddle naturally. But to estimate a smaller loss from these causes than twenty-five per cent. would scarcely be wise."

In a paper by Mr. C. Greaves,* he showed that the percolation through ordinary soil, as compared with sand, was only about one-third, whereas the evaporation from a surface of ordinary soil was four times that from a surface of sand.

Mr. G. F. Ritso, C. E., in his description of the irrigation of the Canterbury Plains, New Zealand, states:—†

"Of the canals in alluvial soil that the percolation is small, as the constant tendency of channels is to silt up and to become more water-tight."

The Martesana Canal, in Italy, of a capacity of 981 cubic feet per second and twenty-eight miles in length, was estimated to have lost from evaporation, seepage, and illegal abstraction, 3.75 cubic feet per second per mile of canal. We have here, however, an additional source of loss, that by illegal abstraction.

* Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. XLV, 1876.

† Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. LXXIV, 1883.

Engineers in Lombardy calculate the absorption in each watering, of about four inches in depth, as ranging from one-third to one-half of the total quantity of water employed. This is when the general period of rotation is about fourteen days. From observation, it has been concluded that the balance of the water reaches channels at a lower level, and is again available for the irrigation of lower lands.

On the Marseilles Canal, in France, the losses by percolation, evaporation, and at the settling or silt basins, was estimated at 58 cubic feet per second, or sixteen per cent. of the full supply of 353 cubic feet per second.

Ribera estimated the total loss from evaporation and percolation on the Isabella Canal, in Spain, a masonry-lined channel, at two per cent.

Nadault de Buffon gives the average percentage of loss on canals from evaporation and percolation at 15 per cent. of the total volume carried. He does not, however, mention under what circumstances such a percentage may be expected.

In a project for a canal from the Rhone, in France, of over 2,000 cubic feet per second, it was calculated that one-sixth would be lost by evaporation, percolation, etc.

In designing the Agra Canal, India, the loss by absorption and percolation was estimated at 0.23 cubic feet per 100 cubic feet per mile of canal.

After the completion of the Ashti Tank, in India, observations were made, and it was found that, out of a supply of 1,348,192,450 cubic feet, the loss from evaporation, percolation and seepage through the subsoil of the tank combined, amounted, in a year, to 233,220,240 cubic feet, or about 18 per cent. of the supply.

In the Irrigation Revenue Report of Bombay for 1889-90, it is stated, as the result of gaugings, that the

Ashti Tank lost during the year by evaporation, absorption, etc, 7.08 feet in depth of water over its mean area.

In the same Report the result of some experiments in the loss of water in small canals was given:—

“ On the Palkhed Canal, 14.87 miles in length, there was a loss by leakage and evaporation of 0.44 cubic feet per second per mile, or nearly forty-eight per cent. of the supply.

“ Before taking observations for leakage experiments all the irrigating outlets were closed; gaugings were made with ordinary floats and were read in each mile, which gave the average result of loss as forty-eight per cent. The only feasible way of reducing the leakage seems to be to keep the canals clear of silt and weeds. No other precautions seem practicable, unless in the way of managing all outlets better, escapes included.

“ On the Ojhar Támbat Canal (1.75 miles in length) there was a loss of 0.49 cubic foot per second, or nearly thirty per cent. of the supply.”

The percentage of loss on the above canals is very great, and it is seldom that the loss is so great in a channel carrying silt, and that has been in use for some years. .

When the Ganges Canal was flowing at least 6,000 cubic feet per second, during October, 1868, a year of drought, Colonel H. A. Brownlow, R. E., estimated the loss by absorption at twenty per cent. He states that the estimate of loss by absorption (twenty per cent.) may be considered somewhat low for a year of drought, but that the long continued high supply in the canal must, after some time, have checked, in a great measure, the drain upon itself by fully saturating the adjacent ground. In fact, the greater ease with which the gauges were kept up during October and November, as compared with August and September, was a matter of common remark at the time.

In the original design of the Ganges Canal its discharge, at full supply, was fixed at 6,750 cubic feet per second. Of this quantity, it was assumed that 1,000 cubic feet per second would be lost by evaporation, absorption and navigation, and that the remainder would be available for irrigation.

Mr. J. S. Beresford, C. E., states as the result of Indian experience, that old canals give higher duties of water than new canals, or, in other words, that there is less loss of water through the material forming the channel in old than in new canals.

Sir B. Baker, C. E., has stated:—*

“In a porous soil like that of Egypt, it was impossible to confine water simply by raising the bank, because it would find its way by percolation underneath, and it came up to the surface and washed the salt out and killed vegetation. He had ascertained that the water percolated at the rate of about one mile from the river in a week. That is to say, the water in a well one mile from the river would begin to rise about a week after the water in the river had begun to rise. It would be seen that that was an exceedingly important matter as affecting many questions of drainage in London. If the tide were not of twelve hours but a week's interval, the greater part of the low-lying districts in London would be much injured by the percolation of tidal water; but at present it did not follow up quickly enough to exert a destructive hydrostatic pressure upon the thin basement walls of houses near the river.”

* Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. LXXIII, 1883.

Article 64. Drainage.

As a rule, the drainage of irrigated land will take care of itself, if the natural drainage channels are left free and unobstructed. If it is found that, before irrigation is introduced into a district, the country is flooded and water-logged after rains, then it is likely to be in a worse condition after the land is irrigated, and drainage will be absolutely necessary for the success of the irrigation and the health of the district.

In many cases in this country, although irrigation dates back but a few years, the natural drainage outlets have been converted into irrigation channels, with the very worst results. In this way, while the supply to be drained off had been increased in quantity, the drainage channels have been diminished in carrying capacity.

If the subsoil and surface water cannot escape freely by the natural channels, super-saturation follows, and the ground becomes water-logged. Stagnant water is very injurious to crops, and it generates disease and pestilence. Many irrigation districts in this country show the evil effects of too much irrigation combined with defective drainage. One of the least evils is a dense and troublesome growth of weeds, and as a consequence waste land. The cultivator suffers in health and pocket.

To construct irrigation canals without efficient surface drainage, and, as has sometimes been the case, to obstruct the natural drainage of the country, by the improper location of canals, without making adequate provision for allowing the surface drainage to pass away, tend to the certain formation by artificial means, of those evils that exist in the neighborhood of natural swamps, and hence, the importance of paying every attention in the preparation of projects, and the construction of works,

with the view of avoiding those defects which, if permitted in the first instance, will certainly have to be remedied at some future time, at considerable cost, both direct and indirect. Whatever excuses may have been admissible in past years, when the science of constructing irrigation works was less understood than it is at the present day, no justification can now be pleaded for the repetition of similar errors.

On the reconstruction of the Western Jumna Canal in 1820, after a suspension of its usefulness for more than half a century, the original mistake of a bad location was repeated. Instead of being carried along the watershed lines it was taken through the drainage of the country, by interfering with which, serious consequences resulted in the creation of swamps and the occasional submergence of lands which might, by a proper location, have been brought under cultivation. But besides rendering lands uncultivable, and so curtailing the extent of area capable of growing for a poor and highly taxed people, the healthfulness of the neighborhood of these swamps became seriously impaired, and the population was found to be on the decrease in the vicinity. In some cases land became waterlogged, and therefore useless, for cultivation, whilst in others it became covered with a peculiar saline efflorescence, known as alkali in America, and *reh* in India. After investigating the above state of affairs, the Indian Government adopted measures to abate the evils of the defective irrigation.

Egypt is now suffering from the super-saturation of its land and want of proper drainage. Mr. W. Willcocks, Asso. Inst. C. E., states:—*

“The canals are so disproportionately large during flood, that they send down into the lower lands further

* Irrigation in Lower Egypt in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. LXXXVIII.—1886-87.

north such an excessive volume of water, that all the canals, escapes, and drainage cuts are full to overflowing with flood water, and are in consequence unable to perform their proper functions. The country during flood is divided into a number of islands surrounded by water at a high level. The natural consequence is that salt efflorescence is greatly on the increase in the lands under cultivation."

Again he states:—

"The conversion of all the drainage cuts into irrigation canals, was all that was needed to destroy the higher lands. This soon followed."

There are several districts in California where a few years since the great want was water, but where, at the present time, the pressing want is drainage. A small percentage of the quantity of water required a few years since to irrigate a certain area, is now sufficient to insure a crop, as the sub-soil is so saturated with water, that very little flooding is now required in comparison with the first few years after the introduction of irrigation.

The same thing has happened in Colorado. Mr. G. G. Anderson, C. E., states:—*

"In Colorado, as in most other irrigation countries, the necessity of carrying on drainage and irrigation simultaneously is being impressed upon practical men more and more every year. Although it is a rare occurrence when these works are successfully conducted together, it is regrettable to note the large and yearly increasing area of low-lying lands going to waste, and which are during the irrigating season stagnant swamps breeding disease. The frequency of typhoid fever and other epidemics in the fall of the year, is doubtless due

* The Construction, Maintenance and Operation of Large Irrigation Canals in Transactions of the Denver Society of Civil Engineers and Architects, Vol. I.

Article 11. The Surface Slope of Rivers.

TABLE 7. Giving the surface slopes of rivers through the plains.

Name of River.	S	Fall in inches per mile.	Name of River.	S	Fall in inches per mile.
Mississippi above Vicksburg, Miss. }	0.000050	3	Neva.....	0.000014	9
Bayou Plaquemine.	0.000170	11	Rhine, in Holland..	0.000150	9½
Bayou Latorische..	0.000040	2½	Seine, at Paris.....	0.000137	8½
Ohio, Pt. Pleasant.	0.000093	6	Seine, at Poissy....	0.000070	4½
Tiber, at Rome....	0.000130	8	Saone, at Raconnay.	0.000040	2½
Newka	0.000015	9½	Haine	0.000100	6½

Article 12. Safe Mean Velocities.

Having determined the quantity of water, and fixed the proportion of depth to width, and a minimum for both, and, if the canal is to be navigable, this minimum is to be fixed chiefly with reference to navigation facilities. After this there still remains a very important question to be determined before we can devise the section for our channel, that is, the *slope of the bed*, on which the velocity depends.

If this slope is too great, the bed of the canal will be torn up, and the foundations of all bridges, drops and other works, will be endangered. The canal bed will be cut down and retrogression of levels take place, until the velocity of the water has adjusted itself to the cohesion of the material through which it flows. Also, the level of the surface of the water in the canal will be lowered and, furthermore, the difficulties of navigation against the stream will be largely increased.

If, on the other hand, the slope is too small, a larger

to this cause, so that, from a sanitary point of view at least, drainage must be speedily undertaken."

To avoid this defective irrigation, some means should be adopted in irrigation districts, to prevent the use of the natural drainage channels, for any purpose whatever, but that of conveying away the drainage water that reaches them.

A good effect will be produced by restoring to their natural state such drainage outlets as have been converted into irrigation channels, and, if required, their carrying capacity can be increased by widening and deepening them and taking out the sharp bends. An annual clearance of debris, brush and weeds will have a good effect in keeping up their discharging capacity.

A great deal has been written, usually by mere theorists, on subsoil drainage in connection with irrigation.

In an able paper by Mr. H. Scougall, C. E.,* he states:—

"Now, to prevent the appearance of alkali on our lands, water must be used sparingly for irrigation purposes, and not a drop more than is actually necessary to promote the growth of our crops should be poured on the land."

This is quite right and to the point. Again he states:—

"No good system of irrigation should be without drainage; that is, drains some 18 or 36 inches below the surface which will carry off all surplus water."

Whilst it is a fact that no perfect system of irrigation should be without subsoil drainage, still it is a hard fact, that no country in the world requiring irrigation, can at the present moment pay for such a system as is indicated by Mr. Scougall and at the same time pay for an irrigation system. Doubtless, exceptionally small areas

* The Construction of Canals for Irrigation Purposes read before the Polytechnic Society of Utah, March, 1891.

can be pointed out, having the two systems in operation, but what we refer to is a combined system covering a large area such as is commanded by the Agra Canal in India, or the Calloway Canal in California.

To show the immense magnitude of such work if applied to the irrigation districts of India, the following extracts are taken from the Statistical Review of the Irrigation Works of India, 1887-88:—

At the end of the financial year, 1887-88, there were completed in India 5,520 miles of main canals and 17,155 miles of distributaries, and these works irrigated over 10,000,000 acres. This includes only the great works. The Minor works irrigated 2,000,000 acres more. There were, therefore, over 12,000,000 acres of land irrigated in 1887-88. The subsoil drainage of this area of land could not be carried out, to a successful completion, by any country in the world, that is, as a paying investment.

For large districts the subsoil drainage would cost much more than any irrigation system by open earthen channels. The cost at present prohibits the use of subsoil drainage on an extensive scale.

If all the drainage channels are improved to their outfall into some river, and new open drainage cuts made where required, then this will, as a rule, prevent surface flooding and super-saturation of the soil, and this is as much as can be done under the present financial condition of irrigated countries.

Article 65. Defective Irrigation—Alkali—The Effect of Irrigation on Health.

The chief objections urged against irrigation are the unhealthfulness that follows the super-saturation of the soil, and the injury to the land caused by alkali, known in india as "reh." These two evils can, in a great measure, be avoided by using only just sufficient water to mature the crop, but not enough to saturate the whole sub-soil.

The returns of the duty of water in America, go to prove that, as a rule, too much water is used. India, Egypt and America are suffering from alkali in the land, and the evil is on the increase.

Engineering News of February 26th, 1887, contains the following paragraph:—

"Professor Hilgard, of the State University of California, warns the people of the Pacific Coast that land irrigation may be overdone. He says that more attention must be paid to under-drainage, and sustains his arguments by existing conditions in the irrigated plains of Fresno, Tulare and Kern, where there was formerly no moisture within thirty or forty feet of the surface, while water now is found almost anywhere within three to five feet. The roots of trees and vines have been forced to the surface and the alkali accumulating through centuries is also brought upward. He recommends as a remedy, laws providing for proper location and construction of the ditches."

Where water is available frequent washing of the surface of alkali land will do much to reclaim it. The land should be flooded to a depth of a few inches, and left in this condition for a few days, then drawn off, and again flooded with fresh water, and this operation should be repeated until the surface of the land is cleared of alkali.

Opinions as to the effect of irrigation on health are somewhat conflicting, and for this reason we give below opinions from different sources on this subject.

Dr. H. S. Orme, Member of the State Board of Health of California, states, with reference to the influence of Irrigation on Health *:—

“The effect of the irrigation of the agricultural lands, particularly in California, upon public health is one of growing importance, and inasmuch as the available evidence bearing upon the subject is somewhat contradictory, it is necessary to note the conditions of locality, with respect to soil, temperature, humidity and drainage, wherever irrigation is practiced.

“Although irrigation has been carried on in California since the first establishment of the early missions by the Franciscan Fathers, more than a century ago, very little progress has been made in the scientific application of the system, the object of the cultivator being apparently only to get the water upon his land, without regard to the method employed.

The application of the water used in irrigation varies greatly in manner, but may be described as two different methods, viz: first, by flooding the whole surface of the land from open ditches (*Zanjas*); and second, by sub-irrigation, that is a conveyance of the water through pipes beneath the surface of the ground, which have openings at intervals, protected by upright pipes.

So far as the effect on health is concerned the latter method will not be considered, because of the very limited extent to which sub-irrigation is being applied.

In the case of the application of water by *flooding* the land from open ditches, the various reports made by impartial authorities, are, in some respects, conflicting.

* Appendix to the Eighth Biennial Report of the State Board of Health, California.

For instance, in Los Angeles, Ventura, Santa Barbara, San Bernardino and San Diego counties, where irrigation has been carried on for over a hundred years, the testimony is strong to the point that, there is no striking difference in the amount of malarial diseases, whether irrigation is practised or not. On the other hand, if we consult the records of some other portions of California, we find an increase of malarial fevers with the increase of irrigation, too intimately connected to be overlooked. The reasons for this are not difficult to discover. In Los Angeles and other valleys in extreme Southern California, where the soil is, as a rule, sandy or gravelly loam of unknown depth, the water in irrigation either sinks into the ground, or, if there is much surface slope, immediately drains at, or near, to the surface. In such sections of country there is great freedom from malarial diseases. Along the bottom lands of rivers where the slope is insufficient to insure good drainage, or where the soil is constantly saturated, the case is different. Here there is more or less intermittent and remittent fever during the warmer season of the year. In the case of swamp or overflowed lands, especially those having a heavy adobe soil, as well as those which remain wet and boggy from the winter rains, and are in summer kept in a saturated condition by artificial means, containing also an excess of decomposing vegetable matter and many stagnant pools, malarial diseases of the most pronounced type are very prevalent. In such localities all zymotic diseases are much worse in summer than in winter, a consequence which naturally results from the high temperature and increased evaporation. The fact that the people, living in these low, wet adobe sections of country, are dependent upon impure or surface water for drinking and domestic purposes, greatly aggravates the difficulty. In-

deed, it has been more than once demonstrated that people living in a "fever and ague" country are tolerably exempt from the fever if they drink only pure water.

In referring to defective irrigation in India, the *Engineer*, London, of June 23, 1871, has the following:—

"It is notorious that wherever irrigation is carried on, cruel malarious diseases as surely follow, and unless Dr. Cutcliffe's report, in 1869, 'On the Sanitary Condition of the lands watered by the Ganges and Jumna Canals' very greatly errs, it is very questionable whether the aggregate increased mortality in a number of years, due to irrigation, does not even exceed what that of a periodic famine would be.

"There are very extensive portions of the irrigated districts where subsoil drainage would not only be practicable but easy, and would entirely remedy many of the existing evils distinctly traceable to over irrigation.

"Nothing beyond an extension of surface drainage appears even yet to be contemplated; but until such works are regarded as merely the basis of subsoil drainage to follow, we can look for little real improvement in the system of agriculture in India."

India is not able to pay now, and it is not likely that she will ever be able to pay, for a system of subsoil drainage. (See Article 64.)

On the subject of defective irrigation, we have more recent information, which is herewith given in the testimony of Dr. W. W. Hunter, who has had long experience in India:—*

"Even irrigation itself occasionally displaced a population, and, in several parts of India, created a safeguard against dearth only at the cost of desolating the villages by malaria."

* Life of Lord Mayo, page 326, Vol. 2.

We have additional information on the same subject relative to Europe, given by Mr. G. J. Burke, M. Inst. C. E.,* who had a large experience on Irrigation Works in India: He was of the opinion that:—

“Drainage and irrigation ought to go together; but how many engineers had seen both drainage and irrigation properly carried out at the same time? He certainly never had. He had seen many of the irrigated districts in Europe, and nearly all in India, and the result of his experience was, that in the irrigating season, when the canals were full, the low-lying lands became swamps, generating disease and pestilence; and he had no doubt that a good deal of unhealthiness, in countries where canal-irrigation was extensively practised, was owing to the neglect of drainage to carry off the surplus water.”

Article 66. Cost of Irrigation per acre in different countries.

In America, as a rule, the land and water go together, and the only expense the landowner is subject to is, that of maintenance of the Canal.

In India, on the contrary, the Government owns all the great canals and sells the water to the cultivators.

In the Statistical Review of the Irrigation of India, 1887–88, it is stated that the rates which are charged for the use of water for irrigation vary very largely in different parts of India and for different crops. In some cases a charge is made for a single watering, and in others a special rate is taken for water used during certain months, but generally the charge is an average rate for irrigating the crop to maturity. Excluding very excep-

*Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. LXXIII, 1883.

tional cases, it may be said that this rate varies from forty cents an acre for rice crops in some parts of Bengal and Sind, up to eight dollars, which is not an extreme rate in Bombay for sugar cane crops. The average rate is less than \$1.20 an acre. (The rupee is here assumed as equal to forty cents.)

In the Punjab Revenue Report on Irrigation for 1889-90, it is stated that the average water rate for this year, for the Western Jumna Canal was about one dollar per acre.

TABLE 21. Giving cost of irrigation per acre in different countries.

CANAL OR LOCALITY.	COUNTRY.	Rate per acre in dollars.	AUTHORITY.
Ganges Canal.....	India.....	\$1 12	F. C. Danvers, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 33.
Eastern Jumna Canal...	India.....	1 16	F. C. Danvers, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 33.
Western Jumna Canal...	India.....	1 20	F. C. Danvers, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 33.
Baree Doab Canal.....	India.....	1 17	F. C. Danvers, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 33.
India (Rice).....	India.....	2 50	G. J. Burke, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 73.
Madras	India.....	3 00	J. B. Morse, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 73.
North West Provinces...	India.....	1 25	J. B. Morse, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 73.
Soonkasela Canal.....	India.....	3 00	J. H. Latham, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 34.
Ceylon.....	Ceylon...	50	J. B. Morse, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 73.
Lower Egypt.....	Egypt...	5 00	Gen. Scott Moncrieff—19th century—Feb. 1885.
Alpines Canal.....	France...	\$2 to \$3	George Wilson, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 101.
Canal from Rhone.....	France...	10.00	Engineering, 29 June, 1877.
Marseilles Canal.....	France...	6 50	George Wilson, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 51.
Verdon Canal.....	France...	5 50	George Wilson, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 51.
Henares Canal.....	Spain....	7 25	George Wilson, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 51.
Esla Canal.....	Spain....	5 75	George Wilson, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 51.
Colorado.....	America.	\$1 50 to \$3	R. J. Hinton—Irrigation in the United States.
Truckee Valley, Nevada..	America.	5 00	Quoted by A. D. Foote, C. E.

Article 67. Annual earning of a cubic foot of water per second.

The following extract is taken from a work by the Honorable Alfred Deakin, M. P., of Victoria.*

“At Los Angeles, California, water is sold by what is called a “head,” which under their loose measurement, varies from two cubic feet to four cubic feet per second, at \$2 per day or \$1.50 per night in summer within the city, twice that price outside of its boundaries, and half the price in winter. At Orange, Southern California, and its neighboring settlements, the price for a flow of about two cubic feet per second is \$2.50 for twenty-four hours or \$1.50 per day and \$1 per night, and in winter \$1.50 for twenty-four hours. At Riverside the cost is about \$1.90 per day or \$1.25 per night, for a cubic foot per second, or \$3 for the twenty-four hours. These prices varying indefinitely as the conditions of sale vary, furnish but an insecure basis for any generalization. Possibly a better idea of the importance of water, than can be derived from any list of purchases and rentals in particular places, may be obtained by a glance at its capital value. It has been calculated that the flow of a cubic foot per second for the irrigating season of all future years is worth from \$75 to \$125 per acre in grain or grazing country, to \$150 in fruit lands. This is the price paid to apply such a stream to a special piece of land for as long as the farmer may think necessary, the knowledge that an excess of water will ruin his crop being the only limit. But if a flow of a cubic foot per second were brought in perpetuity without any limit to the acreage to which it might be applied, or the time or circumstances of applying it, the capital value of such a stream in Southern California to-day would be at least \$40,000.

* Irrigation in Western America, Egypt and Italy.

The following table is compiled from various sources:

TABLE 22. Showing the annual earning of a cubic foot per second in different countries.

NAME OF CANAL.		Annual earning of a cubic foot per second.	AUTHORITIES.
Ganges,	1866-67...	\$187	Russel Aitken, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., 1871-2.
Ganges,	1867-68...	195	Russel Aitken, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., 1871-2.
Ganges,	1868-69...	262	Russel Aitken, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., 1871-2 (year of drought).
Eastern Jumna,	1866-67...	261	Russel Aitken, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., 1871-2 (year of drought).
Eastern Jumna,	1867-68...	260	Russel Aitken, C. E. Trans. I. C. E., 1871-2 (year of drought).
Eastern Jumna,	1868-69...	326	(Year of drought.)
Western Jumna.....		249	F. C. Danvers, C. E. (year of drought).
Baree Doab.....		164	F. C. Danvers, C. E. (year of drought).
Ganges,	1870-71...	220	Col. W. H. Greathead. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 35.
Eastern Jumna,	1870-71...	295	Col. W. H. Greathead. Trans. I. C. E., vol. 35.
Piedmont		80	Colonel Baird Smith.
Lombardy.....		75	Colonel Baird Smith.
Elche and Lorca, Spain.....		11000	George Higgin, C. E., in Trans. I. C. E., vol. 27.
Henares, Spain.....		1875	George Higgin, C. E., in Trans. I. C. E., vol. 27.
Canals in Colorado.....		33	H. M. Wilson, C. E., in Trans. Am. Soc. C. E., 1890.

Article 68. Cost of Canals per Acre Irrigated and per cubic foot per second.

The following table is taken from the most reliable sources available, but no doubt there are errors in it as the account of cost varies by different authorities. It is merely given to show approximately the cost of irrigation canal work in different countries. It is almost impossible to make anything like an accurate comparison of the cost of works in different countries, there are so many different matters entering into the subject. For example, the Ganges Canal is estimated to have cost \$2,487, per cubic foot per second, whilst the Orissa canals are stated to have cost only \$1,000. The former canal, however, has a greater number per mile of expensive works, such as bridges, falls, regulators, level crossings, superpassages, etc. The Orissa system of canals is situated in a deltaic country, which has a slope somewhat approaching to that of the canals, and, as a necessary consequence, very much fewer heavy works are required than on the Ganges Canal which cross the drainage of the lower Himalayas.

section of channel will be required to discharge a given quantity of water, and many additional works will be required in the shape of drops, locks, etc. There will also be danger of silt being deposited in the bed, or of the canal being choked by the growth of aquatic plants.

In order to provide somewhat against the deposition of silt, it is of the utmost importance that the grades and dimensions of the channels should be so arranged that the velocity of the water may not diminish from the time it enters the head of the canal until it is deposited on the land to be irrigated.

The removal of silt, deposited by a low velocity, has caused a great deal of trouble and expense on some of the Indian canals. On the Sone Canals dredging has to be resorted to in order to keep the channels clear. In 1882 the Arrah and Buxar canals were closed to allow the silt deposited below the head-sluiques at Dehri to be cleared out by manual labor. It was estimated that about forty thousand dollars would be expended in clearing out some five or six miles of canal below the headworks.

On the Egyptian canals the necessity for the annual clearance of silt from the irrigation canals, has been one of the greatest evils of the irrigation system in that country.

It is, therefore, of the utmost importance, to keep clear of both extremes; but it is not always easy to do so, and in general a compromise has to be made. Moreover as the velocity increases rapidly with the depth, it is evident that a slope of bed which might be a very proper one for water of a certain depth, would be too great if it were necessary to increase that depth so as to throw an extra supply into the canal.

The minimum mean velocity required to prevent the deposit of silt or the growth of aquatic plants is, in Northern India, taken at $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet per second.

Again, the Henares Canal, in Spain, is stated to have cost, per cubic foot per second, more than twelve times as much as the Mussel Slough Canal in California, but then the works of the former are infinitely superior to the latter. It is very likely that in the end the Henares Canal will be the cheaper of the two, as its annual repairs will cost less, and the works being permanent, there will be no renewals of bridges, aqueducts, etc.

Table 23 is compiled from a table given by Mr. Edward Bates Dorsey, M. Am. Soc. E. C.,* and from other sources of information.

TABLE 23. Giving the cost of canals per acre irrigated, and also the cost per cubic foot per second of discharge.

NAME OF CANAL.	COUNTRY.	COST OF WORKS.	
		Per acre irrigated.	Per cubic foot per second for water used per year.
Western Jumna.....	India....	\$10 88	
Eastern Jumna.....	India....	6 11	
Sutlej or Sirhind.....	India....	26 50	\$1765
Ganges (with navigation).....	India....	36 80	2487
Ganges (without navigation, $\frac{1}{3}$ deducted)....	India....	28 80	1990
Baree Doab.....	India....	35 00	2330
Sone.....	India....	32 00	2170
Bellary Low Level.....	India....	29 00	1965
Tombaganoor.....	India....	39 00	2600
The Orissa system.....	India....	15 00	1000
Fort Morgan.....	Colorado		280
Del Norte.....	Colorado		125
High Level.....	Colorado	10 83	549
Uncompahgre.....	Colorado		287
Cajon.....	California	59 33	1025
Seventy-six.....	California	6 25	
Santa Clara Valley Irrigation Co.....	California	9 63	549
Riverside.....	California	52 75	1507
Mussel Slough.....	California	7 30	584
King's River, North Side.....	California	7 18	277
Idaho Mining & Irrigation Co. (estimated)..	Idaho...	2 16	189
Marseilles.....	France...		4305
Carpentaras.....	France...	35 67	2830
Verdon.....	France...	81 25	15330
Henares.....	Spain....	46 66	7500

*Irrigation in Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers. Vol. XVI, 1887.

**Article 69. Measurement of Water.—Modules.—
Meters.**

It is not likely that the greatest duty of water will be reached until it is sold by measure. It will then be to the interest of the user of water to economize it to the fullest extent.

The machines used to measure water in irrigation canals are generally known as modules, or meters. The principal objects to be sought in a module are:—

1. That it should deliver a constant quantity of water with a varying depth or head of water in the supply channel.

2. That it should expend very little head in delivering the constant quantity.

3. That it should be so free from friction as not to be easily deranged, and that sand or silt in the water would not affect its working.

4. That it should be cheap, and so simple in construction that any ordinary mechanic accustomed to that line of work should be able to make or repair one.

It is of great importance that there should be no intricate or concealed machinery, not only from its liability to derangement, but because there is then so much more liability to an alteration in the discharge, without its being noticed by the official in charge. It is also of importance to have, if possible, such a measure as can be easily inspected by those using the water, in order that each man may, if he pleases, satisfy himself that the proper quantity of water is flowing into his channel.

Mr. A. D. Foote, M. Am. Soc. C. E., has invented a water meter which goes very far to satisfy all the above conditions. Professor L. G. Carpenter gives the following description of this water-meter.*

*On the measurement and division of water.

“ In Figure 199, *A* is the main ditch with a gate *D*, forcing a portion of the water into box *B*. This has a board on the side towards the main ditch, with its upper edge at such a height as to give the required pressure at the orifice. Then if the water be forced through *B*, the amount in excess of this pressure will spill back into the ditch. If the box *B* is made long enough, and the spill-board be sharp edged, nearly all the excess will spill back into the ditch *C*, thus leaving a constant head at the orifice.”

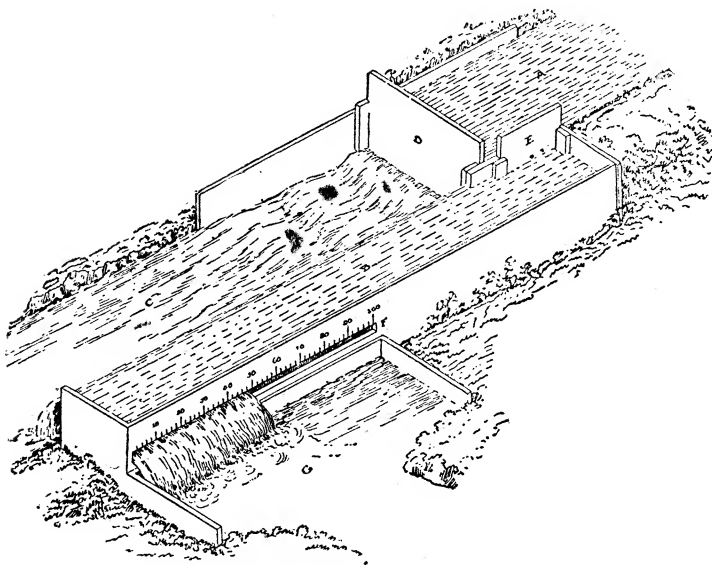


Fig. 199. View of Water Meter, or Module, by A. D. Foote, C. E.

Mr. Foote thus describes this meter:—*

“ For months it has done its work in a very satisfactory manner, seldom clogging and never varying in its delivery to an appreciable amount.

“ The whole value of the meter depends upon the long

*A Water-Meter for Irrigation in Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers, Vol. XVI—1887.

weir, perhaps better described as an excess or returning weir, which returns all excess of water in the box back to the ditch, and thus keeps the pressure at the delivery orifice practically uniform.

“I am well aware that the measurement is not absolutely accurate or uniform; but if it is remembered that the variation in delivery is only as the square root of the variation in head, and that, owing to the long excess weir the variation in head is only a small portion of the variation in the delivery ditch, it will be seen that actual delivery through the orifice is very nearly uniform.

“There need be but an inch or two loss of grade in the ditch, as but very little more water should be stopped than is delivered through the orifice. The gate or other obstruction in the ditch should back the water sufficiently to keep the excess weir clear, and at the same time keep, say, a quarter of an inch of water on its crest, and the surface of the water in the box should then be exactly four inches above the center of the delivering orifice.

“The principle of the long excess weir can be used for delivering water through an open notch or weir, but it is more accurate with a pressure or head, and the greater the head the greater the accuracy, as will readily be seen.

“Any one using the meter will naturally adapt it to their own circumstances and desires. It is cheaply constructed and easily placed in position, costing from four to six dollars; quickly adjusted, as the gates do not have to be precisely set; needs no oversight or supervision (if properly locked as they should be) until a change in volume is desired; will deliver a large or small quantity, which is a great convenience, as the irrigator usually wants a small stream continuously and a large stream on

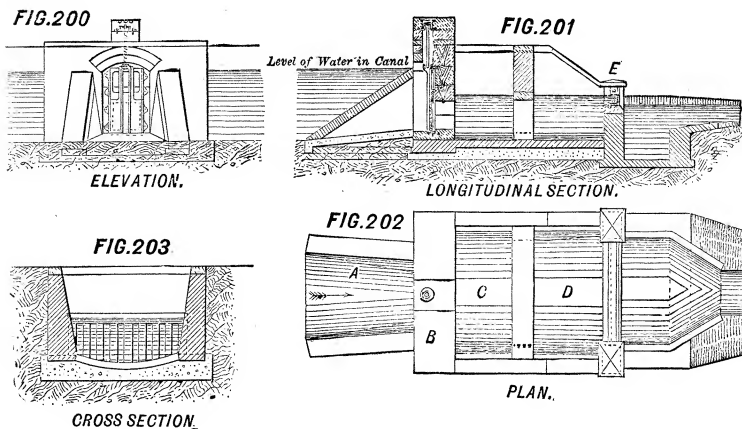
irrigating day; is not likely to clog, as floating leaves and grass pass over the excess weir. Half-sunken leaves may catch in the orifice, but as it is to the farmer's interest to keep that clear, he will probably attend to it.

"To me, however, the greatest merit the method possesses (excepting its accuracy) is that the irrigator himself, with his pocket-rule, can, at any time, demonstrate to his entire satisfaction that he is getting the full amount of water he is paying for."

Whilst Mr. Foote believes that the main ditch need not lose more than a few inches fall, that is from *A* to *C*, Mr. W. H. Graves, C. E., who has introduced the meter on large canals, prefers at least a foot.

The module adopted on the Henares and Esla canals, in Spain,* is illustrated in Figures 200, 201, 202 and 203.

MODULE IN USE ON HENARES CANAL.



"The water is measured by being discharged over a knife-edged iron weir, shown at *E*, Figure 201. The water flows from the main canal into the distributary *A*,

*Irrigation in Spain, by Geogre Higgin, M. Inst. C. E., in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers. Vol. XXVII, 1867-68.

Figure 202, from which place it is admitted into the chamber *C*, by a sluice working in the division wall *B*. From *C* the water passes into the second chamber *D*, where the weir is fixed at *E*. The communication between the two chambers, *C* and *D*, is made by narrow slits, and the water arrives at the weir without any perceptible velocity, and perfectly still. The weirs vary from 3.28 feet to 6.56 feet in breadth, according to the quantity of water required to be passed over. On the wall of the outer chamber is fixed a scale, with its zero point at the level of the weir edge, and by means of this scale, any person can satisfy himself that the proper dotation of water is flowing into the distribution channel. By managing the sluice the guard can regulate to a nicety the height of water to be passed over the weir. This module has several good points. The system of measurement is that which possesses the most fixed rules in hydraulics, and gives the most constant results; it is simple, and almost incapable of derangement; it will serve equally well for turbid waters as for clear ones; it can take off the waters with the least possible loss of head—a most important point in countries having a slight surface grade, where the loss of a few feet of headway would prevent the irrigation of many thousand acres. The canal official can see at a glance whether the proper amount of water is passing into the channel, and the irrigators can satisfy themselves on the same point. The only reasonable objection to this module is, that any sudden variation in the head of water in the canal will affect the discharge, which will continue to be greater or less than it ought to be, according to circumstances, until the official comes round again. This is undoubtedly true, * * * but in most well-regulated canals there is never likely to be any serious variation in the head of water in twenty-four hours.

There is, or should be, a man in charge of the head-works, whose special duty it is to see that a constant body of water is admitted into the canal. If the river is flooded, he must close the gates; if it diminishes he must open them. The water taken off from the Henares and Esla canals, for the different water-courses is a fixed quantity, and that passed on to the lower portion is, therefore, likewise variable. The only cause of a sudden change of head would be in the case of a sudden and heavy fall of rain; but to provide against this at every one or two miles, there is a waste weir, or escape, which would immediately carry off the surplus waters; and even if a little more was discharged through the module for a short time, no inconvenience would result from this."

REPORT ON THE PROPOSED WORKS
OF THE
TULARE IRRIGATION DISTRICT, CALIFORNIA,

BY P. J. FLYNN, CIVIL AND HYDRAULIC ENGINEER, MAY, 1890.

*To the Honorable, the President and Board of Directors of
the Tulare Irrigation District:*

GENTLEMEN:—In accordance with your instructions, I have investigated several routes, in order to select the best line, for a canal to convey 500 cubic feet of water per second, or 25,000 miner's inches, under a four inch head, from the Kaweah River to the site of your proposed reservoir. I have also, in this report, according to your instructions, given explanations with reference to objections made to certain parts of the works.

I herewith submit for your consideration plans and profiles and also detailed estimates of the cost of these lines. I also submit tabular statements giving details as to dimensions, grades, etc., of each line. (Only one of these tables referring to Middle Level Canal, No. 1, is given in this pamphlet.)

ESTIMATES.

The estimated cost of each line is as follows:

High Level Canal.....	\$ 744,456
Middle Level Canal, No. 1.....	659,273
Middle Level Canal, No. 2.....	664,949
Middle Level Canal, No. 3.....	669,389
Low Level Canal.....	695,983

Each estimate includes the cost of head works on the Kaweah River, canal line to reservoir, including tunnels, dam and outlet works at reservoir, canal through the

plains from the reservoir to the district and the compensation to be paid for land for the reservoir and canal lines. To the total cost of the above twenty per cent. has been added, that is, ten per cent. for loss on sale of bonds, and ten per cent. for contingencies. This twenty per cent. is included in the estimates given above.

I recommend the adoption of the line designated Middle Level Canal, No. 1, for the following reasons:

1. It is the cheapest line.
2. With the exception of the High Level Canal there will be less loss of water by percolation than on the other lines.
3. Also with the exception of the High Level Canal, the cost of annual repairs will be less. Briefly stated, the works on this line include head works on the Kaweah River, thence one mile in length of canal to a flume 100 feet long at Horse Creek, thence a canal 2.75 miles long to a tunnel 700 feet long. After this tunnel comes a canal 2,400 feet in length, then follows another tunnel 1,100 feet long and thence 4.59 miles of canal to reservoir. The total length of this canal is 9.15 miles. No water is drawn from the canal between the river and the reservoir. At the reservoir there is a large dam and outlet works, and from the reservoir a canal twenty-five miles long brings the water to and through the Tulare District. The district has an area of about 40,000 acres.

PRICES.

The prices for work are fixed as near the current rate of labor and materials as could be ascertained.

BORINGS AND TRIAL PITS.

In order to make an accurate estimate borings were taken, with a light steel rod, at every hundred feet where the rock was covered with earth. This work was done at slight expense as the ground at the time was

thoroughly saturated with water. A few trial pits were also sunk.

SIDE SLOPES.

The side slopes in cuttings vary with the nature of the material cut through. In fill the top of the banks is 6 feet in width and $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet above the surface of the water. For one mile from the head works the side slopes, both inside and outside the canal, are 2 horizontal to 1 vertical. With this exception the banks in fill, when not protected by dry rubble, have slope sides of $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 on the inside of the canal, and 2 to 1 on the outside. I give a short description of the different lines reported on.

HIGH LEVEL CANAL.

The head of this canal is on the left bank of the Kaweah River in Section 33, T. 17 S., R. 28 E. From this point this canal runs via A, B, C, D, E, X, F, G, M, S, (see map) to reservoir at S. The head of the canal for about 200 feet is through granite, and for the next 5,000 feet to Horse Creek at B, it is through bowlders, gravel and sand. For about 3,000 feet from the Kaweah river this line is in cut and the balance is in fill, about 500 feet in 13 feet fill. This is the largest fill on any of the lines.

Horse Creek is passed by a flume 100 feet long. After this for 500 feet the line runs along a bold rocky bluff, the method of passing which is described under the heading, side-hill work. From this point to D via B, C, D (see map), 7,400 feet in length, the line has frequent sharp curves and runs in steep side-hill ground. The channel is fourteen feet wide at bottom, with a depth of water of seven feet, and with side slopes of $\frac{1}{4}$ horizontal to 1 vertical. This part of the line has been kept as much as possible in five feet cut to prevent loss of water by percolation and breaches. The material cut through

It is stated that, in America, a higher velocity is required for this purpose, and it varies from 2 to $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet per second.

In Spain it has been observed that a velocity of from 2 to $2\frac{1}{4}$ feet per second prevents the growth of weeds, but does not scour the channel.

In the Inundation Canals of Sind, in India, a province watered by the Indus, it is found that with a velocity of over 2 feet per second the silt is carried on to the fields, and, as a rule, the sand is deposited in the canal and this sand has to be cleared out every year, in order to keep the canals in working order.

In Egypt, when the velocity is less than 1.8 feet per second, silt is deposited and an immense quantity of it has to be removed every year from the irrigation canals there. A velocity of over two feet per second, however, in August and September, when the Nile water is much charged with slime, prevents deposits, not only of slime but even of sand. During summer there is no silt as the water is clear.

Having fixed the minimum velocity and depth of channel, the required slope can be computed as explained in the examples of the application of the Tables relating to the *Flow of Water*.

The maximum mean velocity is not, however, so easily fixed. It must, in the first place, vary with the nature of the soil of the bed. A stony bed will stand a very considerable velocity, while a sandy bed will be disturbed if the velocity exceeds 3 feet per second. Some gravel beds will bear a high velocity. Good loam with not too much sand will bear a velocity of 4 feet per second.

It is better to give too great than too small a velocity, as, in the former case, measures can be adopted to protect the side slopes, or falls can be made in the canal and the longitudinal slope, and, therefore, the velocity

side of the Kaweah River. This tunnel is in granite. In cross-section it has a level bed 10 feet 3 inches wide, with vertical sides 7 feet high and a segmental top. Its grade is 1 in 300. From E this canal runs via E, X, F, G, M, S, for 3.7 miles to the reservoir. This part of the line is on fairly level ground, through sandy loam, and no difficulty is met with. This part of the canal has a bed width of thirty-three feet, a depth of water of six feet, the side slopes next to the water $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1, and the outer slope 2 to 1. The top of the bank is six feet wide and $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet above the surface of the water in the canal. Its grade is 1 in 7,000, and its mean velocity two feet per second. The total length of this line is 7.58 miles.

MIDDLE LEVEL CANAL NO 1.

This canal, which is the line recommended for adoption, is the same as the High Level Canal from the head works on the Kaweah river at A (see map) to C, that is for about 2.5 miles. From C to V, via C, H, I, T, K, V, it runs in a tortuous course, on rough, steep, side-hill ground, through sandy loam, rotten granite and solid granite. Large granite bowlders are scattered over the surface of this route. It will be necessary not only to clear the line of these bowlders, but also to clear the hill side above the canal line of all large bowlders that are likely, during rainy weather, to roll down and fall into the canal. From C to I for 7,800 feet the canal has a bed width of 14 feet, depth of water of 7 feet, side slopes of $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1, and a grade of 1 in 1000 or 5.28 feet per mile.

At I, this line goes by a tunnel 700 feet long in granite, under the pass near Mr. Marx's house, and it emerges from this tunnel on the south side of the range of hills that run parallel to, and south of the Kaweah River. The lower end of the tunnel is situated at the head of Lime Kiln cañon. This cañon joins at its lower

end with the plain that stretches from the Lime Kiln to the pass M, S (see map), that leads to the reservoir. From I, this line runs along bold, rocky side-hill ground for 2,400 feet to the beginning of a tunnel in granite 1,100 feet long. The method of passing this place is the same as that adopted in passing the rocky bluff near Horse Creek, and is explained under the heading *Side-Hill Work*. From the beginning of the 700 foot tunnel to the lower end of the 1,100 foot tunnel, the line runs through granite. Through this length of 4,200 feet the channel has the same dimensions and grade, that is, in cross-section, bottom level and 9 feet in width, sides vertical and 7 feet high to surface of water. The grade for the tunnels and canal for this length of 4,200 feet is 1 in 200, or 26.4 feet per mile. The velocity in this part of the line is very high, 8.15 feet per second, but the channel is well able to bear this velocity, as it is composed of granite and rubble masonry, the latter having a coat of hard plaster composed of Portland cement and sand. From the lower end of the 1,100 foot tunnel this line falls 22.6 feet in 1,100 feet by 13 vertical drops, and horizontal reaches to K, and the cross-sectional dimensions are the same as the last section, having a bed width of 9 feet. From K the line runs for 4,700 feet to V, along the steep, side-hill ground, through sandy loam and rock. The channel here has a bed width of 14 feet with sides as heretofore described. From V this line runs to X, and thence for 18,400 feet to the reservoir via V, X, F, G, M, S, and from X to reservoir it is the same, in every respect, as the High Level Canal. At V the depth of the canal changes from 7 to 6 feet, and the surface of the water in the channel is assumed to drop one foot near this place. From Horse Creek to V for 4.68 miles the canal has a high velocity sufficient to wash away loams and similar soils.

Where the canal channel, 14 feet in width, passes through these materials the bed and banks have a lining of dry rubble in order to prevent erosion. The superiority of this line over the Middle Level Canals, Nos. 2 and 3, lies in its smaller cross-section and higher grade from K to V, and also in following the line of the High Level Canal from X to S. The depth of cutting through the pass from M to S is less on this line than on lines Nos. 2 and 3. There are two tunnels on this line, one of 700 and the other of 1,100 feet in length. The indications are that these tunnels are in solid granite and will not need timbering or lining. The length of this line is 9.15 miles.

The following table gives the dimensions and grades of the different sections of the Middle Level Canal, No. 1, from the headworks to the reservoir. The velocities are computed by Kutter's formula with $n = .025$. The required discharge is 500 cubic feet per second.

Distance in feet.	Grade 1 in	Slope ft. per mile	Bed width in feet.	Depth of water in feet.	Side slopes.	Area square feet.	Mean velocity in feet per second.	Discharge in cubic feet per second.
5200	2600	2.03	54.	3.5	1 to 2	213.5	2.49	532-(1)
100	200	26.4	16.	4.	Vertical.	64.	8.	513-(2)
400	200	26.4	9.	7.	Vertical.	63.	8.15	513
14200	1000	5.28	14.	7.	$\frac{1}{4}$ to 1	110.25	4.65	513
700	200	26.4	9.	7.	Vertical.	63.	8.15	513-(3)
2400	200	26.4	9.	7.	Vertical.	63.	8.15	513
1100	200	26.4	9.	7.	Vertical.	63.	8.15	513
1100	.....	.....	9.	7.	Vertical.	63.	8.15	513-(4)
4700	1000	5.28	14.	7.	$\frac{1}{4}$ to 1	110.25	4.65	513
14400	7000	0.754	33.	6.	$1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	252.	2.	504-(5)
4000	.....	.....	20.	7.	1 to 1	189.	2.55	500-(6)

- (1.) This section begins at head works.
- (2.) Flume, drop of 0.5 feet.
- (3.) Tunnel, drop at tunnel mouth 0.5 feet.
- (4.) Level reaches and vertical drops.
- (5.) Bed continuous, drop 1 foot in surface water.
- (6.) Level reaches and vertical drops.

MIDDLE LEVEL CANAL, NO. 2.

This canal is the same, in every respect, as Middle Level Canal No. 1, from the head works at A to K (see map). At K it drops four feet lower than Canal No. 1, in order to avoid bad ground from K to V. From K to V it is in a slope of 1 in 7,000, whereas Canal No. 1 has in this distance a slope of 1 in 1,000. From V this line runs to the reservoir via V, G, M, S, through moderately level ground. This part of the line is in sandy loam and there is no difficulty in it. There are two tunnels on this line, having a total length of 1,800 feet. The length of this line is nine miles.

MIDDLE LEVEL CANAL NO. 3.

This canal is the same, in every respect, as Middle Level Canal No. 2, from the head works at A to the reservoir at S (see map), with the exception of that part from I to K. From I this canal runs to K via I, R, K, all in open cutting.

This part is 7,000 feet in length. It is very tortuous and runs on steep side-hill ground, through sandy loam and rock. Large granite boulders are scattered over the surface and embedded in the sandy loam that covers the bed rock. From the lower end of the 700 foot tunnel at I, the line falls forty-three feet in 1,100 feet by fourteen vertical drops and level reaches. Of all the lines this has the shortest length of tunnel, 700 feet. From the last drop below I it runs in a channel of the same dimensions and grade that Middle Level Canal No. 2 has from K to S, and it joins with this channel on the same level at K. It has the greatest length of any of the lines, of difficult, broken, side-hill ground. The length of this line is 9.38 miles.

LOW LEVEL CANAL.

The headworks of this canal are situated on the left bank of the Kaweah River in Section 36, T. 17 S., R. 27 E. The river is here over 500 feet wide and it is divided into two channels. The great body of the water flows in the channel near the left bank, and the river has a decided set towards this bank. There is, however, always danger in such a wide river bed that the main channel, after a heavy flood, might change to the right bank. In such a case it would be very expensive work to excavate a channel from the right branch to the head works of this canal. The head works of Middle Level Canal No. 1 are not exposed to this danger as explained further on. At the side of the head works of the Low Level Canal the left branch of the river is about 150 wide on the surface of the water, and its low water depth about four feet. The site for the head works is in solid granite. A dam in the river, at this place, would be a costly work as, to be effective, it should reach from bank to bank.

From the head works at N this line runs via N, O, P, L, M, S, to the reservoir at S. From the head works at N the line runs across the flat above the left bank of the river to the base of the hill at O. This line is 1,850 feet in length, through sandy loam and hard-pan. This part has a bed width of thirty-one feet, five feet in depth of water, side slopes of $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 and a grade of 1 in 2,500. From O this line runs through the hill in a tunnel to P for 2,850 feet in limestone. From P the line runs through the plain east of the Wachumna Hill, thus avoiding all side-hill work, to a tunnel under the pass, M, S. The canal through the plain has a bottom width of thirty feet, a depth of seven feet and side slopes of 1 to 1 with a grade of 1 in 8,000.

After passing through the tunnel 3,300 feet in length,

the line runs for 2,000 feet more to the reservoir at S, through sandy loam, hard-pan and granite. There are two tunnels on this line of a total length of 6,350 feet. The tunnels have in cross-section a level bed 10 feet 3 inches in width, vertical sides with a depth of water seven feet and a segmental roof. The grade is 1 in 300. This line is the shortest of the five routes. Its length is 5.59 miles.

TUNNELS.

Under certain conditions a tunnel, when in sound rock, is preferable to an open channel for conveying water. The conditions are that no water is required to be drawn off this part of the line, and that a heavy grade can be given. By sound rock is meant rock not subject to percolation, to any appreciable extent, that will stand the high velocity without injury by erosion, and also that will not require lining for its sides or arching for its roof. When, in addition, a steep grade can be obtained, a high velocity can be given to the water, and the cross-sectional area and consequent expense reduced.

In such a tunnel the loss of water by evaporation and percolation and the expense of maintenance is at a minimum. It has several advantages over the open channel in steep, side-hill ground. Its sides and bed are impervious to water and it is covered from the sunlight. It shortens the line, there is no compensation to be paid for land, and it does not interfere with or cross the drainage of the country on the surface. Should it be required at any future time to increase the carrying capacity of the canal, the discharge of the tunnel can be increased, without, however, increasing its dimensions.

All that will be necessary is to fill all the hollows between the projecting ends of the rocky bed and sides

with good cement concrete, and after this to give a coat of good plaster to the surfaces in contact with the water and make them smooth. Although the section will be diminished, still the velocity and consequent discharge will be doubled.

Let us assume the loss of water in a certain length of open channel at six per cent. of the total flow. If, by adopting a tunnel line, the loss of water is only one per cent., it is evident that it would pay to expend the value of five per cent. of the water on the tunnel line above that on the open channel.

Another argument in favor of the tunnel is, that the amount saved yearly in maintenance capitalized could be expended on the tunnel over that upon the open channel in order to give a fair comparison with the latter. The above are good reasons in favor of the High Level Canal. But, on the other hand, there are two very weighty objections to this route. The principal one is the time the tunnel would take in construction.

Under favorable circumstances, and with granite of medium hardness, this tunnel could be constructed in two years; but, should circumstances turn out unfavorable, and very hard rock as well as water be encountered, the time might be increased to four years and the cost of driving also very much enhanced. The estimated cost of the High Level Canal is \$85,000 more than that of the Middle Level Canal, No. 1. If that were the only difference and after taking everything into consideration, then in my opinion the High Level Canal would be the best of the five lines, but on account of the uncertainty as to time and cost, I recommend the next best line, the Middle Level Canal, No. 1.

HEADWORKS OF MIDDLE LEVEL CANAL, NO. 1.

The headworks of this canal are situated on the left bank of the Kaweah River, in Section 36, T. 17 S., R. 27 E. At this site the Kaweah River is well adapted for the headworks of an irrigation canal, in fact, it would be extremely difficult to find in any locality a more favorable location for such a work. It is in a single channel, in a well-defined, permanent, rocky bed, free from sand, silt, gravel and boulders. The depth of digging at the head is only about eleven feet in rock for about 200 feet in length, and for a mile from the head the greatest depth of digging is only sixteen feet, and this in gravel or boulders. At low water the greatest width of the river at this place is about 150 feet, and the greatest depth about four feet. At high water its greatest surface width is probably not more than 300 feet. At about 500 feet below this point there is a sudden fall in the rocky bed of the river, and below this fall the channel widens considerably, to 800 feet in some places; and its bed is covered with debris composed of boulders, gravel, sand and silt. At low stages of the river, in the irrigating season, when water for irrigation is most needed, a large percentage of it is lost by percolation through this porous bed. If, at some future time, in order to economize water and reduce expenses, all canals and ditches on the left bank of the Kaweah River, from Wachumna Hill, to the mouth of Cross Creek, should combine and take out the water from the river in one canal, then this is the proper location for the headworks. With a good permanent dam across the river immediately below the headworks, every cubic foot of water coming down the Kaweah River can be intercepted at this point and diverted into the canal. In seasons of great drought, when every cubic foot of water counts for so much, it is of the utmost importance to be able to

utilize the water that now runs to waste in the porous river bed. The canal can get its supply without a dam in the river, but to be able to intercept all the flow in the low stages of the river, a dam would be necessary. In order to prevent the silting up of the river bed above the dam to its crest, and the choking of the canal head by debris, under-sluices would be required. If the above-mentioned combination of ditch owners should find the building of such a dam necessary, then, by opening these under-sluices in said dam when required, the current will carry away any debris deposited opposite the head gates and keep the latter clear.

For the reasons above given the place selected for the location of the headworks has advantages over every other place that I have seen on the river. These advantages are:—

1. Its elevation above the reservoir is sufficient to give a steep grade to the canal through the bad, rocky ground, and thus diminish its cross-section and expense.
2. The river is in a single, narrow channel, in a permanent bed free from debris.
3. The foundation for the headworks of the most stable and permanent kind, a bed of solid granite.
4. The face line of the head gates can be located on the bank of, and parallel to the direction of the current in the river, and by this means it can be kept clear of the debris.
5. With a dam across the river, and regulating shutters at the head of canal, there will be a command of the water for irrigation, and the water that at low stages of the river is now lost in the bed below can be intercepted and utilized. By closing the regulating shutters at any time the supply can be cut off from the canal and its bed laid dry.
6. On account of the advantages of site above ex-

reduced. In the latter case the deposition of silt will necessitate an annual clearance of the canal, at great expense, and the loss of ground along the canal banks on which to deposit the spoil.

The Cavour Canal in Italy, over a gravel bed, has a velocity of about 5 feet per second.

The Naviglio Grande and the Martesana canals in Italy, which are both used largely for irrigation, have steep slopes, and their mean velocities are not less than from 5 to 6 feet per second in their upper portions.

On the Arles branch of the Crappone Canal in the South of France, the mean velocity is 5.3 feet per second, and on the Istres branch of the same canal the mean velocity is 6.6 feet per second.

The mean velocity of the Baree Doab Canal in India, when carrying its supply, 3,000 cubic feet per second, is about 5 feet per second over a gravel bed.

The Del Norte Canal in Colorado, has a discharge of 2,400 cubic feet per second. At its head its bed-width is 65 feet, depth of water $5\frac{1}{2}$ feet, and side slopes 3 to 1, therefore its velocity must be over 5 feet per second, but as the channel is excavated almost entirely from a coarse gravel, drift and rock, no danger is anticipated from the erosive force of the current.

Again, if the navigation requirements are to be considered, the maximum velocity at which a boat can be navigated against the current at a profit, is evidently a very intricate problem, depending on such varying data as the moving power employed, whether steam, animals or man; the description of boat, value of the cargo, etc. If the saving thus effected on the total traffic annually conveyed would defray the interest of the increased capital required for the proposed reduction of slope, then it would doubtless be desirable to make that reduction, looking at the question from that point of view only.

plained permanent head works can be constructed at moderate expense.

RESERVOIR.

The reservoir has an area, when full, of 657 acres, and it contains 635,340,000 cubic feet of water. Its watershed has an area, including the reservoir, of twenty square miles. It has an earthen dam 56 feet high at the deepest part. Its greatest depth of water is 50 feet, and its average depth 22.2 feet. The dam contains, including puddle and rip-rap, 923,000 cubic yards of material. Its length is 3,800 feet. Its top is 16 feet wide and 6 feet above the level of crest of waste weir that is above the surface of a full reservoir. At the deepest part the dam is 296 feet wide at the base. Its outer slope is 2 horizontal to 1 vertical, and its inner slope facing the water 3 to 1. This slope is to be faced with rip-rap. Under the center of the dam, and for its whole length, a trench is to be sunk to, and into the impervious clayey loam, and afterwards filled with puddle to about two feet above the surface of the ground. The dam will be constructed in thin layers of selected clayey loam well consolidated. An ample waste weir with its crest 6 feet below the top of the dam will be made at each end of the dam, and it will be arranged also so that the outlet can be used as an additional waste channel. The outlet will be through a tunnel in solid rock and through the spur of the hill at the south end of the dam. The outlet will be entirely unconnected with the dam, which will have no pipe or culvert running through it. The tower or chamber connected with the outlet tunnel will be of ample dimensions and of good masonry.

The specifications will enter into more details about materials and mode of construction.

The dimensions given for the dam are those adopted

in the best practice throughout the world. Theory has little to do with the design of an earthen dam. Experience in different parts of the world has shown that with good materials and careful construction a dam of the above dimensions can be made perfectly safe. Statements have been made that there is no necessity for a reservoir, that all that is required is a canal from the Kaweah River to the district, that there has heretofore been ample water in the river for all the requirements of irrigation, and that it, therefore, follows that there will be an ample supply in the future.

In a work entitled "Physical Data and Statistics of California," published by the State Engineering Department of California, there are tables giving the flow of the Kaweah River at Wachumna Hill for six years, from 1878 to 1884 inclusive. The drainage area of the Kaweah River at this place is 619 square miles. From these tables I have compiled the table 1 at the end of this report.

For those more accustomed to compute the flow of water by miner's inches than by cubic feet per second, I give the equivalent of the average flow in that unit of measurement. Fifty of these inches are equivalent to one cubic foot per second. The miner's inch used is that under a mean head of four inches.

From an inspection of these tables it will be evident that the expectation of ample supply in a very dry year, such, for instance, as 1879, is not well founded.

There are over twenty canals and ditches drawing their water from the Kaweah River that will have a prior right to the use of the water, and to which they are legally entitled, before the Tulare Irrigation District can take its supply from that river. I here give the names of some of these canals. They are Wachumna Canal, People's Consolidated, Kaweah Canal, Farmers'

Ditch, Evans' Ditch, Tulare Canal, Packwood, Mill Creek, Outside Creek, Cameron Creek, Lower Cross Creek, Ketchum Ditch, Hayes Ditch, Hambleton Ditch, Meherton Ditch. In addition to the above there are some small ditches not mentioned in this list.

The table shows that the average flow of the river in May, 1879, was only 774 feet. This is the month in which water is most urgently required for irrigation. The only safe rule by which to arrive at the available supply in a year of drought is, to take the least flow of the river when water is most in demand. The canals and ditches mentioned above are entitled to more than 774 cubic feet per second. It is very likely that all the canals have never drawn the full supply to which they are entitled at the same time during the period of least supply. The time, however, is sure to come when they will do so. As the country is thickly settled the demand for water will increase until every available cubic foot that can be drawn from the river will be utilized on the land.

Under these circumstances, in a very dry year it is evident that there will not be sufficient water to save the crops that are depending for their supply on the canal alone. In such a deplorable state of affairs the loss to the district in a year of great drought would be more than the total cost of the reservoir. The reservoir is intended to insure a supply during the period of the low stage of the river, and to prevent a water famine on the irrigable lands of the Tulare Irrigation District.

The canal alone no doubt will bring a supply during years of average or more than average rainfall, but it is sure to fail when most required in seasons of great drought, for the sufficient reason that there will be no water supply.

During this year there is an abundance of water avail-

able, but it is well to remember that we are after having a most unusual wet winter, and it is of still more importance to remember that extraordinary seasons of drought happen periodically, and that in only one such season the use of the storage water from the reservoir will more than repay the expenditure incurred on the dam. Without a reservoir in such a year the canal will be a dry channel unable to supply the perishing crops with water.

In the months between irrigating seasons, when there is not such a large quantity drawn from the river for irrigation, the water that now runs to waste, during that period, can be taken to fill the reservoir, and there will thus be a storage reserve to be used only when it is urgently required in April and May. In the meantime, after the reservoir is full, any water that may be drawn from the river can be allowed to flow down to the district and be used for irrigation. For instance: Let the reservoir be filled at the end of the irrigating season, when there is always an abundant supply of water in the river from the melting snow. Now, from this period until the following irrigating season in April, the supply obtained from the river flows to and out of the reservoir, keeping it full. In case, however, that the supply from the river should at any time in a dry year fail, there will still be a full reservoir stored for use.

In average years, however, the reservoir can be filled several times from freshets and melting snow, and by this means at the periods of irrigation there will be a larger supply available at certain intervals than could be obtained from the river by the canal alone.

The above facts prove that to have, in all seasons, an effective system of irrigation works for this district, a storage reservoir is essential.

Statements have been made that, after completion, a

full reservoir would not be capable of irrigating one section, that is, 640 acres of land. I now proceed to prove that these statements very much exaggerate the probable loss from evaporation and percolation. The quantity of water required to irrigate land varies very much. The number of acres that a cubic foot per second, or fifty miner's inches will irrigate is known as

THE DUTY OF WATER.

This varies from 50 in wheat lands, in some parts of America, to 1,600 in fruit land in Southern California. When this high duty is reached the water is conducted in pipes, and it is used with economy.

In Elche, in Spain, where water is very scarce, a cubic foot per second irrigates 1,000 acres of land.

General Scott Moncrieff, R. E., gives the duty that can be got out of one cubic foot of water per second in Northern India, at 250 acres, and he states that there is frequently fifty days between each irrigation.

J. S. Beresford, C. E., states that five inches in depth is a safe allowance for one watering in Northern India. I have heard an experienced irrigator in this district, Tulare, state that he gave over six feet in depth, at one watering, to a piece of land having a sandy soil. He had an unlimited supply of water and the quantity used he measured from the supply channel.

Prof. George Davidson in his Report on Irrigation, states that:—

“The amount of water required for a crop of wheat, barley, maize, etc., is almost identical with the amount deduced from observations in the great valley of California, where a rainfall of $10\frac{1}{2}$ inches, fairly distributed, will insure a crop.”

“The capacity of a canal may, therefore, be fairly estimated by assuming that 12 inches of water over the

surface of the irrigable land will, if properly applied, be amply sufficient for the maturing of one grain crop; and hence, knowing the capacity of a canal, we can determine the area its water will irrigate."

In one of his lectures before the Academy of Sciences at San Francisco, Prof. Davidson says on the same subject:—

"In estimating the total acres that can be irrigated from a given supply, allowance must be made for the amount lying fallow, woodland, marsh, roads, streams, towns, etc. In India, the average under cultivation each season is only one-third of any given area; in this country we might safely estimate it at two-thirds of any irrigation district."

Experienced irrigators state that in this district, as a rule, one watering some time in May will save the crops, vines and fruit trees, and that fruit trees and vines can, with careful cultivation, tide over one dry season, with less than an average depth of six inches over the land. From the instances given it will be seen that there is a wide diversity in the quantity of water used per acre to irrigate land.

The reservoir, when full to the level or waste weir, will contain 635,340,000 cubic feet, equivalent to 4,752,660,870 U. S. standard gallons of water. If we reduce this quantity by thirty-six per cent. for evaporation and percolation, up to the point of delivery to the irrigators, we have left for purposes of irrigation 406,617,600 cubic feet. This is the quantity that, after the loss by evaporation and seepage, would be given to the irrigators for use on their land in a very dry year in April or May. This quantity is sufficient to cover 11,200 acres to a depth of ten inches or 18,600 acres to a depth of six inches.

It is the opinion of irrigators well informed on the

requirements of this district, that this quantity of water, used with economy, would be sufficient to save the crops, fruit trees and vines, and tide over a very dry year in this district.

Doubtless, during the first few years after the opening of the canal the loss of water will be more than thirty-six per cent., but as explained under the heading *Evaporation and Percolation*, the loss from seepage will decrease with the age of the canal and also as the sub-soil gets saturated with water. The Fresno District is a notable instance of the saturation of sub-soil. A small percentage of the quantity of water used at first to irrigate a certain area is now sufficient to insure a crop.

I am informed that the distribution channels that I constructed in 1877, to irrigate the twenty acre lots of the Central California Colony at Fresno, have since been leveled and filled up, as the sub-soil is so saturated with water that very little flooding is now required. There is a deeper porous sub-soil in this district and, therefore, it is not likely that its saturation will be to the same extent as that of Fresno, but it will probably be sufficient to diminish the quantity of water now required to irrigate a certain area in this district. I am informed that already there is a sensible rise in the sub-soil water, in and around Tulare, which is attributed to the seepage from the irrigation channels in the district.

The storage capacity of one full reservoir, at a time when there is no additional supply flowing into it from the Kaweah River, would supply a canal having a discharge of 500 cubic feet per second or 25,000 miner's inches for fifteen days, and, when there is no outflow from the reservoir, it would take an equal length of time for the supply canal from the river to fill it.

In the period of greatest demand for irrigation, in years of ordinary rainfall, there will be a supply from

the river, flowing into the reservoir to add to its greatest storage reserve. This supply from the river will be a material addition to the irrigating capacity of the reservoir.

As an instance let us assume that during the period of irrigation 500 cubic feet per second are drawn from a full reservoir, while it is, at the same time, receiving 200 feet per second in excess of all losses, including evaporation and percolation. In this instance the reservoir and canal combined will give a supply for irrigation of 500 cubic feet per second for twenty-four and one-half days and will, during this time, cover 24,297 acres to a depth of one foot.

Without the reservoir the 200 cubic feet per second supplied by the canal would cover two-fifths of that area, equal to 9,719 acres.

Without the additional 200 cubic feet per second by the canal, the reservoir alone would give a supply of 500 feet per second for fifteen days, and would cover 14,585 acres to a depth of one foot. I append a table showing the great increase of the irrigable capacity of the reservoir supplemented by a supply from the river.

The first column of the table gives the number of cubic feet per second supplied by the canal from the river to the reservoir.

The second column gives the number of days supply for irrigation at the rate of 500 cubic feet per second, that the full reservoir of 635,340,000 cubic feet can give when supplemented by the quantity in column one.

The third column gives the number of acres that can be covered to a depth of one foot by 500 cubic feet per second, in the number of days given in second column.

The fourth column gives the number of acres that the canal supply in the first column, but without the reser-

voir, can cover to a depth of one foot in the number of days given in the second column.

Canal from Kaweah River, cubic feet per second.	Reservoir and Canal gives a supply of 500 cubic feet per second for days	Reservoir and Canal cover to a depth of one foot acres	Canal alone without reservoir cover to a depth of one foot acres
...	15.	14,585	.....
50	16.3	16,202	1,616
100	18.4	18,235	3,650
150	21.	20,833	6,248
200	24.5	24,297	9,719
250	29.4	29,157	14,570
275	30.	29,759	15,174
300	36.8	36,483	21,897
350	49.	48,595	34,016
400	73.5	72,899	58,314
450	147.	145,792	131,206

An inspection of this table will show the necessity for a reservoir in a dry year. With a supply of 100 cubic feet per second, 5,000 miner's inches, the canal alone, in 18.4 days will cover 3,650 acres to a depth of one foot, whilst the reservoir, plus this supply, will irrigate 18,248 acres to the same depth in the same time. In the former case there would be blighted crops over a large area, and in the latter, on the contrary, there would be sufficient water, if used economically, to save the crops throughout the district.

LOSS FROM EVAPORATION AND SEEPAGE.

There is a popular belief that the loss of water from the surfaces of rivers, canals and reservoirs is much greater than is actually the case.

The records of evaporation at Kingsburg bridge, Tulare county, published by the State Engineering department of California, are given in the tables at the end of this report. From Table 12 it will be seen that the mean annual evaporation at Kingsburg bridge for the four years from 1881 to 1885 is 3.85 feet in depth,

when the pan is in the river, which is equal to an average depth of one-eighth of an inch per day for a whole year. For the same period the evaporation, when the pan was in air, was 4.96 feet in depth, that is, equal to a mean daily depth of evaporation throughout the year, of less than three-sixteenths of an inch per day.

The greatest evaporation is in the month of August, when it is more than one-sixth of the evaporation for the whole year. The average for this month is one-third of an inch per day.

During the months when the largest quantity of water is used for irrigation in this district, the table shows that the mean evaporation is:—

For March one-twelfth of an inch per day.

For April one-twelfth of an inch per day.

For May one-fifth of an inch per day.

To some people these depths of evaporation may appear very small. Let us, therefore, examine the result of observations in other countries:—

Colonel Baird Smith, in his work on Italian Irrigation, states that in the north of Italy and center of France, the daily evaporation varies from one-twelfth to one-ninth of an inch per day; while in the south, and under the influence of hot winds, it increases to between one-sixth and one-fifth of an inch per day.

In July, 1867, the evaporation in Madrid, according to the returns of the Royal Observatory, was $13\frac{1}{2}$ inches in depth, or less than half an inch per day; and in May of the same year it was only one-quarter of an inch per day. July was the hottest month in 1867, and it was estimated that during this month the total evaporation of the Henares Canal, carrying 105 cubic feet per second, or 5,250 miner's inches, amounted to only three-fourths of one per cent. of the total flow.

W. W. Culcheth, C. E., states as the result of his in-

But there is a limit to the reduction of slope beyond a certain minimum, as explained above, owing to the paramount necessity of preventing the deposit of silt in the canal channel, and though, with canals carrying from 2,000 to 5,000 cubic feet per second, 6 inches per mile may be taken as the minimum limit, which would, under ordinary circumstances, interfere seriously with navigation; still it must depend of course on the fall of the country and the nature of the soil, and so difficult is it often found to combine the requirements of the two purposes, irrigation and navigation, that it has been seriously proposed to provide for the latter by separate still-water channels, made alongside of the running canal itself.

In the irrigation districts in this country there are numerous instances of canals and ditches with too great a slope. In other cases the woodwork of the drops has been washed away and not replaced, and by retrogression of levels the fall at the drops has been added to the original slope of bed, and in this way a velocity sufficient to erode the bed and banks has been produced. The deep channeling has lowered the surface of the water to such an extent that the distributing channels have to be deepened at their offtake in order to obtain their supply.

In some of the Indian canals, including the Upper Ganges and Jumna canals, the slope, and consequently velocity was too great, and dangerous erosion took place. To prevent dangerous channeling, expensive repairs and protective works had to be undertaken, with the additional loss of the canal for irrigation during the period that this work was going on. In computing the slope for the Ganges Canal, Sir Proby Cautley used the formula of Dubuat. This formula was often used in canal work at this time, but it is now known to be unre-

vestigation on the Ganges Canal, in Northern India, that for evaporation, one-quarter of an inch per day over the wetted surface may be taken as the average loss from a canal.

Dr. Murray Thompson's experiments in the hot season in Northern India, with a decidedly hot wind blowing, gave an average result of half an inch in depth evaporated in twenty-four hours.

M. Lemaire's observations at Pondicherry, in French India, give a daily evaporation of from three-tenths to half an inch in depth per day.

Trautwine made observations in the Tropics and he found the evaporation from ponds of pure water to be at the rate of one-eighth of an inch per day, but he observes that the air in that region is highly charged with moisture.

The above quoted observations, although they do not prove the accuracy of the Kingsburg experiments, still they give results, in warm climates, so close to each other that, for all practical purposes, the latter experiments may be accepted as correct.

Let us now investigate the loss of water from the reservoir by evaporation:—

Let us assume that the reservoir is full on the 31st of July, and that it receives no water from the river from this time until it is drawn upon for water for irrigation on April 1st, of the following year. Allow twenty days for the reservoir to become empty and the surface exposed to evaporation during this time is equal to the surface at full supply for half the time, or ten days. From Table 12 we find the average evaporation for four years to be as follows:—

August.....	0.861	feet in depth
September.....	0.615	“ “
October.....	0.289	“ “
November.....	0.174	“ “
December.....	0.104	“ “
January.....	0.081	“ “
February.....	0.091	“ “
March, one-third of.....	0.075	“ “
	<hr/>	
	2.290	

This shows a total depth evaporated during this time equal to 2.29 feet, but the average depth of the reservoir at full supply level is 22.2 feet, and therefore the evaporation is, in round numbers, 10 per cent. of the full reservoir.

To this will have to be added evaporation of twenty days in April in the main canal and small ditches, during the time that the reservoir is being emptied.

If we take the length of the main canal at 40 miles and the width of water surface at 66 feet, we have an area of 320 acres, and if we allow the same area for the smaller ditches, we have 640 acres for twenty days in April, or in round numbers, the same area as the reservoir, 657 acres. The evaporation, Table 12, is given as 0.286 feet in depth for the whole month of April. As the water from the reservoir will pass over the heated, dry bed of the canal, let us allow the evaporation for the twenty days in April to be as much as that of the whole month, or 0.286 feet in depth. This depth on 657 acres is equal to 1.3 per cent. of the mean depth of the reservoir. This shows that the evaporation from reservoir and channels below reservoir is less in volume than 12 per cent. of the full reservoir.

The observations made last year at the Merced reservoir are in support of these deductions, the evaporation having been found less than that given in Table 12.

There is usually more loss of water from seepage in earthen channels than from evaporation.

In every new canal, through sandy loam, the loss by absorption at first is very serious. Gradually the ground gets saturated, and at the same time the interstices of the porous material of the bed and banks get filled up with particles of clay, which diminish the percolation. The bed of a canal acts as an *elongated filter*. It is well known that the sand of a water-works filter-bed, if it is not periodically washed, or replaced with clean sand, the interstices between its particles get filled with silt and the filter ceases to act, or acts so slowly as to be practically useless. The same thing takes place in a canal, but at a slower rate than in a filter-bed. There is less deposit in a canal, as the greater part of the finer particles of silt do not subside until the water reaches the land to be irrigated.

At first, after the completion of the canal, probably not more than 25 per cent. of the irrigable land of the district will require water. Gradually, as time goes on, small fruit farms will increase in number, and with them the area of land requiring water. At the same time the percentage of loss by percolation will decrease, and a larger quantity of water will be available than at the first opening of the canal.

The loss by percolation will be most serious in the sandy reaches of the canal. These sections can be taken in hand and puddled, one at a time, during the annual repairs, and the puddling thus spread over several years and charged to the working expenses. The puddling can be done at a time when the canal is not used for irrigation purposes.

Ribera estimated the total loss from evaporation and percolation in the Isabella Canal, in Spain, a masonry-lined channel, at two per cent.

In the Ganges Canal, in India, the largest irrigation canal in the world, with a discharge of 5,000 cubic feet

per second, or 250,000 miner's inches, the loss in 1873-74, from all causes, including evaporation, seepage and waste, was 69 per cent. The length of main and branch canals of all sizes was, however, at this time, over 4,000 miles long. The length of main canal alone was 648 miles. It is admitted that water was very wastefully used, and this, together with the great length of the channels, accounts for the extraordinary loss.

P. O'Meara, C. E., in writing on the results of irrigation in this country, attributes the principal loss of water to evaporation, and he states that:—

“The question of evaporation was so important that it was doubtful if any loss of irrigating power occurred in Colorado, other than that which was due to it.”

Walter H. Graves, C. E., in a paper read before the Society of Engineers, in Denver, Colorado, in 1886, states:—

“The factor of seepage is a variable one, depending mostly upon the nature of the soil, and gradually grows less through a long term of years. Evaporation is very nearly a constant quantity. * * * In calculating the loss from these sources in the older canals, about twelve per cent. should be deducted from the carrying capacity. Observation and experiment by the writer in various parts of Colorado, tend to show that evaporation ranges from .088 to .16 of an inch per day, during the irrigating season.”

From what has been written, it will be seen that the loss from evaporation and seepage combined varies from twelve per cent. in Colorado to sixty-nine per cent. in India. As a fair average, therefore, thirty-six per cent. is allowed for the loss of water from these causes, in computing the capacity for irrigation of the reservoir and canal of the Tulare Irrigation District.

EARTHEN DAMS.

Several objections, not founded on facts, have been urged against the reservoir, and it has been stated that an earthen dam cannot be built to impound water at a depth of fifty feet. This is a mistake. Facts prove the contrary. There is no good reason to doubt that what has been well done before in thousands of cases, in putting a large quantity of good clayey loam together to retain water, can be done again.

There are thousands of earthen dams in different parts of the world, impounding water to a depth of 50 feet or more, that are in use to-day, and that possess as much stability as the modern brick houses in which are living millions of people. Properly constructed, on a good foundation, and with a waste weir large enough to carry off the greatest rainfall, an earthen dam can be constructed to have as much stability, and as long a life, as any iron railroad bridge in the country.

An ample waste weir is the safety-valve of a reservoir.

If, by any means, the waste weir is contracted so as to diminish its discharging capacity below its requirement for the maximum rainfall, then the dam is in danger. There would be as much sense in bolting down the safety valve of a steam engine, as in obstructing a waste weir of a reservoir, and still we read that the latter has been done and caused frightful loss of life.

The top of the dam must also be kept to the level of its original height above the crest of the waste weir. Allowing the top of the dam to settle below its intended height is just as bad as raising the waste weir an equal distance. In the construction of the dam provision must be made for settlement by adding a certain percentage to its height.

It is as essential to keep a dam, its waste weir and outlet in repair, as it is to keep a house or bridge in the

same condition. Some people assert that if a dam is built it should be of masonry, as, in their opinion, this is the only material that can safely resist the pressure and erosion of the water.

A masonry or concrete dam requires to be founded on the solid rock. Clay or impervious clayey loam is not a suitable foundation for it. This is the reason why, in so many instances, the underground work on a masonry dam has cost more than that above ground, as it has to be taken down to bed rock. A masonry dam founded on clay, or other compressible material, is likely to settle and crack, and thereby cause serious trouble and expense, or its total destruction. On the other hand, while an earthen dam can, with safety, be founded on solid rock, still, its best foundation is in good clay, clayey loam, hard-pan or other similar material impervious to water. The reservoir dam proposed has for the greater part of its length a good foundation, at little depth, in clayey loam or hard-pan, and for this reason an earthen dam has been selected as being the most suitable for the location.

During the last few years railroad bridges have broken down under passenger trains, causing fearful loss of life, and Buddenseick buildings have tumbled down either during erection or soon after completion. These accidents have not prevented people from traveling by rail or living in brick houses.

Experience has proved that an earthen dam can be constructed so as to be as safe and stable as any bridge or building in the world. In this State, the Merced dam and the dams of the Spring Valley Water Company of San Francisco, are examples of safe construction. Some of them are in use for over twenty years.

India can show thousands of dams that have been in use for over a century, and that are perfectly safe now.

In the Presidency of Madras, the official records show that there are over 43,000 reservoirs in use at the present time. In an official return issued by the Irrigation Department of Bombay, on the 1st of September, 1877, there is a list of seventeen dams, either completed or in progress of construction, the lowest of which is 41 feet and the highest 101 feet high, and this is the work of only a few years. This shows that the Indian engineers have, from long experience, the fullest confidence in the stability of their earthen dams. Is it to be credited that the progressive American of the present time is not able to construct an earthen dam as well as the natives of India of the last century?

As pertinent to this subject an extract is given from a paper by the writer, published in the Transactions of the Technical Society of the Pacific Coast for June, 1885, on the

SHRINKAGE OF EARTHWORK.

“Embankments in India are often constructed by basket work, the material being carried in saucer shaped wicker baskets, containing less than a cubic foot. In the construction of embankments to retain water, this basket work is done in thin layers of less than nine inches in depth, the earth being roughly leveled up as it is deposited from the baskets, and then well punned with wooden or cast-iron rammers, weighing about twelve pounds. In addition, the constant tramping of the men, women and children employed in carrying the baskets, so consolidates the bank as to make it impervious to water. The layers of earth are sometimes watered. Embankments constructed in this manner shrink or settle very little after they are finished. They are, in fact, an approach to puddle work, though not nearly so expensive. The writer has constructed many

embankments with a grading machine, tipping from wagons from grade, wheel-barrows, hand-cars, carts, scrapers and punned basket work, and of all these he believes that punned basket work settles the least, and is the best suited for hydraulic work, and the next best work to it for a similar purpose is that done by scrapers.

“Thousands of embankments, and some of them counted among the largest and oldest dams in the world, have been constructed in India, by basket work, without any puddle wall or puddle lining; and some of them, that have been looked after and kept in repair, are as good, if not better, at the present day than when they were originally constructed, hundreds of years since. This kind of work is done much cheaper there than earthwork in this country.

“The writer has constructed embankments in the Punjab, the lead being from 100 to 200 feet, for three rupees per thousand cubic feet, that is, at the rate of four cents per cubic yard.”

The numerous reservoirs for the water supply of cities all over the United States are proof that earthen dams in large numbers, and of a greater height than 50 feet, have been constructed during the last forty years in America.

These dams are as safe as the ordinary railroad structures, and many of them are located in the midst of a dense population.

The failure of earthen dams in the United States is mainly due to the cupidity of companies or corrupt contractors. Another cause of failure is the too common belief that any ordinary laborer, that any man who has used a scraper on a county road, is fitted to superintend the construction of an earthen reservoir dam. Materials that would in some instance be suitable for a county road or a railroad embankment, would be likely to cause

destruction to a reservoir dam, and even with proper materials more care has to be taken in constructing the latter than the former, and also a different method of raising the embankment has to be adopted.

It is safe to assert that over fifty per cent. of all the dams in the world, constructed as part of the works for the water supply of cities are built of earth.

Long experience has shown the dimensions required for dams. With these dimensions, good material properly put together, a tower and outlet pipe through a tunnel in solid rock, the face of the dam covered with rip-rap, and an ample waste weir, an earthen dam can be made as safe as any structure on the best constructed railroads.

Some anxiety has been expressed about danger to the dam from gophers, but it appears that they do no sensible damage to the Merced or Spring Valley dams of this State already referred to.

CANAL ON STEEP SIDE HILL GROUND.

In the description of the different lines already given, frequent mention is made of steep side-hill work. Following the lines of the canal on the map from Horse Creek by the distinguishing letters, B, C, H, I, T, K, V, and also the loop, I, R, K, almost all the work for this distance is on steep side-hill ground, the slope in some instances being as high as twenty-six degrees, that is, a slope of two horizontal to one vertical. The material is sandy loam, hard-pan, disintegrated rock and solid granite. The depth of the rock from the surface varies considerably. Sandy loam is usually a surface covering of the other materials, and varies in depth from a few inches to six feet and more. It is much more difficult to carry a canal discharging 500 cubic feet of water per second, or 25,000 miner's inches, along such ground than it is to carry a railroad or county road.

Hydraulic miners, who have had to construct ditches and keep them in repair, know the great difficulty and expense of keeping a ditch to convey twenty-five cubic feet of water, or 1,250 miner's inches, in repair. How much more difficult, then, must it be, to convey twenty times that quantity in one ditch, that is 500 cubic feet of water per second. Other things being equal, the less the cross-sectional area of the channel, the less will be its cost, and the less the annual expense for repairs, when the velocity is kept within the limiting resistance of the materials of which the channel is composed, that is, when it is not so great as to abrade the bed and banks.

These considerations led to the adoption of the cross-section having a bottom width equal to twice the depth, for the steep, side-hill work, with the exception of the crossing of the bluff at Horse Creek, and that part of the line between the 700 and 1,100 feet tunnels. The dimensions are, bed width 14 feet, depth of water 7 feet, side slopes $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1. With a grade of 1 in 1,000, that is, 5 feet 3 inches per mile, the velocity in this channel, according to Kutter's formula with $n = .025$, is 4.65 feet per second, and the discharge 500 cubic feet per second. The levels through the hills admit of the grade given without adding materially to the length of the tunnels, and the material cut through is, on the whole, suitable for a high velocity. When the material cut through is sandy loam, or other materials that the high velocity of 4.65 feet per second in this canal would wash away, protection is afforded the banks by a facing of dry rubble masonry, and the bed will be protected with stone paving. Rock is in abundance all along the hillsides for this work.

It has been stated that this channel will not discharge 500 cubic feet per second, and that a more suitable one would be a section with a bed of 50 feet, a depth of

liable, especially for large canals. After the admission of water into the canal it was found that the velocity exceeded that originally contemplated. It was dangerous to the works and a great hindrance to navigation. Some years after the canal was in operation Major J. Crofton, R. E., was appointed to prepare plans for remodeling the canal. He made observations on the velocity in the canal, and also collected data on the same subject, which is herewith given from his report.

In a portion of the channel of the Eastern Jumna Canal lying in the old bed of the Muskurra torrent, where the current seemed perfectly adjusted to a *light, sandy soil*, Major Brownlow, the Superintendent of the canal, found the velocities of the surface to be from 2.38 to 2.28 feet per second, or mean velocities (multiplying by 0.81), 1.928 to 1.847 feet per second.

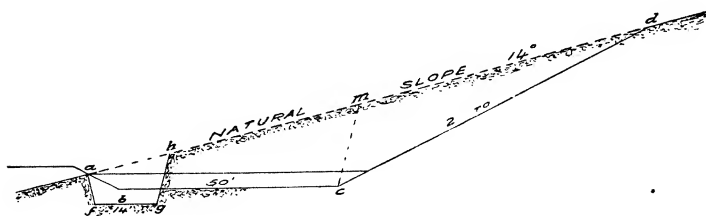
In the lower district of the same canal, near Barote and Deola, the maximum surface velocities, with a fair supply, were found to be 2.817 and 2.507 feet per second, or mean velocity of 2.282 and 2.03 feet per second. Silt is constantly being deposited here.

About 1,000 feet below the Ghoona Falls, on the same canal, in *very* sandy soil, with nearly a full supply of water, the maximum surface velocity was 3.077 feet per second; no erosion from bed or banks, except when a supply, much in excess of the maximum allowed, is passing down.

Below the Nyashahur bridge on the same canal, where the soil is clay, shingle and small bowlders, Lieutenant Moncrieff, R. E., found the mean surface velocity to be 6.75 feet per second, or the mean velocity about 5.47 per second. The same officer observed the surface velocity at some distance below the Yarpoor Falls in the new center division channel of the Eastern Jumna Canal, and obtained a mean of 3.96 feet per second, or about

water $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet, with side slopes of 2 to 1. The latter section, with a slope of two feet per mile will, according to Kutter's formula with $n = .025$, give a velocity of 2.5 feet per second and a discharge of 500 cubic feet per second. The small section will discharge just as much as this large one, and its cost will be much less. The principal objection to the large section is its expense.

Fig. 205.



Cut	a f g h	-	151	sq ft.
	a b c d	=	1218	" "
	a b c m	=	634	" "

Figure 205 is a diagram drawn to a scale of thirty feet to the inch, showing the two channels on side-hill ground. The slope of the ground is fourteen degrees. This is about an average slope on the bad ground. The cross-section a, f, g, h , adopted for the steep side-hill ground in this report has an area in round numbers, of 151 square feet, and the cross-section of a, b, c, d , with a bed 50 feet wide, and side slopes of 2 to 1 has an area of 1,218 square feet, that is, in the latter, about eight times as much material will have to be moved as in the former section. If, again, the slope c, m , be made $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1, then the area a, b, c, m , is equal to 634 square feet, that is more than four times as much as the section adopted.

The large section is not, under any circumstances, the right one for steep side-hill ground, although it is, in some cases, suitable for a canal in the plains. An in-

spection of the cross-sections in Figure 205, will make this very evident.

In Figure 205, the cutting is made of such a depth that the water is all in soil, that is, that the depth of cutting is made equal to the depth of water in the channel. If, however, the canal, instead of being in cutting is in embankment equal to or less than $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet, and the surface of the water in the small channel, be at the same level as in the larger one, the advantage is still in favor of the smaller section. Where it can be done with advantage the intention is to keep the adopted section *a*, *f*, *g*, *h*, in about five feet depth of cutting, at the point, *f*, that is, that the vertical depth of the bed at *f* will be five feet below the surface of the ground at *a*. As the depth of water in this section is 7 feet there will be 2 feet in depth of water in embankment. The top of the bank will be 6 feet wide and will be $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet above the water, and its outer slope in earth 2 to 1, that is, for every two feet horizontal there will be one foot vertical.

If necessary, the cross-section will be varied to suit the ground, keeping the depth of water seven feet in all cases in side-hill ground.

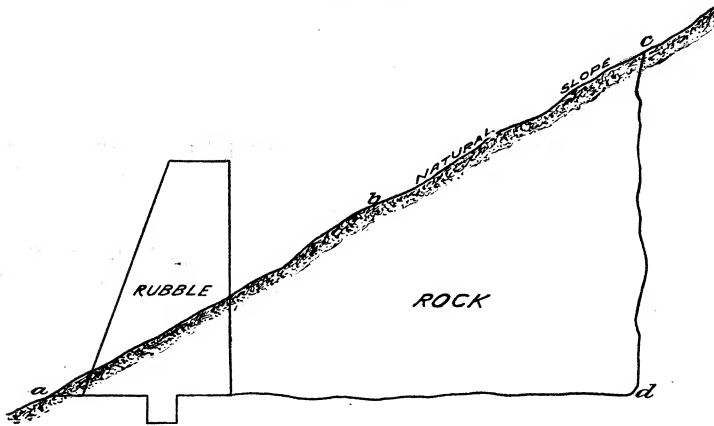
As a rule, the best but most expensive plan, for a canal in loamy soil in steep side-hill, is to put the section in cut equal to the full depth of the water.

In passing the bold rocky point at Horse Creek, and also in that portion of the line between the tunnels I and T, the rock will be taken out in the shape of a right-angled triangle, as shown in cross-section at *a*, *d*, *c*, Figure 206. Then a wall of uncoursed rubble masonry in lime mortar will be built on the lower side. The inner side of this wall will have a coat of plaster composed of Portland cement and sand.

As an additional precaution to prevent percolation, a groove will be cut in the rock under the wall, which

groove will be filled with concrete and this concrete will be joined with and form part of the rubble wall. The cross-section of the channel inside the rubble wall will be nine feet on a level bed, with vertical sides. The wall will be eight feet high, two feet wide on top and

Fig. 206.



five feet on the bottom, with the side next the water vertical and the outside battered. The grade of this channel will be 1 in 200 or 26.4 per mile. The cross-section and grade of this channel, from its bed to the surface of the water, will be the same as that of the tunnels at each end of it.

This section of the line from the upper end of the 700 foot tunnel to the lower end of the 1,100 foot tunnel will be the best part of the line. There will be less loss of water by evaporation and percolation, less expense in annual repairs, and less danger of breaches than in any other part of the line through the hills of an equal length.

It has before been mentioned that the discharge through the tunnels can be doubled by giving the bottom and sides a smooth plastered surface. The same

thing can be done in the channel 2,400 feet in length, between the two tunnels which has the same sectional area as the latter. This is a fact well known to hydraulic engineers, that the new and improved formulæ give an increased discharge in proportion to the smoothness of the material over which the water flows. This fact was not taken into account in the old formulæ, which are now known not to give the true discharge under all conditions of channel.

Materials for building the rubble will cost very little. After the excavation there will be sufficient rock for the work at hand; the bed of the Kaweah River, a short distance away, will supply the sand required; lime is burned within half a mile of the work, and water is in abundance in Mr. Pogue's ditch. In the remainder of side-hill ground from Horse Creek to V, a similar section, 16 feet wide on bottom, can, no doubt, be adopted in several places, but this can be ascertained only after the surface covering of sandy loam is removed. This part of the line has a grade of 1 in 1000, or 5.28 feet per mile.

A level bed 16 feet in width, with vertical sides, holding seven feet in depth of water with this grade, will, according to Kutter's formula, with $n = .025$, give a velocity of 4.53 feet per second, and a discharge of 507 cubic feet per second.

RAINFALL.

An inspection of the rainfall of Tulare given in tables* will show that, during the ten years from 1874 to 1884, three years had total depth of rainfall for each year of less than four inches, three years of less than seven inches, three years of less than ten inches, and one year

* Tables not given in this Report.

of 11.65 inches, which was the maximum during this period.

This plainly shows the necessity for irrigation in this district and nothing further will be said on this subject.

A rainfall of 10 to 12 inches properly distributed will mature a crop in this district.

The catchment basin of the reservoir, including the area of the latter, is 20 square miles. The reservoir is a little more than one square mile in area.

In order to show the height which a large rainfall would raise the reservoir, let us assume that the reservoir is full to the level of waste weir, and that no water can flow out of it through the waste weir or otherwise. In this state of affairs let the canal flow 500 cubic feet per second for one hour, whilst at the same time an extraordinary rainfall of three inches per hour takes place, of which 50 per cent. reaches the reservoir. At the end of one hour the reservoir would have risen 2 feet 7 inches, leaving the top of the dam 3 feet 5 inches above the surface of the water.

This is a state of the reservoir not possible under any circumstances. The waste weirs will be always open and discharging to the capacity of the depth of water on them. A very heavy rainfall usually lasts but a short time, and the large capacity of the reservoir prevents a dangerous elevation of its surface during heavy rains.

The total length of the waste weirs at each end of the dam must be made of sufficient capacity to carry off the flood water (computed by Dicken's formula), in addition to 500 cubic feet per second from the Kaweah River. A sufficient length of waste weir will be given so that the depth of water on its crest will not be greater than three feet. This would leave the top of the dam three feet above the surface of flood water.

PREVENTION OF WASTE OF WATER.

Two methods have been adopted to prevent waste of water. One by measurement and the second by making the irrigators raise all the water they use from the supply canals. There are two methods used in India, in supplying water, known as *flush* and *lift*. In flush irrigation the water flows by gravitation on to the land to be irrigated. In lift irrigation the water reaches the land at such a low level that it cannot flow over the surface of the land to be irrigated. This requires power of some kind, usually manual labor, to raise the water sufficiently to enable it to flow over the land. So great was the loss from waste in India some years since, that it was seriously proposed to supply all the water at such a level, that it should be lifted some height, however small, before it could be used. It would then be to the interest of the irrigators to prevent waste. In this country the best method to prevent waste is by

MEASUREMENT OF WATER.

A meter for measuring water for irrigation purposes must be cheap and simple in construction and must cause little loss of head. No machine has yet been invented that fulfills all these conditions. The great difficulty is the fluctuation of the level of the water in the main canal.

It is believed, however, that a machine can be devised to fulfill these conditions that will give a close approximation to the quantity of water used. When the same method of measurement is used toward all the irrigators they will be treated on perfect equality and no one will have good reason to complain of injustice more than another.

DRAINAGE.

As a rule the drainage of irrigated land will take care of itself, if the natural drainage channels are left free and unobstructed. These channels should not be used as drainage channels and also for purposes of irrigation. Nature, the best engineer, located them to convey water from the land. They cannot, with advantage, be used for irrigation and drainage, and when so used the worst results invariably follow.

If the sub-soil and surface water cannot escape freely by the natural channels, super-saturation follows and the ground becomes water-logged.

We have not to go far to see the evil effect of too much irrigation with defective drainage. A dense growth of weeds on the land and enervating malaria are the sure followers of bad drainage.

To avoid this, stringent rules should be enforced to prevent the use of the natural drainage channels for any purpose whatever, but that of conveying away the drainage water that reaches them.

EMPLOYMENT OF LOCAL LABOR.

A great deal of the work, including all the earthwork, could be done by petty contract or day labor, and, in this way, employment could be given, after the harvest is over, to a large number of the residents of the district, who would be willing to do the work.

In what I have above written, I have covered all the points contained in your instructions to me. In conclusion I have to acknowledge the assistance, which as Directors of Tulare Irrigation District, individually and collectively, you have at all times given me.

Respectfully presented,

P. J. FLYNN.

INDEX.

	Page		Page
Abbot (see Humphreys).		Barota.....	37
Abraiding Power of Water...	43-51	Barrage (see also Weirs).81, 96,	98
	62-65	99, 101, 102, 270	
Absorption (see Percolation).		Barrage of the Nile.81, 82, 83, 95, 197	
Abyssinia.....	63	Bars of Grating, Plan of.....	209
Acequia.....	153	Barton, Stephen.....	234
Afflux on Weir.....	101, 110	Bayou La Fourche.....	40
Africa, Lakes of Central.....	63	Bayou Plaquemine.....	32
Alginet Syphon, Spain.....	182	Bazin.....	41, 42, 185, 258
Alkali (reh).....	19, 68, 328, 329	Beas River.....	150, 151
	330, 332, 336	Bench Marks.....	254, 244, 257
American and Indian Irrigation		Bends in Canals.....	28
Canals Compared.....	2-5	Bengal Revenue Report.....	105
American Irrigation.....	279	Beresford, J. S.....	290, 326, 364
American Society of Civil En-		Berm.....	27, 28
gineers, Transactions of..	61, 128	Berthoud, Captain Edward L.18,	28
	172, 197, 245, 322, 340, 342	Betwa Weir.....	119
Anderson, G. G.....	2, 329	Béton (see Concrete).	
Anicut (see also Weirs).81, 87,	95	Bhim Tal Dam.....	119
	108, 109, 115	Binnie, A. R.....	318
Atella, Spain.....	182	Blackwell, T. E.....	50
Apron...87, 96, 106, 108, 109, 114		Blocks, Foundation.77, 78, 79, 105	
	117, 120, 121, 123, 193	111, 112, 113, 114, 115	
Aquatic Plants (see weeds).		Boats on Canals.....	104, 241
Aqueducts....46, 79, 150-164, 175		Bombay Presidency Irrigation	
	228, 241, 252	Report.....	274
Ashlar.105, 108, 110, 115, 119, 120		Boom.....	153
Ashti Tank, or Reservoir..324, 325		Borings.....	348, 349
Asphalt.....	174, 294, 295	Boulders...46, 51, 87, 88, 96, 150	
Astronomer Royal, English... 49		163, 186, 215, 217, 218, 351	
Asufnuggur Falls....192, 193, 194		Boyd, Mr.....	322
Atbara River.....	63	Branch Canals.....	221
Aymard, M.....	182	Breast Wall.....	177
Back-water.....	96, 98, 260	Bridge.... 84, 86, 98, 99, 127, 149	
Baker, Sir B.....	57, 326	152, 169, 185, 191, 193, 241	
Bakersfield.....	88	Bridge Foot.....85, 89, 101, 146	
Banks (see Embankments).		"Bridge of Blessings".....	98
Banks, Dimensions of Canal..26-29		Browne, Major J.....	62
Bar.....	86, 111, 273	Brownlow, Major.37, 111, 187, 257	
		Brunel.....	147

	Page		Page
Buffon, Nadault de.....	324	Canal, Ganges, Upper..	12, 26, 29
Buriya Torrent.....	177	30, 38, 40, 82, 95, 112, 120,	125
Burke, G. J.....	336	127, 130, 158, 159, 161, 166,	167
		170, 185-187, 192, 193, 198,	199
Cairo, in Egypt.....	198, 270	228, 249, 251. 286, 290, 292,	304
California Irrigationist.....	265	Canal, Genil.....	293
Canals, A List of Irrigation.	29, 30	317, 325, 335,	339
	31	Canal, Grand River, Colorado..	17
Canals divided into Two Classes.	1, 2	31, 153	
Canal, Agra..	14, 30, 106, 177, 228	Canal, Hansi Branch, Western	
	324, 331	Jumna Canal.....	39
Canal, Alpines.....	31	Canal, Henares..	27, 30, 87, 119, 120
Canal, Arizona.....	31	134, 163, 270, 298, 317, 340,	344
Canal, Arles.....	35	345, 346	
Canal, Arrah.....	33	Canal, High Line, Colorado...	31
Canal, Baree Doab..	12, 14, 30, 35	232, 323	
39, 150, 193, 195, 197, 202-205		Canal, Ibrahimia.....	30
215, 217, 300		Canal, Idaho Canal Co.'s...	31, 128
Canal, Bear River, Utah....	90, 157	Canal, Idaho Mining & Irriga-	
	159	tion Co.'s.....	31
Canal, Beruegado.....	242	Canal, Isabella II,....	30, 244, 324
Canal, Boise River.....	229	Canal, Istres.....	35
Canal, Buxar.....	33	Canal, Ivrea.....	30, 268
Canal, Calloway.	31, 88, 89, 214, 331	Canal, Jucar, The Royal....	50, 182
Canal, Cajon.....	340	Canal, Jumna, Eastern...1, 30,	37
Canal, Carpentaras.....	31	112, 188, 249, 258, 286,	302
Canal, Cauvery.....	312	Canal, Jumna.....	36, 335
Canal, Cavour..	25, 30, 35, 87, 121	Canal, Jumna, Western..	14, 30, 39
122, 125, 129, 152, 179		286, 328	
Canal, Central Irrigation, Dis-		Canal, Kotluh, branch of Sutlej	
trict California...	25, 28, 31, 175	Canal.....	224, 225
	176 177	Canal, Kurnool.....	312
Canal, Cigliano.....	30, 268, 269	Canal, Larimer.....	31
Canal, Citizens, Colorado.....	31	Canal, Lorca.....	293
Canal, Crappone.....	31, 35, 269	Canal, Lozoya, Spain.....	182
Canal, Del Norte.....	31, 35, 128	Canal, Marseilles...31, 230, 269,	234
Canal, Delta, Main, Egypt....	30	300, 324	
Canal, Eagle Rock and Willow		Canal, Martesana...30, 35, 228,	229
Creek.....	31	259, 323	
Canal, Elche.....	293	Canal, Mazzafargarh.....	286
Canal, Empire.....	31	Canal, Merced.....	31, 88, 232
Canal, Esla.....	299, 344-346	Canal, Midnapore.....	139
Canal, Forez.....	293	Canal, Mijares.....	182
Canal, Fort Morgan.....	31	Canal, Mussel Slough, Califor-	
Canal, Ganges, Lower..	30, 110, 151	nia.....	340

	Page		Page
Canal, Muzza.....	30, 228, 229	Cement, Hydraulic.....	115, 121
Canal, Nagar (flood).....	30	Central California Colony.....	366
Canal, Naviglio Grande.....	35, 228, 274	Chains.....	84, 134, 146
Canal, North Poudre.....	31, 153, 157	Chailly.....	51
Canal, Nira.....	27, 293	Chains, Formula for Finding Tension on.....	137
Canal, Ojhar Tāmbat.....	325	Channeling.....	36
Canal, Orissa.....	340	Channels, Economical.....	69, 73
Canal, Oureq.....	31	Channels, Deep and Narrow....	73
Canal, Palkhed.....	274, 325	Channel, Maximum Discharg- ing.....	12, 14
Canal, Phyllis.....	31	Checks or Drops (see Falls)....	
Canal, Platte, High Line.....	154, 155	Checks for Flooding.....	281, 282, 283
Canal, Quinto Sella.....	25	Check-making.....	265
Canal, Rotto.....	30, 268, 269	Chivasso Bridge, Italy.....	121
Canal, New, from Rhone,....	299 324	Chukkee Torrent.....	150
Canal, Sahel.....	30	Cistern, Depth of, below Fall..	198
Canal, San Joaquin and King's River.....	31	Clamped, Cut Stones.....	116
Canal, Santa Clara.....	340	Clearance of Silt from Canals..	19
Canal, Seventy-six.....	31	21, 24, 25, 33, 35, 52, 55, 237, 258 273, 274, 330	
Canal, Sirsawiah.....	30	Coast Range of Mountains, Cal- ifornia.....	176
Canal, Sone....	14, 30, 33, 103, 222 228, 256, 257, 286	Coffer Dams.....	115
Canal, Soonkasela.....	30	Colorado, Faulty Designs and Construction of Canals in....	34
Canal, St. Julian.....	31	Colorado, Irrigation in....	279, 282, 283
Canal, Subk.....	30	Colmatage.....	65-68
Canal, Sukkur.....	210-212	Compartments by Checks.....	281, 282
Canal, Sutlej or Sirhind....	11, 14 29, 30, 172, 177, 225, 242, 243	Colusa.....	175
Canal, Grand, of Ticino.....	30	Concrete.....	77, 79, 110, 112, 114, 115 119-123, 159, 176, 179, 237, 262 294, 375, 385
Canal, Turlock, California..	31, 197	Construction.....	262
Canal, Tomtaganoor.....	340	Corbett, Major.....	289
Canal, Uncompahgre.....	31, 152, 531 215	Cost of Canals per acre Irrigated and per Cubic Foot per Sec- ond.....	295, 339 340
Canal, Verdon, France....	179, 234 270	Cost of Irrigation per acre in Different Countries.....	272, 336, 337
Canal, Wutchumna.....	231	Cost of Pumping and of Water. 270-272	
Canterbury Plains, New Ze- land.....	197, 323	Cotton, Sir A.....	242
Carlet, Spain.....	182	Crest of Fall, Raising.....	199
Syphon (see Inverted Syphon).			
Carpenter, Prof. L. G.....	341		
Catchwater Drain.....	28, 67, 240		
Cantley, Sir Proby.....	36, 95, 185, 186 187, 192, 254		
Cavour Canal, Weir.....	87		

3.21 feet per second mean velocity through entire section. The soil here is light and sandy, and the channel has been both widened and deepened by the current.

In one of the rajbuhās, or main water-courses of the same canal, weeds were found growing in the bed and on the sides with a maximum surface velocity of 2.12 feet per second, or mean velocity of about 1.72 feet per second. The soil is sandy with a fair admixture of clay; silt accumulates to a troublesome extent.

In another rajbuha (lateral or distributary), in the same neighborhood, a surface velocity of 2.38 feet per second, or mean about 1.93 feet per second was found. Silt deposits here, but no weeds appear to grow.

In the Mahmoodpoor left bank rajbuha of the Ganges Canal, grass and weeds were found growing in the channel with a maximum surface velocity of 1.72 feet per second, or mean of 1.4 feet per second.

In the Buhadoorabad Lock channel, Ganges Canal, weeds appear to grow wherever the maximum surface velocity is 2.38 feet, or mean velocity 1.93 feet or under. Soil generally light and sandy.

On the Ganges Canal velocities were found as follows:— Below the Roorkee bridge on the main canal, where the deepened bed is covered with silt, and erosion from the sides has ceased, the mean velocity in the entire section was 2.92 feet per second; the soil sandy with a tolerable admixture of clay.

In the widened channel at the Toghulpoor sand hills, 36th mile, the mean velocity with full supply was 2.53 feet per second.

In the embanked channel across the Solani valley, with a supply of two inches under the present maximum on the Roorkee gauge, the mean velocity, obtained by calculation from the area of the water section there and the observed discharge through the masonry aqueduct,

	Page		Page
Crest of Weir....	103, 104, 105, 107	Delta of the Nile.....	6, 98
108, 112, 115, 124, 125, 360,	374	Denver Society of Civil En-	
	384	gineers....	2, 3, 18, 274, 287, 290
Crevasses.....	87		316, 321, 329, 373
Cribs.....	88, 90, 92, 186	Deodar Wood.....	205
Crofton, Major....	26, 161, 186, 193	Deola.....	37
	224, 242	Depositing Basins....	46, 52, 56, 58
Cross-section of Channels..	13, 19		229-232
27, 28, 69, 70, 256, 261, 380,	382	Depth to bed, width of Canal..	12-17
Cross-section on Steep Hill side			241
	12, 380	Development of Water...2,	234-238
Crown of Weir (see Crest of Weir)		Deyrah Dhoon Water Courses..	45
Culcheth, W. W.....	317		229
Culverts.....	149, 150, 177	Dhunowree Dam.....	112
Cunningham, Major Allen.	137, 318	Dhunowree Level Crossing..	166, 167
Curbs, Well.....	78, 114		170
Curtain Walls.....	33, 111, 114	Diamond Drills.....	237
Curves.....	28, 244	Dickens, Col. C. H....	105, 254, 257
Cuttings.....	68, 70, 241	Dimensions of Canals.....	12-17
Cylinders.....	77, 159	Distributaries....	19, 29, 36, 67, 184
			197, 245, 246-262, 277, 281, 282
Dams, Boulder.....	66, 82		291, 292
Dams, Earthen, for Reservoirs.	374	Ditching.....	264
	375, 376	Diversion, Weirs (see Weirs).	
Dam in River, Location of..	86, 90	Dora Baltea Aqueduct in Italy.	152
Dams, Masonry, for Reservoirs	375		153
Dams, Reservoir..	360-364, 374-376	Dora Baltea River.....	60
Dams in Rivers...9, 83, 84, 85,	230	Dorsy, E. B.....	61, 322, 340
	358-360	Dove-tail Joints.....	91
Dams, Submerged...2, 237, 262,	265	Dowlaiswaram Branch of God-	
Dam, Temporary.....	87, 88	avery Anicut.....	115, 116
Damietta, branch of the Nile..	97	Drainage...7, 26, 28, 29, 67, 68,	275
	98, 99, 101, 102		277, 327-331, 386
Danube.....	64	Drainage Area of Rivers....	64, 150
D'Arcy.....	147, 185	Drainage, Main, in London...	50
Daubisson.....	111	Dredger, Canal..	263, 265-268
Davenport, W. H.....	231	Dredging.....	33, 52, 55
Davidson, Prof. G....	87, 300, 364	Drift Belts.....	90
Deakin, The Hon. Alfred..	268, 270	Drifts, Tunnel.....	237
	279, 308, 338	Drop, Big, Grand River Canal,	
Defective Irrigation....	33, 332-336	Colorado.....	153
Dehri.....	33	Drop Gate.....	84, 134, 169, 226
Delhi.....	106, 108	Drops (see Falls).....	
Delta.....	6, 7, 10, 59, 98, 270, 339	Drop Wall (see Curtain Wall).	

	Page		Page
Drought.....	113	Eytelwein's Formula for Open	
Dubuat's Formula...36, 41, 43,	185	Channels	172
Dupuit.....	147		
Dutac, Messrs.....	66	Fahey, C. E.....	80
Durance River, Silt in...59, 60,	63	Failure of Dams.....	377
	230	Falls...25, 33, 34, 36, 37, 46, 87	
Duty of Water...11, 251, 286, 289		109, 120, 149, 184, 185, 189-215	
to 293, 295, 298, 301, 302, 304, 313		241, 255, 256, 273	
341, 364, 365		Fall, Timber.....	191, 196, 214
Dwyer's Formula for Mean Ve-		Fall, Vertical.....	87, 109, 119, 192
locity.....	15	195, 197, 202, 209	
Dyas, Col. J. H....39, 40, 200, 205		Famine.....	335
		Farmington	61
Earning, Annual, of a Cubic		Fascines	88
Foot of Water per second... 338		Fernow, B. E.....	306
339		Fertilizing Silt.....	21, 56-62
Earthwork, Shrinkage of...75, 76		Figari Bey.....	270, 271
376-378		Filtration (see Percolation).	
Eaton, Fred.....	294	Flanks of Dam...84, 95, 101, 113	
Egypt...56, 57, 63, 82, 98, 99, 326		116, 117, 124	
Egypt, Lower...2, 97, 98, 99, 103		Flash Boards...89, 92, 176, 192, 214	
Elche, in Spain	364	Floats, Gauging.....	325
Embankments, Breaches in...69, 253		Flood, Discharge of River.....	151
260, 274		Floods in Rivers...95, 98, 99, 101	
Embankments, River...66, 68, 69		105, 106, 110-113, 124	
70, 75, 97, 98, 106, 107, 113, 150		Flooding, Irrigation by...279, 283	
152, 157, 159, 160, 161, 190, 191		333	
219, 241, 376		Flooding, Size of Compartments	
Engineer (London).....	335	for	279
Engineering.....	143, 148	Flooring, Masonry...83, 84, 95, 96	
Engineering News...228, 312, 332		101, 109, 114-116	
Epinal.....	65, 66	Flooring, Plank.....	80
Equalizing, Cuttings and Em-		Flumes (see Aqueducts).	
bankments.....	68-72	Flush Irrigation....285, 286, 358	
Erosion of Bed and Banks.... 13		Flynn, P. J.....	347
36-40, 43-47, 80, 82, 83, 117, 121		Foote, A. D...61, 229, 292, 341-344	
165, 183, 188-191, 195, 199, 228		Forestry and Irrigation.....	278
273, 274, 379		304-307	
Escapes.....29, 121, 124, 149, 175		Forrest, R. E.46, 249, 251, 292, 304	
177, 221, 226-229		Foundations....77-79, 82, 85, 90	
Evaporation...277, 288-291, 302, 310		99, 101, 102, 105, 106, 109, 111	
316-320, 321, 366, 368-373		112, 113, 114, 116, 120	
Excavation to Balance Embank-		Fouracres, C.....	138, 139, 142
ment	10	Fouracres' Excavator.....	105, 140

	Page		Page
Irrigation Channels, Old River		Lifting Sluice	144
Beds as	6	Limestone Country	59
Irrigation Canals, Works of	77	Linant Pasha	320
Irrigation, From River	7	Locks	1, 33, 53, 101, 104, 117
Irrigation, Improved System,		125, 170, 241, 242,	277
Egypt	57, 103	Login, T.	14, 26, 49, 186, 187, 195
Irrigation, Stoppage of	69		197
Irrigation, Limit	10	Loire, River	49
		Lozoya Dam, Spain	119
Jackson, L. D'A	43		
Jaolee Falls	39	MacLean, L. F.	222
Jeffreys, Major W.	110, 111	Madhapore	224
Jumna River	102, 106	Madras	95, 108
		Madras Presidency	60, 82
Kali Nudee Aqueduct	151	Madras, System of Weirs	106, 109
Kaweah River, California	231, 347	Madrid Evaporation	317
361, 366, 383		Mahanuddy River	63
Kern County, California, Irrigation System	280	Mahanuddy Headworks	135, 137
Kern River	88	Mahewah Valley	111
Kern River Dam	83, 214	Mahmoodhoor Rajbuha (Distributary)	38
Kilgour, Mr.	59	Maintenance and Operation of Irrigation Canals	253, 257
Kingsbridge, Tulare County, California, Evaporation at	316	273-278,	336
Kistna River, Delta	59, 63	Majanar Torrent	163
Kunkur	110, 112, 175	Malad River, Corinne Branch, Iron Flume	157, 159
Kurrachee	106, 213	Malad River, West Branch, High Flume	156
Kutter	43, 200, 202, 210	Manure	56, 58, 59, 61, 62, 64
Kutter's Formula	21, 45, 172, 379	Marcite Cultivation	298
		Masonry	78, 83, 102, 105, 106
Lago Maggiore	124	120,	375
Lahore	224	Masonry Channels	14, 45
Lang, Major A. M.	105, 110, 115	Measurement of Water, Modules, Meters	341-346, 385
La Gosse	66	Mediterranean	98
Laterals (see Distributaries)		Medley, Colonel J. G.	46
Latham, Baldwin	51	Merced Dam	375, 378
Latham, J. H.	60	Methods of Irrigation	279-289
Le Conte, Professor J.	48	Midnapore, Rainfall in	59
Leakage (see Percolation)		Mills	269
Lamairese, M.	319	Mississippi	40, 64
Leslie, Sir John	51	Mississippi, Slope of	32
Levees, River	87	Miner's Inch of Water	361
Level Crossing	134, 151, 164-170		
220			
Lift Irrigation	285, 286		

	Page		Page
Moncrieff, Gen'l Sir C. C.	37, 60	O'Meara, P.	94, 153, 157, 279, 313
65, 99, 101, 182, 187, 301, 320	364		322
Morin	43	Ontario Land Improvement Co.	234
Morton, Lieut. W. S.	261, 262	Orissa	135
Moors of Spain.	182	Orissa Canals, Cost of.	339
Moselle River.	65, 66	Orme, Dr. H. S.	333
Mougul, M.	99	Outfall into River	331
Movable Dams.	104, 105, 128-146	Overfalls.	167
Mud Sills	89	Panel.	90
Mulching.	288	Paving.	124, 379
Muskurra River.	37, 188	Peculiarities of American En-	
Myapore Dam.	83, 95, 96	gineering	89, 105, 153
Myapore Regulating Bridge.	126	Penstock.	153
	127	Percolation.	10, 58, 60, 63, 68, 69
Myers	150	77, 94, 111, 112, 113, 120, 147, 148	
		149, 152, 161, 276, 277, 282, 291	
Nagpore, Evaporation in.	318	302, 304, 321-326, 366, 368-373	
Napoleon	57	Periar River, India	233
Navigation Canals. 1, 11, 12, 35, 36		Persia	305
103, 125, 170, 222, 240-243		Pharaonic System of Irrigation	57
Narora Weir.	87, 95, 108, 109, 110	Phoenix, Arizona	87
	112	Phosphoric Acid.	57
Needle Dams.	132, 221-224, 226	Piers of Bridges.	86
Neva, Slope of.	32	Piles	89, 115, 169
Neville's Hydraulics.	40, 44, 185	Piling, Sheet.	89, 193, 199
Newarree Bridge.	39	Piles, Iron.	159
Newka, Slope of.	32	Pipes.	139, 147, 181, 182, 186, 220
Night, Use of Water at.	293		262
Nile, Blue.	63	Pipe Inlet.	128
Nile River.	56, 57, 64, 98, 99, 101	Pipe Outlet.	253, 254
	102	Pipe Irrigation	293-298, 333
Nile, Silt in.	34, 62, 272	Pipe Irrigation System, On-	
Nira Canal, India, Cross-sec-		tario, California	296
tion of.	27	Plank Gate	129
North Poudre River, Weir.	90	Planking.	87, 90
Nowgong Dam	188	Planks on Weir.	85, 260, 261
Nyashahur Bridge.	37	Plantations.	278
		Planting of Trees.	304
Off-take of Canal	54	Platform, Masonry. 96, 101, 102, 103	
Ogee Falls.	46, 87, 120, 192, 195	Plaster.	352
	209	Plow	264, 272, 283, 289
Ohio, Slope of.	32	Plunger.	139
Okhla Weir.	87, 95, 96, 102, 105	Plum Creek.	153
106, 108, 112, 113, 114, 125		Pondicherry	319

	Page		Page
Po, River.....	121	Retaining Walls.....	238-240
Po, River, Silt in.....	60, 63	Retrogression of Levels.....	36, 111
Portland Cement.....	217		114, 161, 183-189
Posts on Weir.....	85	Revenue from Distributaries..	259
Potash, Salts of.....	57	Rhine, Silt in River.....	63
Powell, Major.....	308	Rhine, Slope of River.....	32
Professional Papers on Indian		Ribera	324
Engineering...105, 110, 115,	137	Rip Rap.....	360, 378
205, 209, 210, 215, 248, 289,	317	Ritso, G. F.	197, 323
	319	Rivers, Change of Course.....	6
Prony	41	Rivers, in Flood..52, 55, 62, 68, 81	
Prise or Headworks	182		84, 86
Protecting Banks	84, 87	Rivers, North Poudre.....	90
Public Works Department, In-		Rivers, Raising Bed of.....	66
dia	105, 276	Rivers, Sandy Bed	79, 87
Puddle, Clay....110, 111, 115, 152		Rivers, Slope of.....	32
156, 175, 262, 323, 360, 374		Rivers, Water for Irrigation..	58-60
Pumping.....2, 115, 270, 271, 272		Roadway on Bank of Canal..26, 274	
Punjab Rivers.....	59	Rock Cutting.....	156, 382
Puttri Torrent.....	170	Roorkee	160, 318, 319
		Roorkee Bridge.	38, 40
Rainfall..59, 64, 149, 172, 263, 290		Roorkee Civil Engineering Col-	
305, 308-315, 320, 374, 383, 384		lege	159
Rajhubas (see Distributaries)..		Roorkee Gauge.....	38
Ranipore Torrent....170, 171, 174		Roorkee Treatise on Civil En-	
Rankine	41, 239	gineering....46, 85, 96, 169, 260	
Rapids.....51, 192, 215-218			277
Ratchets.	134	Rosetta, branch of Nile..97, 98, 99	
Ravi Bridge	49		101, 102
Ravi River.....150, 224		Royal Engineers.....	186
Regimen of Rivers.....83, 273		Rubble	120, 381-383
Regulator...79, 80, 85, 89, 95, 96		Rubble, Dry.....	105, 106, 108
101, 121, 124-137, 149, 165, 169		Rubble, Pitching.....	101, 109
184, 191, 221, 222, 227, 243, 259		Rutmoo River.....	167
Regulating Bridge (see Regula-			
tor).		Sacramento Valley.....	176
Reh (see Alkali).		Sainjon, Chief Engineer.	49
Relief Gates (see Escapes).		Sâkiyehs.	271
Revy, Mr.....	42	Solani Aqueduct. ....38, 77, 153	
Repairs to Canals..69, 87, 273, 277			158-163
(see also Clearance of Canals).		Saluggia.....	268
Reservoirs.....58-60, 75, 81, 294		San Antonia Tunnel, Cali-	
304, 305, 318, 351, 360-364, 366		fornia	234
374, 377, 384		San Bernardino Valley.....	235
Reservoir and Canal	366-368	San Gabriel.....	295

	Page		Page
Sand Boxes (see Depositing Basins).		Silt.....	5, 9, 18, 25, 26, 29, 33-35
Sand Dams.....	79	37-39, 46-48, 52, 53, 57, 59-64	
Sand, Quick.....	237	66, 67, 80-83, 115, 117, 124, 126	
Sandstone.....	115	257, 260, 277	
Saone, Slope of.....	32	Silting up...65-68, 81, 89, 93, 108	
Scougall, H.....	330	112, 121, 124, 125, 189, 190, 226	
Scour..53, 56, 84, 86, 93, 108, 113		229, 257, 275	
117, 135, 136, 140		Silting Up, To Prevent.....	24, 104
Scouring Sluices (see Under Sluices).		Silt, On Keeping Irrigation	
Scraper, Buck....	265	Canals Clean of.....	52-56
Scraper, Iron.....	264	Silt Traps (see Depositing Basins).	
Scraper, V Shape.....	264	Sind, Inundation Canals in..	29, 81
Sea, Level, Mean.....	106	Sirdhana.....	40
Season for Irrigation..278, 315, 362		Skips.....	115
Section, Constant Cross.....	25	Slabs, Stone.....	79
Seesooan Superpassage....171, 173		Sleeper Planks.....	84, 130, 169
Seine River, Weirs on.....	135	Sliding Sluices.....	80, 134, 135
Seine River, Slope of.....	31	Slime, (see Silt.....)	101
Senate Report U. S....262, 281, 283		Slope of Bed of Canal (see Grade).	
Sesia Torrent, Italy.....	179	Slope, Natural, of Materials..	20, 73
Sewers, Storm.....	46	Slope of Canal Increases from	
Sewers, Velocity in....46, 50, 51		Head to Tail.....	21
Shadoofs.....	271	Stoney, F. M. G.....	144
Shafts.....	182	Sluices.....	98, 105, 128-146, 281
Shafts, Tunnel.....	237, 263	Sluices, Head..25, 52, 53, 56, 89	
Shahpur Inundation Canal....	286	95, 96, 99, 104, 115, 117	
Sheet Piling.....	123	Sluices, Under..53, 55, 77, 79, 80	
Streeviguntum Anicut..87, 108, 109		83, 95, 96, 103-106, 108-110, 114	
Shoals.....	86	115, 117, 121, 124-127, 138	
Shrinkage of Earthwork....69, 72		Smith, Colonel Baird.....	116, 317
75, 374, 376		Snow.....	26
Shutters for Weirs..54, 55, 56, 95		Sorgues River.....	60
104, 105, 128-146, 359		Spain.....	120
Sidelong Ground, Canal on....28		Spoil Banks (see Waste Banks)..	
73, 74, 352, 378-383		28, 35, 268	
Side Slopes....17-20, 70, 257, 273		Spring Valley Water Company's	
349, 360		Dams, California.....	375, 378
Side Slopes, Protecting.....	341	Sprinkling Irrigation by.....	279
Sidhnai Canal, India.....	222, 224	Spurs.....	150
Sills.....	90, 96	Stand Pipes, for Irrigation..	298, 333
Silt Carried by Rivers.....	62-65	Stevenson, Col. C. L..61, 285, 301	
Silt Fertilizing (see Fertilizing Silt).		Stony Creek.....	175-178
		St. Paul Syphons.....	179, 181

	Page		Page
Stop-planks.....	134	Transporting Power of Water..	43
Stonework.....	101	-51, 62-65,	257
Sub-soil Drainage....	330, 331, 332	Trask, F. E.....	234, 296
	335	Trautwine.....	319
Sub-surface Irrigation by means		Trenails.....	91
of Pipes.	279, 333	Trestle.....	89, 159
Sugar Cane.....	60	Trial Pits	69, 348, 349
Superpassage....	151, 169-175, 220	Tropics	319
	221	Tulare Irrigation District, Re-	
Superintendence of Canal.....	276	port on proposed Works of..	347
Super-saturation of Land (see		Tumbler for Regulating Distrib-	
Water-logging).		taries, Midnapore Cana	139
Suranah.....	225	Tunnels.....	147, 154, 156, 169, 181
Survey	241-252	182, 232-238, 267, 353-357, 360	
Swamps,.....	69, 327, 328, 334, 336	378, 382	
Smeaton.....	50	Tunnels to Develop Water...2,	232
Syphons, Inverted....	151, 175-183	233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238	
	220, 252, 255	Tunnel Lining	235-238
Syphons, Rock.....	181	Tuolumne River.....	117
		Turlock Weir.....	87, 117
Tail of Apron.....	114, 116	Umpfenbach....	49
Tail of Canal.....	81, 249, 255	Utah	61, 90
Talus...101, 103, 106, 107, 108, 109		Utah, Irrigation in.....	285
110, 112, 114			
Tamrapoorney River.	108	Valencia in Spain.....	299
Tanjore	58	Velocity Allowable in Certain	
Tank (see Reservoir)		Soils.....	14, 34, 35
Technical Society of the Pacific		43-47, 81	
Coast, Transactions of....	75, 396	Velocity, Bottom.	41-44, 113
Telephone Service on Canals..	274	Velocity, High.....	35, 44-47
Temperature at Roorkee, India. 318		Velocity, Destructive....	43-47, 215
Temperature, Mean, of different		217, 218	
Countries	315	Velocity too Great Better than	
Thames Tunnel.....	147	too Small.....	34
Thompson, Dr. Henry.....	317	Velocity Increases with In-	
Ties.	141	crease of Depth.....	47
Tiber, Slope of	32	Velocity, Low mean..	33, 34
Timber, Decay of	277	Velocity, Maximum mean....	34
Timber Falls (see Falls Timber).		Velocity, Maximum Surface...	37
Toghulpoor Sand Hill, Ganges		38, 41, 42	
Canal.	38, 188	Velocity, Mean.....	29, 35, 37-43
Tower in Reservoir	360, 378	Velocities, Mean, Surface and	
Tow-paths on Navigation		Bottom.....	41, 42, 207, 208
Canals	174, 242	Velocity, Mean, Uniform	21
Training of Rivers.....	277		

	Page		Page
Velocity, Minimum, in Canals in America.....	34	Waterings, Number and Depth of.....	284, 298-302, 314, 324
Velocity, Minimum, in Canals in Egypt.....	34	Water, Quantity of Required for Irrigation..	11, 12
Velocity, Minimum, in Inunda- tion Canals in Sind.....	34	Watershed..	244, 245, 248, 260, 328
Velocity, Minimum, in Indian Canals.....	33	Weeds....	33, 38, 40, 189, 260, 273 327, 330
Velocity, Minimum, in Spanish Canals.....	34	Weeping Holes	163, 243
Vertical Drop of Dam.....	120	Weirs..	53, 77, 79, 80, 81-124, 125 134, 147-149, 277
Vertical Falls (see Falls Verti- cal).		Weirs, Cross Sections of..	82, 105 106, 108, 115
Viga Valley Irrigation Project, Madras	233	Weirs, India, by Major A. M. Lang	115
Viuda Ravine.....	182	Weir, Curved on Plan.....	119, 122
Vrynwy Reservoir Dam.....	119	Weir, Oblique.....	85
Warping (see Colmatage).		Wells.....	2, 60, 62, 292
Waste Bank.....	28, 35, 69, 268	Wells, Artesian.	2, 313
Waste Board.....	116	Wells, Foundation..	77, 78, 79, 109 111, 114, 115, 116
Waste Gates (see Escapes).		Well Water	58
Waste Weir.....	360, 374, 378, 384	Wilson, Allan.	60, 305
Water, Cost of and of Pump- ing	270	Wilson, H. M....	172, 197, 245, 246
Water Cushion....	87, 96, 109, 120 137, 186, 197, 198	Willcocks, W....	57, 103, 319, 328
Water, Diverting the, from the River to the Land	5-11	Windlasses.....	132, 134, 222
Water, Duty of (see Duty of Water).		Wing Dam.....	87
Water, Economy of.....	113	Wing Walls	109
Water, Kinds of.....	58	Wooden Flumes	153
Water Logging of Lands....	69, 251 275, 289, 291, 304, 327, 328, 331 366	Works of Irrigation Canals....	77
Water Power of Irrigation Ca- nals	268, 269, 270	Wrought Iron Syphon.....	179
Water Spring.....	60	Wutchumna Reservoir....	231, 232
Water, Waste of, to Prevent...	385	Wutchumna Tunnel.....	231, 232
		Yarpoor Falls.....	37
		Zero of Canal for Measurement	95 243
		Zero for Levels.....	128, 132, 243
		Zanjas or Open Ditches.....	333

was 3.04 feet per second. The deepest portions of the channeling out here have been silted up.

At the 50th mile, main line, below the Jaolee falls, with present full supply in the canal, the observed mean velocity was 3.06 feet per second. Erosion from the banks has ceased here; silt on the deepened bed, soil sandy.

Above Newarree bridge, 94th mile, in a stiff clay soil, with full supply in, the observed mean velocity was 4.12 feet per second. Erosion trifling here; no silt deposit.

Observations communicated by Colonel Dyas, R. E., Director of Canals, Punjab.

On the Hansi branch of the Western Jumna Canals, silt was deposited with mean velocities of from 2 to 2.25 feet per second. The deposition of the silt, however, obviously depends on the quantity and specific gravity of the matter held in suspension by the water coming from above, and the ratio of the current velocities at different points along the channel. He states from observations on the channels of the Baree Doab Canal, that in sandy soil:—

“2.7 feet per second appears to be the highest mean velocity for non-cutting as a general rule, for there are soft places where the bed *will* go with almost any velocity; but those sorts of places can be protected.”

Again he states:—

“Bad places might be scoured out with a mean velocity of 2.5 feet per second, but better soil would be deposited in place of the bad with a slightly smaller velocity than 2.5 feet; and, as the supply is not always full, there would be no fear of not getting that slightly smaller velocity very frequently. The good stuff thus deposited would not be moved again by any velocity which did not exceed 2.5 per second.”

without entering into too minute details at first, and it is to be feared that this has not been done. Regarded simply on the question of construction, it is too apparent that faults are numerous, alignments have been bad, grades and velocities established apparently without any consideration, and flumes, headworks, etc., constructed, of which a respectable mechanic would be ashamed. Still, bad as the conditions are, they have their value to the engineer, if nothing more than in showing the mistakes to be avoided in entering upon similar works in new countries. * * * *

“ But by far the greater number of mistakes have been due, I think, to haste in the undertaking of the enterprise. Too little time was given or taken by the engineer in which to make himself thoroughly familiar with the physical conformation of the country to be supplied with water. Contracts were let for construction almost before a careful preliminary survey had been made, and the energetic contractor kept close at the heels of the locating engineer, with a consequence that a large percentage of necessarily bad alignment was made, which it is now utterly impossible or impracticable to correct. Probably the best thing that could occur to the irrigation system of northeastern Colorado to-day would be its entire blotting out from the face of the map, and reconstruction begun upon sound engineering principles.”

Mr. Walter H. Graves, C. E., in a paper published by the Denver Society of Engineers in 1886, states:—

“ To determine the proper form of channel, the proper grades, slopes, etc., requires the utmost skill and intelligence on the part of the engineer. Mistakes made in the construction of a canal may not appear at first, but subsequently develop themselves by spreading disaster and ruin on all sides. A thousand farmers depend-

In *Neville's Hydraulics*, 0.83 to 1.17 feet per second are mentioned as the lowest mean velocities which will prevent the growth of weeds. This, however, will vary with the nature of the soil; vegetation also is much more rapid and vigorous in a tropical climate than that where Mr. Neville made his observations.

In Captain Humphrey's and Lieutenant Abbott's report on the Mississippi, 1860, it is mentioned that the alluvial soil near the mouth of the river cannot resist a mean velocity of 3 feet per second; and that in the Bayou LaFourche, the last of its outlets, which resembles an artificial channel in the regularity of its section and general direction, and the absence of eddies, etc., in the stream, the mean velocity *does not exceed* 3 feet per second, and the banks are not abraded to any perceptible extent.

From the foregoing and other observations, and taking into consideration that the higher the velocity the less the works will cost, the following may be taken as safe mean velocities with maximum supply in the (remodeled) Ganges Canal channels:—

1. In the Ganges valley above Roorkee, 3 feet per second.
2. In the sandy tract generally between Roorkee and Sirdhana, 2.7 feet per second.
3. In the very light sand, such as that met with at the Toghulpoor sandhills, not higher than 2.5 feet per second.
4. And for the channels south of Sirdhana, 3 feet per second.

On the branches the same data to be assumed according to similarity of the soil.

There are soils, as Colonel Dyas has noted, such as light quicksand, which will not stand velocities of even 1 foot or $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet per second, but these are never found

to any great extent in one place; erosion there can only have a local influence, and such places can be protected at a trifling expense. It is channeling out on long lines which is to be feared.

Article 13. Mean, Surface and Bottom Velocities.

According to the formula of Bazin—

$$v = \frac{c \times v_{\max}}{c + 25.4} = v_{\max} - 25.4 \sqrt{rs}$$

$$v = v_b + 10.87 \sqrt{rs}$$

$\therefore v_b = v - 10.87 \sqrt{rs}$. In which v = mean velocity in feet per second.

v_{\max} = Maximum surface velocity in feet per second.

v_b = Bottom velocity in feet per second.

r = hydraulic mean depth in feet and

s = sine of slope.

Rankine states that in open channels, like those of rivers, the ratio of v to v_b is given approximately by the following formula of Prony in feet measures:—

$$v = v_{\max} \left(\frac{v_{\max} + 7.71}{v_{\max} + 10.28} \right)$$

The least velocity, or that of the particles in contact with the bed, is almost as much less than the mean velocity as the greatest velocity is greater than the mean.

Rankine also states that in ordinary cases the velocities may be taken as bearing to each other nearly the proportions of 3, 4 and 5. In very slow currents they are nearly as 2, 3 and 4.

The deductions of Dubuat are that the relation of the velocity of the surface to that of the bottom is greatest when the mean velocity is least: that the ratio is wholly independent of the depth: the same velocity of surface always corresponds to the same velocity of bed. He

observed, also, that the mean velocity is a mean proportional between the velocity of the surface and that of the bottom.

As the result of his experience on rivers of the *largest* class, M. Revy arrived at the following conclusions:—

1. That, at a given inclination, surface currents are governed by depths alone, and are proportional to the latter.

2. That the current at the bottom of a river increases more rapidly than that at the surface.

3. That for the same surface current the bottom current will be greater with the greater depth.

4. That the mean current is the actual arithmetic mean between that at the surface and that at the bottom.

5. That the greatest current is always at the surface, and the smallest at the bottom; and that as the depth increases, or the surface current becomes greater, they become more equal, until, in great depths and strong currents, they practically become substantially alike.

Article 14. Mean Velocities from Maximum Surface Velocities.

Bazin has given a very useful formula for gauging channels, by means of which the mean velocity can be found from the hydraulic mean depth and the observed maximum surface velocity. For measures in feet this formula is:—

$$v = \frac{c \times v_{\max}}{c + 25.4}$$

$$\text{Now let } c_1 = \frac{c}{c + 25.4} \text{ and}$$

$$v = c_1 \times v_{\max}$$

The following table will be found of great service in saving time, when using this formula:—

$$v = c_1 \times v_{\max}$$

TABLE 8. Giving values of c_1 .

Hydraulic mean depth in feet r .	Value of c_1 .			
	For very even sur- faces, fine plas- tered sides and bed, planed planks, etc.:-	For even sur- faces, such as cut stone, brickwork, unplaned plank- ing, mortar, etc.:-	For slightly un- even surfaces, such as rubble masonry :-	For uneven sur- faces, such as earth:-
0.5	.84	.81	.74	.58
0.75	.84	.82	.76	.63
1.0	.85	.82	.77	.65
1.5	.85	.82	.78	.69
2.0	.85	.83	.79	.71
2.5	.85	.83	.79	.72
3.0	.85	.83	.80	.73
3.5	.85	.83	.80	.74
4.0	.85	.83	.81	.75
5.0	.85	.83	.81	.76
6.0	.85	.84	.81	.77
7.0	.85	.84	.81	.78
8.0	.85	.84	.81	.78
9.0	.85	.84	.82	.78
10.	.85	.84	.82	.78
11.	.85	.84	.82	.78
12.	.85	.84	.82	.79
13.	.85	.84	.82	.79
14.	.85	.84	.82	.79
15.	.85	.84	.82	.79
16.	.85	.84	.82	.79
17.	.85	.84	.82	.79
18.	.85	.84	.82	.79
19.	.85	.84	.82	.79
20.	.85	.84	.82	.80

Article 15. Destructive Velocities.

Kutter (translation by Jackson) states:—

“The maximum velocities determined by Dubuat, as suitable to channels in various descriptions of soil, are taken from Morin’s ‘Aide Memoire de Mécanique Pratique’, page 63, 1864. The first column in the following table gives the *safe bottom velocity*, and the second the mean velocity of the cross-section; the formula by which these are calculated is:—

$$v = v_b + 10.87 \sqrt{rs}$$

TABLE 9. Giving safe bottom and mean velocities in channels.

Material of Channel.	Safe Bottom velocity v_b , in feet per second.	Mean velocity v , in feet per second.
Soft brown earth	0.249	0.328
Soft loam	0.499	0.656
Sand	1.000	1.312
Gravel.....	1.998	2.625
Pebbles.....	2.999	3.938
Broken stone, flint.....	4.003	5.579
Conglomerate, soft slate.....	4.988	6.564
Stratified rock.....	6.006	8.204
Hard rock.....	10.009	13.127

“ We (Ganguillet and Kutter) are unable, for want of observations, to judge how far these figures are trustworthy. The inclinations certainly have no influence in this case, as the corresponding velocities are mutually interdependent, but the variation of the depth of water is most probably of consequence, and in shallower depths the soil of the bottom is possibly less easily and rapidly damaged than in greater depths, under similar conditions of soil and of inclination. Yet this effect is not very large, while that of the actual velocity of the water is of the highest importance. Hence, it appears that these figures may be assumed to be rather disproportionately small than too large, and we therefore recommend them more confidently.”

Mr. John Neville, in his hydraulic tables, states that for the materials given in the following table the *mean velocity* per second should not exceed—

0.42 feet in soft alluvial deposits.

0.67 feet in clayey beds.

1.0 feet in sandy and silty beds.

2.0 feet in gravelly earth.

3.0 feet in strong gravelly shingle.

4.0 feet in shingly.

5.0 feet in shingly and rocky.

6.67 feet and upwards in rocky and shingly.

The beds of rivers protected by aquatic plants, however, bear higher velocities than this table would assign, up to 2 feet per second.

Water flowing at a high velocity and carrying large quantities of silt, sand and gravel is very destructive to channels, even when constructed of the best masonry.

The Deyrah Doon water-courses in India had channels of sections varying from 5 x 2 feet to 10 x 4 feet, and with slopes varying from 50 feet to 80 feet per mile. They were almost all of masonry, and had numerous masonry falls from 5 to 6 feet in depth on them, and they passed over numerous and long aqueducts. The following table shows the mean velocity in these channels, computed by Kutter's formula with $n = .015$.

TABLE 10. Giving dimensions, grades and velocities of masonry channels.

DIMENSIONS OF CHANNEL.		Slope in feet per mile.	Velocity in feet per second.
Width in Feet.	Depth in Feet.		
5	2	50	10.3
5	2	80	13.0
10	4	50	16.5
10	4	80	20.9

Before measures were taken to protect the channels the water rushed down along their course with a tre-

mendous velocity, and carrying large quantities of sand and gravel, and the abrasion injured all the masonry works on the line. The silt-laden water acted even more injuriously, as, impelled by the great velocity, it cut into the masonry with an action like that of emery powder. Even to a bed laid with large bowlders, great damage was caused: the mortar joints were washed out, the bowlders lifted out of their places and then rolled along the bed to add to the mischief. But it is to brickwork that the greatest damage was done. In fact, it requires but time to make all brickwork disappear entirely in the presence of such action. In some of the old canals there was a flooring of brick on edge over the arches of the aqueducts. On one of these aqueducts not only was the foot in depth of the brick floor entirely cut through, but deep ruts were formed in the arch itself. But it was on the *falls*, which were all formerly built after the ogee pattern, and of brick, that the damage was greatest, as might be expected. Their surfaces were cut into deep striæ, and they were in constant need of repairs, which were difficult to execute.

It was, therefore, important to keep the silt out, and this was done by building silt traps on the line of the canal.*

Except in storm sewers, which flow for only a short period every year, the mean velocity in sewers is usually kept below five feet per second.

Colonel Medley, R. E., had considerable opportunities of observing the abrading power of silt-laden water on the Ganges Canal, India; and in the "Roorkee Treatise on Civil Engineering" he writes thus:—

"Brickwork should not be used in contact with cur-

* Mr. R. E. Forrest, in the first volume of the Professional Papers on Indian Engineering.

rents with such high velocities (15 feet per second). Even the very best brickwork cannot stand the wear and tear for any length of time, and stone should be used for all surfaces in contact with velocities exceeding, say, 10 feet per second."

Article 16. Velocity Increases with Increase of Depth of Channel.

The following table is given in order to show that, in the channels usually adopted for irrigation, the velocity increases with the increase of depth. The channel 50 feet wide will, with a depth of two feet, deposit silt; at a velocity of about 1.6 feet per second, but with a depth of five feet and a velocity of about 2.9 feet per second, it will keep itself clear of deposit.

$N = .0275$. Side slopes 1 to 1.

TABLE 11. Giving dimensions, grades and velocities of channels.

Depth in Feet.	Bed Width 10 Feet.	Bed Width 50 Feet.	Bed Width 100 Feet.
	Slope 1 in 1000.	Slope 1 in 2500.	Slope 1 in 5000.
	Velocity in Feet per Second.	Velocity in Feet per Second.	Velocity in Feet per Second.
2.	2.173	1.582	1.136
3.	2.756	2.084	1.520
3.5	3.002	2.302	1.692
4.	3.224	2.511	1.856
4.5	3.440	2.701	2.007
5.	3.634	2.878	2.150

Article 17. Abrading and Transporting Power of Water.

Professor J. LeConte, in his "Elements of Geology," states:—

"The *erosive* power of water, or its power of overcoming cohesion, varies as the square of the velocity of the current.

"The *transporting* power of a current varies as the sixth power of the velocity. * * * If the velocity, therefore, be increased ten times, the transporting power is increased 1,000,000 times. A current running three feet per second, or about two miles per hour, will move fragments of stone of the size of a hen's egg, or about three ounces weight. It follows from the above law that a current of ten miles an hour will bear fragments of one and a half tons, and a torrent of twenty miles an hour will carry fragments of 100 tons. We can thus easily understand the destructive effects of mountain torrents when swollen by floods.

"The *transporting* power of water must not be confounded with its *erosive* power. The resistance to be overcome in the one case is *weight*, in the other, cohesion; the latter varies as the *square*; the former as the sixth power of the velocity.

"In many cases of removal of slightly cohering material, the resistance is a mixture of these two resistances, and the power of removing material will vary at some rate between v^2 and v^6 ."

Silt, sand, gravel and stones lose as much weight in water as a volume of water having an equal cubic content, which is generally about equal to half their weight in air. They are, therefore, easily moved, but, with the exception of silt, their velocity is less than that of the current, and the nearer their specific gravity approaches that of water the nearer their velocity approaches that of the current.

The English Astronomer Royal, in a discussion at the Institution of Civil Engineers, said that the formula for the transporting power of water, was the only instance in physical science, with which he was acquainted, in which the sixth power came really into application.

Mr. T. Login, C. E., states as the result of his observations for several years, on the Ganges Canal and other channels, that the abrading and transporting power of water increases in some proportion as the velocity increases, but decreases as the depth decreases.

Umpfenback gives the size of materials that will be moved in the bottom of small streams, at the following figures:—

TABLE 12. Giving the transporting power of water.

Surface Velocity in Metres.	Gravel, Diameter in Metres.	Surface Velocity in Feet.	Gravel, Diameter in Feet.
0.942	0.026	3.091	0.985
1.569	0.052	5.148	0.170
	Cubic Metres.		Cubic Feet.
2.197	0.00515	7.208	0.182
3.138	0.209	10.296	0.738
4.708	0.618	15.447	21.826

Chief Engineer Sainjon made observations in the River Loire in France, with the following results:—

Velocity of feet per second,	1.64	3.28	4.92	6.56
Diameter of stone in feet,	0.034	0.134	0.325	0.56

In order to protect the foundations of the Ravi bridge, in India, 15-inch concrete cubes (1.56 cubic feet), were deposited around the piers. It was noted in one case, that with a velocity of probably not less than 10 feet a

ing on a canal for their water supply, at a critical period, when the canal is taxed to its utmost to supply their demands, some fatal defect suddenly appears, and the canal, for the time being, is rendered useless, and before repairs are completed the crops are ruined. A catastrophe of this kind would be almost irreparable, and through such a disaster financial ruin might overtake an entire community. The responsibility of the engineer is often too lightly assumed by him, and too carelessly and cheaply placed by the company."

The above descriptions will probably apply to over ninety per cent. of the irrigation canals and ditches in America. The weirs, headgates, bridges, drops and other works are usually temporary structures of wood.

Faulty as the works are, it must be admitted that they served a good purpose in aiding in the development of the country. Without them millions of acres of land would be waste that now bear profitable crops. There is a good field for Hydraulic engineering in the improvement of these old canals.

A great change for the better has of late taken place in the design and construction of Irrigation Canals in this country, and, in some new canals, works of a more permanent character than in the old canals, are now being constructed.

India has the greatest number of canals that can, in many respects, be quoted as good examples. It may be thought that Indian canals are too often referred to in the following pages, but it is well to remember that the finest examples of canal construction are to be seen there, that in length, cross-sectional dimensions, discharging capacity, number and aggregate mileage, the Indian canals are the greatest in the world, and that their structures are permanent, that is, that very little wood or other perishable material enters into their construction.

second, the blocks were moved from a sandy bottom on to a level brick floor protecting the bridge. Although exposed to a more violent current they were not moved off the flooring. This evidence is somewhat in proof of Smeaton's experience, that quarry stones of about half a cubic foot, were not much deranged by a velocity of 11 feet per second, although the soil was washed from under them.

Experiments made by Mr. T. E. Blackwell, C. E., for the British Government, in the plan of the Main Drainage of London, show very clearly that the specific gravity of materials has a marked effect upon the mean velocities necessary to move bodies.

For example, coal of a specific gravity of 1.26, commenced to move in a current of from 1.25 to 1.50 feet per second.

A second sample of coal, of specific gravity 1.33, did not commence to move until the velocity was 1.50 to 1.75 feet per second.

A brickbat of specific gravity 2.0, and chalk of specific gravity 2.05, required a velocity of 1.75 to 2 feet per second to start them.

Oolite stone, specific gravity 2.17; brickbat, 2.12; chalk, specific gravity 2.0; broken granite, specific gravity 2.66, required a velocity of 2.0 to 2.25 feet per second to start them.

Chalk, specific gravity 2.17; brickbats, specific gravity 2.18; limestone, specific gravity 1.46, required a velocity of from 2.25 to 2.50 feet per second to start them.

Oolite stone, specific gravity 2.32; flints, specific gravity 2.66; limestone, specific gravity 3.00, required a velocity of 2.5 to 2.75 to start them.

It was shown in these experiments that after the start of the materials with the current, in no case did the materials to be transported travel at the same rate as the

stream, but in every case their progress was considerably less, as a rule, often more than 50 per cent. less than the velocity of the current.

Mr. Baldwin Latham, C. E., in the course of his experience in sewerage matters, has found that in order to prevent deposits of sewage silt in small sewers or drains, such as those from 6 inches to 9 inches diameter, a mean velocity of not less than 3 feet per second should be produced. Sewers from 12 to 24 inches diameter should have a velocity of not less than $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet per second, and in sewers of larger dimensions in no case should the velocity be less than 2 feet per second.

Sir John Leslie gives the formula:—

$v = 4 \sqrt{a}$ for finding the velocity required to move rounded stones or shingle, in which

v = velocity of water in miles per hour, and

a = the length of the edge of a stone if a cube in feet, or the mean diameter if a rounder stone or boulder, also in feet.

This formula takes no note of specific gravity. Chailly has supplied this omission, and he has derived the following formula, which is just sufficient to set bodies in motion:—

$v = 5.67 \sqrt{ag}$, in which

a = average diameter of the body to be moved in feet,

g = its specific gravity, and

v = velocity in feet per second.

Experience on the irrigation canals in Northern India, where rapids are in use, has proved that a boulder rapid, with a flooring composed of bowlders not less than eighty pounds in weight each, well packed *on end*, and at a slope of 1 in 15, will *not* stand a mean velocity of 17.4 feet per second.

Article 18. On Keeping Irrigation Canals clear of Silt.

By R. B. BUCKLEY, C. E.

(Extracted from Proceedings of the Institution of Civil Engineers,
Volume LVIII.)

There are four methods by which it is possible to exclude more than a desirable proportion of silt from entering an irrigation system:—

1. By works in the river, which will clear the water before it enters the canal.

2. By so constructing the head-sluice of the canal that only water bearing the desired proportion of silt is admitted.

3. By constructing a depositing basin near the head of, and in the canal itself, to be cleared either by dredging or by hand labor; or, what is practically the same thing, by making two supply canals from the river to the canal, one to be used while the other is being cleansed.

4. By constructing a double row of sluices, with a settling tank between, so arranged that the water is drawn off from the lower row carrying the desired amount of silt, and so designed that the deposit in the tank can be flushed back again into the river.

These systems are, of course, applicable under different circumstances. The first can be rarely used, and only when the local conditions are suitable. As, for example, when the bed of an inundation canal is perhaps 8 feet or 10 feet above the level of the bed of the river, and which canal is therefore only supplied when the river is in flood. In such a case, if a position for the head of the canal can be selected behind an island covered with brushwood, the top of which is perhaps a little below, or even slightly above the high flood level, it may be well worth the cost to make an artificial con-

nection between the head of the island and the main land, so that all the water entering the canal will first flow through the bay, found between the island and the main land, entering that bay from below. The velocity of water in the bay will thus be diminished; the water will deposit silt in the bay instead of carrying it into the canal; and if the bay be a large one the canal may work for many years without its bed silting up.

The same principles can be employed on large irrigation schemes, by altering the methods now generally adopted on these works. The almost invariable arrangement is that the weir which stretches across the river, at a height of from 8 feet to 15 feet above the bed, is cut by two sets of under-sluices, which are purposely set as close as possible to the head-sluices of the canal immediately above the weir; the floors of the head-sluices and of the under-sluices being at the same level. The under-sluices are placed in this position so that silt may not accumulate in front of the entrances to the canal, and thus impede the free entrance of boats to the lock, and of water to the canal. This object is attained by opening the under-sluices during floods, thus drawing down a rapid stream immediately in front of the opening to the canals, which scours the channel and removes any deposit that may have accumulated. At the same time that the action of the under-sluices clears the approaches to the canal, it causes the canal to be more deeply silted, for the higher velocity produced by the scour of the under-sluices removes an extra quantity of silt from the bed of the river, and it is from this rapid and silt-bearing stream, impinging directly on the head-sluices, that the canal is supplied. But if the weir were constructed with a double set of under-sluices at each end, one set being in the line of the weir, and about 200 feet from the river bank, and the other set some dis-

tance lower down the river, but connected to the upper set by a flank wall parallel to the river bank, and if the off-take of the canal were placed immediately above the lower set, the stream flowing to the upper set would not pass in front of the off-take to the canal. The silt-bearing water would pass through the upper set of undersluices with full velocity, while that portion of the river destined for the canal would have its velocity checked, immediately opposite the flank wall, and would deposit its silt to a great extent before it reached the headsluices of the canal. To sweep away the silt, which would be deposited between the weir and the headsluices, it would be necessary to close the upper undersluices and to work the lower ones. This plan would be rendered most effective by closing the head of the canal for a few hours every week, while the lower undersluices were opened, so that the channel might be kept clean without allowing any silt-bearing water to have access to the canal.

In almost all cases the head sluice of a canal is formed by rows of single shutters, sliding in vertical grooves, so that water is always first admitted to the canal from below the shutters, that is, at a level of the sluice floor. If the sluices were constructed so that the water was drawn from the top instead of from the bottom of the river, much less silt would be carried into the canal. In rivers which rise moderately it is best to have a single opening in each vent, covered by three or four shutters sliding in a vertical groove; and each of these shutters should have independent opening gear. In rivers liable to floods rising 30 feet it is necessary to have in each vent of the sluices, several openings at different levels, each opening being fitted with an independent shutter, so that water can be drawn off at different levels as the flood rises or falls. This way of

dealing with the silt can at most be but partially effective, but there are some rivers, carrying a small amount of silt, to which this system may be applied with sufficient effect to render the clearance of silt from the canal unnecessary.

The *third* method is frequently adopted on Indian canals. The first half mile of the canal is excavated with a base sufficiently large to cause a great diminution of velocity; the silt is deposited during floods, and excavated when the canal is closed during the summer, or perhaps it is dredged out at a cost even more excessive than that of excavating it by hand.

The *fourth* method is peculiarly suitable for rivers with a rapid fall. It is also most desirable where a canal runs alongside of the river for some distance before branching off into the country. If this method be adopted, the channel of the first half mile or so must be of such capacity that the velocity of the water in it, when carrying the full volume required for the canal, shall not exceed that which will allow of the deposit of the matter in suspension; so that the water, when it reaches the end of this length, shall contain only that proportion of silt which the channels below are arranged to convey to the fields. At the end of this broad channel a sluice will have to be built to carry the full discharge required in the canal with little or no head upon it. The head sluice on the river bank must be designed so that, with only a moderate flood in the river, a sufficient quantity of water can be introduced into the canal to generate a velocity of three to four feet per second in the broad reach, the flushing sluices leading back from this reach to the river being arranged to discharge a corresponding quantity, or even a larger quantity of water. These sluices might be fitted with falling shutters. The largest flushing sluice should be about 150 feet to 300

feet from the head sluice, for it is about this point that the heavy sand is deposited and where the greatest scour would be required. This system is the most effective and the least expensive for large schemes. If the head sluice on the river bank be constructed on the principle of taking water from the surface of the river, instead of from below, the minimum amount of silt will enter the broad reach, and that can under conditions, be cleared away by closing the sluices at the extremity of the broad channel for a short time, and opening all the shutters of the head sluice on the river bank and the various flushing sluices.

Article 19. Fertilizing Silt.

The quality of the silt carried by water for irrigation is a matter of great importance. Whilst in some localities it is of no use to the land as a fertilizer, still, in a great number of places, it acts as a good manure.

It is well known that for ages the fertility of Egypt has been preserved by the silt-laden waters of the Nile. Every year the Nile deposits its load of rich slime on the land, and, in consequence of this, the soil retains the fertility for which it has been famous since the earliest date of history. Such muddy water furnishes not only moisture to bring the crop to perfection, but it also brings manure to the land, and thus prevents it from being exhausted. The silt annually deposited is merely manure, which is consumed in bringing the crops to maturity. This is the reason that the land has, for so many centuries, remained within reach of the Nile flood.

In Upper Egypt large depositing basins, to retain the Nile silt, have been in use from time immemorial, with great success.

Sir B. Baker, C. E., states, respecting the fertilizing properties of the Nile water:—

“1st. That the fertility of the Nile is due to the organic matter, and to the salts of potash and phosphoric acid dissolved and suspended in it.

“2d. That these constituents are most abundant in the water during the months of August, September and October, when the river is in flood; and that it is during the period of inundation that the sedimentary matter, or mud, deposited from the water, is most valuable as a fertilizing agent.”

In Lower Egypt these basins are not used. The land is flooded, but the water flows off and deposits very little of its silt.

This is known as the Improved System.

Mr. W. Willcocks, C. E., in his account of Irrigation in Lower Egypt, states on this subject:—

“In Upper Egypt, where the old Pharaonic system of basin irrigation exists, every acre of land is cultivated, and pays revenue, while the soil is as rich to-day as it was thousands of years ago. In Lower Egypt, on the contrary, where the improved system of irrigation prevails, and a triple crop is gathered, one-third of the area is uncultivated, while the remaining two-thirds are incapable of paying a higher revenue than Upper Egypt. The improved system, besides, has only lasted fifty years, and yet there is a cry of deterioration of the soil and produce from one end of the country to the other, a cry which is re-echoed by English cotton-spinners. Nature wants the slime of the Nile flood to be deposited on the land; it is now forced into the sea; and though it is not necessary to go to the full extent of Napoleon's statement, that were he master of Egypt he would not allow an ounce of slime to be wasted; yet it may be stated,

without fear of contradiction, that for every one pound (five dollars) of profit resulting from the expenditure of one thousand pounds (five thousand dollars) on the improvement of the existing irrigation system, ten pounds (fifty dollars) would be the return on money spent in a partial restoration of the basin system where the lands are cultivated, and a complete restoration where the lands are not under cultivation."

In respect to irrigation, there are four kinds of water:—

First, rain; this is almost pure, and supplies nothing to the land but moisture. The land dependent upon it must be continually renewed by manure.

Second, well water. This also is quite pure, being filtered through the earth, or, what is worse, it is often injured for irrigation by being mixed with injurious minerals, especially at the end of the dry season.

Third, tank or reservoir water. This generally contains a good deal of nourishment for plants in a state of solution, which it has absorbed in the lands it has passed over, but what it has held in suspension is almost all deposited in the bed of the tank before the water is drawn off for the fields.

Fourth, river water. This water is led direct from the rivers by canals to the fields. It deposits in the channels only the coarser parts of the silt it has brought down from the higher lands and forests, much of which is only sand. A large quantity of its most fertilizing silt is, however, conveyed to the land. So complete is the effect of this fertilization, that lands so supplied continue to bear one or two grain crops for hundreds of years without other manure. Thus the district of Tanjore, in India, is believed to produce as large crops now as it did 2,000 years ago.

Different rivers are more or less fertilizing according

as they pass through different rocky strata. Thus the Kistnah River, in India, which passes through a limestone country, has a delta which was found to produce crops 50 per cent. larger than the delta of the Godavery, which passes chiefly through a granite country.

In Midnapore, in India, the rainfall is sometimes as much as ten inches in twenty-four hours, but the cultivators are not satisfied with this. In order to gain the advantage of the manure in the river water, they drain off the rain water as quickly as possible and admit the former water. Long experience has proved to them that they get better crops by irrigating with the silt-laden water of the river than by the rain water.

The water of the river Indus, in India, is preferred to well water, owing to the fertilizing silt which it contains.

The water of the river Durance, in France, has a high reputation for irrigating purposes. In addition to the sediment mechanically suspended, it also holds much valuable agricultural matter in solution, which is considered the main cause of the waters of that river being so valuable for irrigation.

Mr. Kilgour, C. E., in the Minutes of Proceedings I. C. E., vol. 27, stated:—

“The silt in suspension in the waters of the Punjab rivers in Northern India was invaluable as a manure in the district, where, owing to the scarcity of timber, the dung of the cattle was mixed with clay, sun-dried, and employed as fuel.”

Mr. George Gordon, C. E., in a paper on the storage of water, published in Minutes of I. C. E., vol. 33, says:—

“Land irrigated from a river gives a better return than that under a tank by, it is said, 25 per cent. in these parts. Whether this is principally due to the

The experience gained in other countries, where irrigation has been practiced from time immemorial, is useful, especially in showing where mistakes have been made and the plans adopted to rectify them. Though the designs may not, on the whole, suit American practice, still many useful hints can be obtained from the study of the published descriptions of the works in other countries.

The *List of Irrigation Canals* given in Article 10, shows some of the vast works carried out in India.

Article 4. Diverting the Water from the River to the Land.

Irrigation by means of canals is chiefly applied to tracts of country which have been formed by the gradual deposit of alluvial matter, from rivers in a state of flood. The deposit from the inundation begins to take place at the points where the velocity of the stream is checked; and this being alongside the margin of the channel, an inundation of the country through which a river passes, will leave behind it, on each side, a stratum of silt in the form of a wedge, the thick end of which is on the river bank.

In the course of time, successive annual inundations will thus have formed a slope away from each of the banks. The width of this slope will vary according to the nature and size of the river. It may be only two hundred or three hundred yards wide, or it may extend to the distance of many miles.

The feature above described is not only to be found along the main channel of a river, but also along its branches. No very extensive tract of country has been formed by the inundation and consequent deposit from a single stream. On the contrary, it must have been the work of many.

brackish quality of the water locally collected, or to the insufficient supply from tanks, the author cannot say; probably both causes contribute."

General Scott Moncrieff, R. E., states that the price paid for the water of the Po, in Italy, was three times the amount paid for the water of the Dora Baltea, the extra value of the water of the Po being due to the fact of its alluvial silt being considered highly fertilizing, while that of the Dora Baltea is rather the reverse. He also refers to the marked difference between the meadows irrigated with the silt-bearing waters of the Durance Canals in France, and those of the clear, cold Sorgues, so much so, that cultivators prefer to pay for the former ten or twelve times the price demanded for the latter.

Mr. J. H. Latham, C. E., states, as the result of his observations in the Madras Presidency, in India, that river channels are the most prized of all the sources of supply for irrigation as they are stated to give 25 per cent. more crop per acre than either wells or tanks.

Mr. Allan Wilson, C. E., refers to the great superiority of river and tank or reservoir water for irrigation purposes, as compared with well and spring water, as an argument in favor of the formation of river and tank reservoirs. He ascertained from observation, and the experience of practical authorities in India, that sugar cane watered from tanks and rivers yields a much heavier crop than land watered from wells and springs, and the molasses produced from the former realizes double the price of the latter.

Mr. Walter H. Graves, C. E., of Denver, Colorado, states that the very means of reclaiming the arid land is a constant source of its fertilization. By irrigation the pores of the most sterile soil can be filled and compacted by the infiltration of the impalpable silt, and con-

verted into a loam of prodigious fertility. Hence, as a general statement, all lands that can be reached and supplied with water for irrigation are susceptible of cultivation.

Mr. A. D. Foote, C. E., in his *Report on the Irrigating and Reclaiming of Certain Desert Lands* in Idaho, gives full and interesting details of crops grown on lands irrigated by silt-laden water, and shows very plainly its great value as a fertilizer. And in a discussion on irrigation at the American Society of Civil Engineers in 1887, Mr. Foote further states:—

“The fertilizing silt which swift running water usually carries is eventually nearly as valuable as the water itself. Without it irrigation in this country would soon be a failure. No land can stand continual production without enriching, and it will be many years before our Far West can afford the ordinary artificial manures. The silt with which our western rivers is loaded in the spring and summer is so valuable, that the land irrigated by it improves even unto the heaviest cropping.”

Mr. E. B. Dorsey, C. E., quotes an Idaho farmer as having said:—“I would rather give two dollars an acre for muddy water than one for clear.”

Mr. C. L. Stevenson, C. E., Salt Lake City, states that:—
“The waters of irrigation from the mountains annually carry with them fresh fertilizing material, so that practically it costs the average Utah farmer less to keep up his ditches and apply his waters of irrigation than it does the eastern farmer to manure his land. One field near Farmington, at first producing some sixty bushels per acre, was kept in wheat for thirty years with no other fertilizer than what was brought by the waters, and there was after the second or third year a general average yield of over forty bushels to the acre.”

As every rule has an exception, so we find an exception to the almost unanimous opinion as to the value of silt-laden water for irrigation.

Major J. Browne, R. E., in the Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, volume 33, states as the result of his observations in the Punjab, India, that:—
 “He had always understood from such cultivators as he had spoken to, that crops raised from well water were of a better quality than those raised from canal water. He could not say whether it was due to the higher temperature of well water, or to any chemical difference in the water itself, but canal-raised, were, he believed, generally inferior to well-raised crops.”

It is not unlikely that the cultivators through custom, as has often been found in India, adhered to their old method of well irrigation.

Article 20. Silt Carried by Rivers.

It is sometimes of importance to know not only the quality of the silt carried in suspension by a river, with reference to its utility as manure, but also its quantity. This quantity varies greatly in different rivers, and also at different stages of the flood in the same river. In August the Nile conveyed three hundred times more solids in suspension than in May, although during the former month the volume of water discharged was only ten times greater than in May, the weight of solids in suspension to the weight of water being then $\frac{1}{21000}$, whilst in August it rose to $\frac{1}{674}$. Although the volume of water discharged in August was one-quarter less than in October, the suspended sedimentary matter was three times greater. In August the weight of sediment attained its maximum of 23,100,000 tons and in October with the greatly increased discharge the sediment de-

creased to 7,600,000 tons, the proportion of sediment to water in August being $\frac{1}{674}$ and in October $\frac{1}{2640}$.

The perennial flow of the Nile was due to the magnificent lakes of Central Africa, which lay at its source; while its annual inundation was caused by the flooding of the Atbara and Blue Nile during the rainy season. These two tributaries (although almost dried up from the end of October to the beginning of May, when mountainous Abyssinia was as rainless as Egypt,) were mighty streams from the beginning of June to the end of September, and the undoubted origin of the periodical inundations, the unfailing deposits, and the wonderful fertility of Lower Egypt.

The Godavery and Mahanuddy in India have a proportion about $\frac{1}{1100}$, but this is much less than that in the Kistna and Indus, the quantity in the latter amounting to nearly $\frac{1}{250}$ of its bulk.

In the Durance in France, with a flood discharge of 210,000 cubic feet per second, the quantity of sediment mechanically suspended increases with the flow of the river. The ordinary maximum is about equal to $\frac{1}{33}$ of the water by weight. In exceptional cases, as in August, 1858, the proportion was as high as $\frac{1}{10}$ of the water by weight. In extreme low water the proportion by weight is about $\frac{1}{1000}$. The average proportion for the nine years, 1867-75, was about $\frac{1}{250}$. It is estimated that the Durance transports annually to the sea seventeen million tons of earthy matter. It is stated that in the Vistula in floods the proportion is $\frac{1}{48}$; in the Garonne in France $\frac{1}{100}$; in the Rhine in Holland $\frac{1}{100}$; and in the Po $\frac{1}{300}$. In other rivers the proportion varies from that given above as a maximum to $\frac{1}{17000}$ as a dry weather flow.

Sir Charles Hartley, C. E., has given the following

table showing the principal characteristics of four of the great rivers of the world:—

TABLE 13. Giving length, discharge, etc., of rivers.

RIVER.	Length in miles.	Drainage area in square miles.	Annual rainfall in cubic miles.	Mean annual discharge in cubic miles.	Mean Ratio.	Mean weight of dry sedi- ment to weight of water.
Nile	3,300	1,293,000	892.1	22.7	39.3	$\frac{1}{1800}$
Ganges.....	1,680	588,000	548.8	43.2	12.7	
Mississippi .	4,190	1,244,000	673.0	132.0	5.0	$\frac{1}{1500}$
Danube	1,750	316,000	198.0	44.3	4.5	$\frac{1}{3000}$

As the central and lower parts of the Nile flowed through an exceptionally dry and sandy region, it discharged, as shown on the table, $\frac{1}{39}$ of the annual rainfall on its catchment basin, and as regarded ratio of rainfall to discharge, compared with other rivers, it was three, eight and nine times greater than the Ganges, Mississippi and Danube respectively. Again, although the Nile had about the same drainage area as the Mississippi, its annual rainfall was 30 per cent. greater, whilst its annual discharge was six times less than that of the "great Father of Waters." Compared with the Danube, the annual discharge of the latter was double that of the Nile, although the annual rainfall of the Nile basin was four and a-half times that of the Danube.

An irrigation canal drawing its supply from a river, which carries fertilizing silt in suspension, and which has sufficient velocity to carry the silt on to the land requiring irrigation, deposits an immense quantity of good manure, in a few months, in a thin film, over the land. For example: let a canal have a bed width of

60 feet, a depth of 4 feet, and side slopes 1 to 1, and a mean velocity of 2.5 feet per second. Let this canal flow for four months, or 120 days, and during this time let its supply be derived from a river which holds silt in suspension to the extent of $\frac{1}{800}$ of the bulk of water. The discharge of the canal is 640 cubic feet per second. There are 86,400 seconds in one day. We have therefore:—

$$\frac{640 \times 86400 \times 120}{800 \times 27} = 307,200 \text{ cubic yards of fertilizing}$$

silt deposited by the canal on the land in 120 days. From this a good idea can be formed of the great advantage of manurial silt in an irrigation supply.

Article 21. Improvement of Land by Silting Up, Warping or Colmatage.

Silting up of land, warping or colmatage, is here intended to signify the improvement of land before this of little, if any, use, by the deposition of silt. Warping is usually applied to the artificial silting up of land on the sea coast, in bays and estuaries, but it is here also applied to the silting up by river water of land not within the influence of the tides. Colmatage is a French word also used in works written in English to express the same thing as silting up.

When water containing fertilizing silt is not required for irrigation it can be usefully employed in making good land out of a sterile waste. There are, no doubt, numerous localities in the United States where land can be improved in this way. A description of the improvement of some land by this method is here given.*

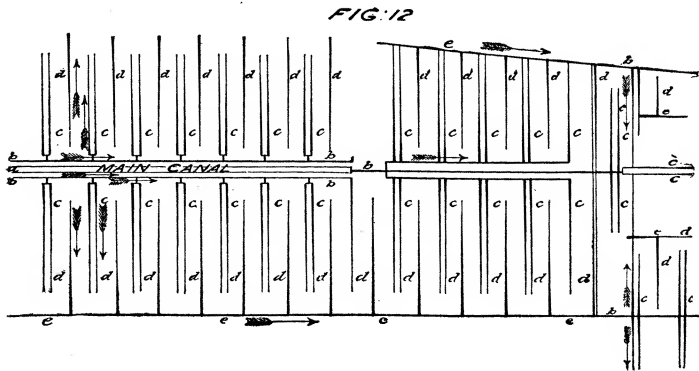
Above Epinal in France the course of the river Moselle is well defined and regular. Below that point it

*Irrigation in Southern Europe by Lieut. C. C. Scott Moncrieff.

used to flow over a broad, gravel bed, in a number of separate streams, continually changing. A scanty crop of miserable pasturage used sometimes to spring up on the best parts of this broad channel, the rest was quite barren. This worthless strip of bowlders and gravel is now being transformed into extensive stretches of green meadow, yielding plentiful crops, and at the same time confining the river within a permanent and defined bed in a way no series of expensive embankments could easily have affected. The result of river embankments has been too often to raise the bed year by year, so that they too require to be raised. In the Moselle valley, on the other hand, the floods are allowed to flow almost unchecked over the whole of their old channel; but when they retire they leave beneficial results instead of injury behind them, and resume the same course as they did before they rose.

This work was commenced by two brothers, Messrs. Dutac, in 1827, by their buying fifty acres along the left bank of the river's bed at LaGosse, a little below Epinal. At the head of this a rough bowlder dam was thrown across the river, turning about 70 cubic feet per second of its waters into a channel taken along the left of the estate. To this was given a gentle slope, which soon raised it above the river; and when lately seen the whole of the land lying between the river and the canal was a fine green meadow. The masonry works on the canal are all of the simplest kind, and require no remark save to notice this simplicity. The process then is as follows:—Below the dam there is erected an embankment at such points as are required, high enough to prevent the full current of the river from anywhere sweeping over the land to be reclaimed, but not at all intended to keep it from being flooded. From the main canal are taken out little branches, and the land to be irri-

gated by them is carefully leveled in a succession of parallel ridges and valleys running at an angle to these branches. About every 25 feet along their course are little openings, admitting a stream of water about six inches wide and half as deep, which flows along and overflows a channel made on each ridge, running over the slopes into a similar channel in the depression below. Along this it runs into a catch-water drain, which collects all these little separate streams, and a little farther down commences to give the water out again to irrigate a fresh piece. Sometimes the irrigating streams are made in pairs, back to back, sometimes they run singly.



The annexed diagram, Figure 12, is taken from a sketch made on the spot; *a* is the main canal, *b* the distribution channels, from which the water flows into the minor channels *c*, and over the ground on each side down into the dips, where the minor drainage lines *d*, carry it off to the main drain *e*, which, at a lower level, becomes in turn a distributing channel, repeating the operation. The main line *a*, diminishes at last into a distribution channel *b*, and that in time into minor channels. Of course it requires a good deal of labor to bring the gravelly bed into shape for this method of watering, but once done there is very little further outlay.

It is then sown with grass seed (without making any attempt to clear it of stones), and the irrigation is at once commenced. A light deposit of mud forms, every flood increases it, the irrigation is carried on incessantly, and the grass soon begins to sprout.

The silt deposit proceeds fast at first where the water proceeds directly through the gravel, which acts as a filter. By degrees this filtration causes a nearly impermeable bed, through which very little of the water escapes, and just so much the more flows by the drainage-lines, and flows off without having entirely divested itself of its particles of mud. Were it not for this the meadows would rise higher each year and soon be above the water's reach, but it is found that after a few years there is no sensible change in their level, and what fresh silt is deposited only makes good what is consumed on the vegetation.

There are in America large areas of alkali land within the irrigation districts, which would be benefited by this method of silting up.

Article 22. Equalizing Cuttings and Embankments.

The cross-section of the water channel and its slope, or grade being determined, the next step is to fix the depth of digging.

The cross-section of the canal can be fixed so that the surface of the water may be:—

1. *Within soil*, or, in other words, all in cutting.
2. *Above soil*, so that all the water is carried by embankments.
3. Partly in cutting and partly in embankment, or in cut and fill.

In some cases, for sanitary reasons, or in very per-
vious soil, not suited to make good banks, where the

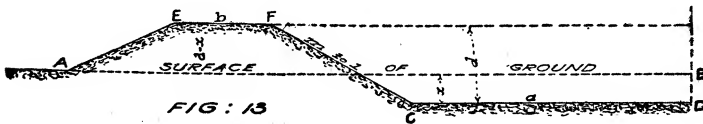
loss of water and the cost of repairs to banks are serious, it may be necessary to keep within soil. Care must be taken, however, by sinking trial pits, that a sandy stratum is not reached by deep cutting, as, in this event, much water may be wasted by absorption, and the formation of swamps may seriously affect the health of the district, and ruin land, by water-logging, for any useful purpose.

In the second case, where the canal is all in embankment, there is always danger of breaches and consequent damage, and also the stoppage of irrigation when urgently required. In some soils the banks may require to be puddled.

The third case has several advantages. When the canal is partly in cut and partly in fill, the water has usually sufficient elevation above the land to give a command of level for purposes of irrigation.

It is also the most economical channel, as the cross-section can be arranged so that the earth excavated from the channel suffices for the banks, due allowance being made for shrinkage and waste.

It has a further advantage, where saving of time is an object in completing a work, as there is less material to be moved than when the canal is all in cut or all in fill.



The diagram, Figure 13, shows a cross-section of half of a canal, not drawn to scale, where the excavation is sufficient to make the banks, due allowance being made for shrinkage.

AB shows the surface of ground which is assumed to be level.

The channels of all rivers, unless when confined by rocks, are more or less liable to change their course. By referring to a map of any delta, the reader will observe that the characteristics of the delta form, is that a river, as it approaches the sea, should split up into two or more branches or arms, which again may be subdivided into smaller ones. This is well exemplified in the delta of the Nile, a diagram of which is given in the block-plan, Figure 31.

Each branch of a delta has a tract of country within its influence, and serves to extend the amount of alluvial deposit, either by raising its banks or by extending the delta seaward.

It is a common occurrence to find dry beds of rivers in alluvial plains, possessing all the characteristics of the existing channels. In some cases, channels may be found of such capacity as to show, without doubt, that they are deserted beds of the main stream; in others, there may be indications of a partial and gradually diminishing supply having reached them, which, by successive annual deposits, has curtailed their section to such an extent as to admit of their being adopted as irrigation channels, or if left entirely in their natural state, such channels may be silted up completely, by successive deposits from flood water and by drifted sand and dust, until they are no longer perceptible, and all that is left to mark their course is a ridge of high land.

It will thus be seen that an alluvial plain is not made up of an equable deposit of alluvial matter to the right and left of the main channel of a river, but, on the contrary, by that from a number of channels, some of which may subsequently be obliterated. The fall of the country, also, instead of only following the course of the main channel, will be affected equally by all the others. Intermediate between the channels, the ground will be

$x = NB$ = required depth of digging to give sufficient material to make the bank.

A = area of bank above EC .

B = area of canal below DE .

Then, whatever the position of the natural surface, A and B are constants.

It is required to determine the depth, BN , or x , so that the area of excavation $BFLKB$, shall be equal to the area of embankment $EFHPQME$, that is:—

$B - EFLDE = A + EFHCE$, that is:—

$$B - \frac{ED + FL}{2} \times (d - x) = A + \frac{EC + HF}{2} \times (d - x), \text{ that is:}$$

$$\frac{d - x}{2} \times \{ (ED + FL) + (EC + HF) \} = B - A$$

Now let $EC = w$, and

β = angle of BE and MQ with horizon, and

θ = angle of HP with horizon.

Then $HR = CR \cdot \cot \theta = (d - x) \cot \theta$

$SF = (d - x) \cot \beta$, and

$HF = w + (d - x) \times (\cot \beta + \cot \theta)$

$\therefore EC + HF = 2w + (d - x) \times (\cot \beta + \cot \theta)$

Now $ED = AD + AE = a + d \cot \beta$

and $FL = NL + NF = a + x \cot \beta$

$\therefore ED + FL = 2a + (d + x) \cot \beta$

Substituting the values of (EC + FH) and (ED + FL) in equation, and we have:—

$$\frac{d-x}{2} \times \left\{ 2a + (d+x) \cot \beta + 2w + (d-x)(\cot \beta + \cot \theta) \right\} \\ = B - A$$

$$\therefore \frac{x}{2} \cot \theta - x(a + d \cot \beta + w + d \cot \theta)$$

$$= B - A - d(a + w) - d^2 \cot \beta - \frac{d^2}{2} \cot \theta$$

From this equation the value of x can be found.

Example:—Given $\beta = \theta = 45^\circ$ and $\cot \beta = \cot \theta = 1$

Let $a = 50$ feet, $d = 8$ feet, $w = 40$ feet, $PQ = 25$ feet,

$QT = TM = 6$ feet $\therefore CM = 37$ feet.

$$\text{Then } B = ad + \frac{d^2}{2} = 432$$

$$A = \frac{25 + 37}{2} \times 6 = 186 \therefore \text{equation becomes}$$

$$\frac{x^2}{2} - 106x = 432 - 186 - 720 - 64 - 32$$

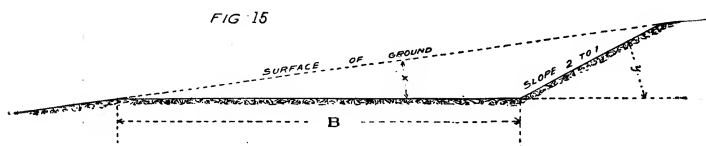
and $x = 5.53$ feet

Having determined the depth x , in either case, then an addition to that depth has to be made, in order to compensate for the *shrinkage* of the material and the waste.

Article 23. Canal on Sidelong Ground.

It sometimes happens that the headworks of a canal are so located that the canal before it reaches the plains has to follow along steep side-hill ground.

As a rule, in such sloping ground, it will be more economical to have a deep narrow channel than the usual wide and shallow channel suitable for the plains. A section with bed width equal to or about twice the depth is better adapted to steep ground than one with a greater bed width to depth.



The cross-section of a canal in sidelong ground is either all in cut, or partly in cut and partly in fill. In each case the upper part of the cut is triangular in shape with a horizontal base as shown in Figure 15. The outer side of the triangle has the slope of the natural ground, and the inner side the slope of the inner side of the canal in cut.

Table 14, given herewith, will facilitate the computation of the triangular portion.

Let B = width of base.

A = area of triangle.

x = angle of natural ground with horizon.

y = angle of side slope of cutting with horizon.

k = co-efficient, for value of which see table.

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{B}{\cot x - \cot y} \right)^2 = B^2 K$$

TABLE 14. Giving Values of the Co-efficient K.

Angle of ground α in degrees	Values of K for different slopes.			
	$\frac{1}{4}$ to 1	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	1 to 1	$1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1
1	.00877	.00880	.00888	.00896
2	.01761	.01777	.01809	.01842
3	.02655	.02691	.02765	.02844
4	.03558	.03623	.03759	.03906
5	.04472	.04575	.04793	.05035
6	.05397	.05646	.05873	.06239
7	.06334	.06541	.06999	.07525
8	.07283	.07558	.08176	.08904
9	.08246	.08600	.09410	.10387
10	.09220	.09670	.10700	.11990
11	.10215	.10765	.12064	.13720
12	.11230	.11900	.13510	.15620
13	.12250	.13050	.15008	.17661
14	.13290	.14240	.16610	.19920
15	.14359	.15470	.18300	.22404
16	.15430	.16720	.20080	.25120
17	.16551	.18045	.22018	.28241
18	.17660	.19370	.24070	.31640
19	.18838	.20797	.26257	.35617
20	.20000	.22220	.28570	.40090
21	.21230	.23753	.31151	.45261
22	.22520	.25380	.33890	.51280
23	.23743	.26942	.35688	.58445
24	.25000	.28570	.40120	.67020
25	.26391	.30405	.43687	.77624
26	.27770	.32250	.47610	.90900
27	.29194	.34186	.51942	1.08171
28	.30670	.36200	.56750	1.31230
29	.32173	.38340	.62185	1.64652
30	.33730	.40580	.68300	2.15510
32	.37030	.4545	.833	
34	.4058	.5091	1.0373	
36	.4440	.5707	1.3297	
38	.4854	.641	1.7857	
40	.5307	.7225	2.6041	
42	.5807	.8183		
44	.6364	.9345		
46	.6983	1.0729		
48	.7692	1.25		
50	.8488	1.475		

Article 24. Shrinkage of Earthwork.

In the construction of embankments with earthy matter, sandy loam and similar materials, whether for canals or reservoirs, due allowance should be made for the shrinkage or settlement of the material.

The following extract, on this subject, is from a paper by the writer, on the *Shrinkage of Earthwork*, published in the Transactions of the Technical Society of the Pacific Coast of June, 1885:—

“Books of reference in the English language usually give the shrinkage of different materials, without making any allowance on account of different methods of construction and different heights of bank. For instance, the shrinkage of earth in general is given at about 10 per cent. Now, if 10 per cent. be sufficient for the shrinkage of a bank of that material, and 30 feet in height, constructed from the end of bank to the full height by “tipping” from wagons, surely a similar bank only 12 feet high, built up in layers, and consolidated by good scraper work, will shrink much less than 10 per cent.

“In no other branch of Civil Engineering, since the time when railroads were first commenced, has such an immense quantity of work been carried out, and expenditures incurred, as in earthworks; and in no other branch of engineering, of equal importance, have so few experiments, on a scale adequate to the interests involved, been published. In other branches of engineering, long, tedious and expensive experiments are carried out without any other return resulting from them than the information they give; but experiments on earthwork could be carried out on a large scale, as actual work, and with little, if any, additional expense more than the contract price of the work.

"Some of the materials are mentioned more than once, in the table given below, with a slight change in name, but the writer deems it better to give each author's own words descriptive of the material than to make a selection of the materials under a fewer number of names.

TABLE 15. Giving Shrinkage of Different Materials.

MATERIAL.	AUTHORITY.	Percent'ge of Increase + or Diminution — of Embankment to excavation	REMARKS.
Sand.....	Hewson.....	— 10	
Very light sand.....	Graeff.....	— 10	
Light sandy earth.....	Morris.....	— 12.5	
Light sandy soil.....	Molesworth.....	— 11	
Gravel and sand.....	Vose.....	— 9	
Sand and gravel.....	Trautwine—Searle.....	— 8	
Earth.....	Miss. Levees, 1882.....	.....	1-5 addition to height of bank
Earth.....	Simms.....	— 10	
Earth (scraper work).....	Canadian Pacific R. R.....	.....	Shrinkage of bank 10 %.
Earth (grading machine).....	Canadian Pacific R. R.....	.....	Shrinkage of bank 15 to 17 %.
Earth (carefully tamped).....	Graeff.....	— 9 to — 20	
Loam & light sandy earth.....	Vose.....	— 12	
Loam.....	Trautwine—Searle.....	— 12	
Clay and earth.....	Vose.....	— 10	
Yellow clayey earth.....	Morris.....	— 10	
Gravelly earth.....	Morris.....	— 8.5	
Gravel.....	Molesworth—Vose.....	— 8	
Clay.....	Hewson.....	.....	1-6 addition to height of bank
Clay.....	Trautwine—Searle.....	— 10	
Clay before subsidence.....	Molesworth.....	+ 20	
Clay after subsidence.....	Molesworth.....	— 8	
Puddled clay.....	Trautwine.....	— 25	
Wet soil.....	Searle.....	— 15	
Loose vegetable surf, soil.....	Trautwine.....	— 15	
Chalk.....	Molesworth.....	+ 30	
Rock.....	Vose.....	+ 50	
Rock.....	Graeff.....	+ 50 to + 60	
Rock.....	Rhine Nahe Railroad.....	+ 25	
Rock.....	Trautwine.....	+ 66 to + 75	
Rock, large fragments.....	Searle.....	+ 60	
Hard sandstone rock, large fragments.....	Morris.....	+ 42	
Blue slate rock, small fragments.....	Morris.....	+ 60	
Rock, large blocks.....	Molesworth.....	+ 50	
Rock, medium fragments.....	Searle.....	+ 70	
Rock, medium unselected.....	Molesworth.....	+ 25 to + 30	
Rock (metal).....	Molesworth.....	+ 20	
Rock, small fragments.....	Searle.....	+ 80	
Rock fragments (loose heap).....	Trautwine.....	+ 90	
Rock fragments (carelessly piled).....	Trautwine.....	+ 75	
Rock fragments (carefully piled).....	Trautwine.....	+ 60	
Rock with considerable clay.....	Graeff.....	+ 0	

Article 25. Works of Irrigation Canals.

The works of irrigation canals include, weirs, dams, regulators, sluice-gates, scouring-sluices, movable dams, bridges, culverts, aqueducts, superpassages, flumes, inverted syphons, level crossings, inlets, drops or falls, rapids, tunnels, escapes or wastes, silt-traps or sand boxes, retaining walls, modules for measuring water, cuttings, embankments, and, on navigable canals, locks. It is very seldom, however, that a canal has all the above works. These works are described, somewhat in detail, in the following pages.

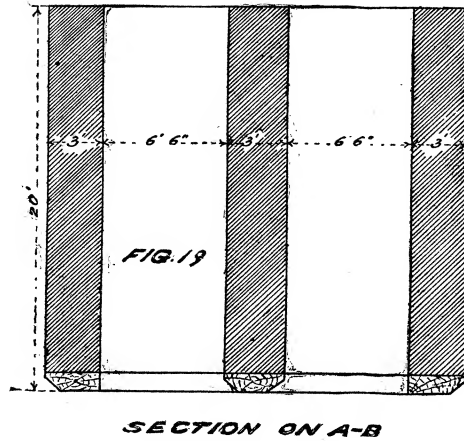
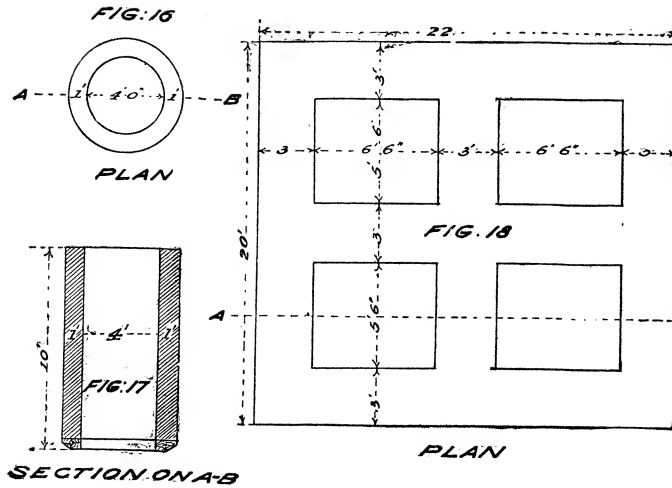
Article 26. Wells and Blocks.

As wells and blocks are frequently referred to in the descriptions of the foundations of works in India, a brief description of them is herewith given.

Wells for foundations are usually brick cylinders, which are sunk to a certain depth in a sandy river. After they are sunk to the required depth they are filled, or partly filled, with concrete. When the lower part only is filled with concrete, the upper part is filled in with sand over the concrete. In addition to being a foundation for weirs, wells also diminish the cross-sectional area of the bed of the river through which percolation takes place.

A *block*, as its name implies, is a block of masonry having one or more vertical holes through it. Blocks answer the same purpose in every respect as wells. Figures 16 and 17 show a plan and cross-section of one of the wells under the walls of the Sone Weir, shown in Figure 37, and Figures 18 and 19 show a plan and cross-section of one of the blocks under the piers of the Solani Aqueduct, shown in Article 34.

The method pursued in sinking them is as follows:—

WELLS AND BLOCKS

If the wells to be constructed and sunk are on a sand-bank in the river bed, which is dry, the sand is excavated until water is reached, then the well-curbs are placed on the level of the water, and the masonry of the well is commenced; but if a stream has to be crossed, it is

diverted from that part of the river, after which the water is dammed and stilled. This is, of course, often a very difficult operation where the bed of a river consists of sand to a depth of, perhaps sixty feet. After the water is stilled, sand is thrown in, and an embankment formed across it, sufficiently wide to found the wells on; they are then built on it and afterwards sunk.

The wells are allowed to stand from ten to fifteen days after being built, to allow the masonry to set. The wells are then sunk by excavating the sand from within them, it being generally found that the quantity of excavation is about double the cubic area of the well sunk. The wells under the walls of the Sone Weir, Figures 16 and 17, are six feet wide on exterior diameter, and are sunk from eight to twelve feet below low water mark. These wells are sunk in single rows, each well being separated from the next one, in the line crossing the river, by a space of about six inches. The inside of the wells and the craters all around them are then filled in with rubble stone, the surface to a depth of two feet inside, and between, the wells being filled with concrete. Large stone slabs are then placed over the top of the wells, binding the walls to the hearting, and also bonding them to one another, and the masonry of the well is then commenced.

Wells have been sunk for foundations of bridges in sandy rivers, to a depth of over seventy feet.

Article 27. Headworks of Irrigation Canals.

The works at the head of a canal, for regulating and controlling the quantity of water required to be admitted to it, consist of a Weir across the river, by which the water is checked and diverted into it, and a Regulator across the head of the canal, by which the proper quantity of water is admitted.

low, and the line formed by the intersection of the two planes sloping away from their respective banks, will evidently indicate the course in which the drainage from those plains will tend to flow. Such lines will be found also on the extreme boundaries of a delta, receiving on one side the drainage of a portion of the delta, and on the other that of the country independent of it.

After these remarks it is time to explain that the irrigation of a tract of country is based on very simple principles. Supposing that a supply of water is required for the land near the bank of a river, which has ceased to overflow it, but which may rise to the lip of the channel, then as the country falls away from the river, it will be readily understood that a cut through the bank will give the means of irrigating the ground beyond. This may be considered the simplest form of irrigation. Again, if the surface of the river falls so considerably below the lip of the channel, as to be incapable of supplying water to the land at a distance, by means of a cut carried at right angles to the course of the river, the difficulty may be surmounted by excavating a channel in an oblique direction; for the course of a river is seldom straight for a few miles, and an artificial channel may be formed in a straight line, which will carry water to a higher level than that of the surface of the river at any point opposite to it. For every mile of its course, it thus gains something on the surface of the level of the river, and it becomes a matter of simple calculation to find how far it will have to be carried before the water issues on the surface. For example, let the plain below *B*, Figure 1, require to be irrigated from the river *C D*.

Suppose that the surface of the country from the foot hills at *A*, *A*, *A*, to *B*, falls at the rate of two feet per mile. Let the country be traversed by a river, *C D*, and

In the Regulator are fixed sliding gates, or some other device, to control the supply of water to the canal, and in the weir and near the head gate is placed a Scouring Sluice to control somewhat the flow of water in the river past the head gate.

The operation of the Weir, Scouring Sluices and Regulator is so intimately connected, that a description of one of them applies more or less to the others; therefore, the descriptions given below, in the articles entitled *Diversion Weirs, Scouring Sluices and Regulators*, are only descriptions of different parts of the Headworks.

The requirement for good headworks for an irrigation canal are the following—but these are seldom to be found in one place:—

1. Permanent banks, and bed, which will prevent the river from eroding the banks and endangering the regulator, etc.

2. A straight reach of the river for say half a mile up and down the river from the weir.

3. A velocity in the river as low as, or not much greater than, the velocity in the canal. The nearer the velocity in the canal approaches to that of the river, the less silt will be deposited in the former.

4. That the current of the river should flow at right angles to the center line of the canal at its head.

5. That the river at the headworks, and after the construction of the weir, shall not overflow its banks.

6. That the bank of the river at the regulator is not very high, so as not to involve very heavy digging for the first few miles of the canal.

With reference to the third requirement mentioned above, Mr. C. E. Fahey, M. Inst. C. E., states:*

*Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Vol. 71.

“If the velocity (in the river) across the mouth of a canal exceeds the proposed velocity in the canal, the result must be that the latter will soon silt up. Of course some silt will deposit in all but the largest canals, in which a high velocity can be kept up; but if a canal is led off from a point in the river where the velocity is from five to six feet per second, the water (in the Indus) at this point will have its full proportion of silt in suspension, and the heaviest part of this silt, namely the sand, which the above velocity was able to keep in suspension, will drop in the mouth of the canal, where the velocity is suddenly reduced to about three feet per second. This fact admits of no dispute. It is proved every year in the Sind Canals. If a canal is in fair order, that is, if it has a properly regulated width and bed-slope, the sandy deposit will be distributed along the upper third of the canal, the heavier sand in the first mile or so, the finer lower down, and the clay at the extreme tail, while the central portion will seldom or never require cleaning. Although the velocity in the canal is not sufficient to carry on the sand, it is sufficient to carry on the clay, and if only escapes could be provided at the tails of all canals, which is not practicable in Sind, there would be no clay to be annually removed.”

Article 28. Diversion Weirs.

WEIRS—DAMS—ANICUTS—BARRAGES.

A *Diversion Weir* is a weir built across a river to *divert* the water into the canal. At certain times, and always during floods, the water flows over part or the whole of this weir.

A *Reservoir Dam* is used to impound water, and, except in very rare cases, no water flows over its top. In engineering literature the terms weir, dam, anicut in

Madras, and barrage in Egypt, are also used to designate a weir across a river.

The cross-sections of diversion weirs are as different in form as the materials of which they are constructed. The drawings in this article give several examples, showing the sections adopted in different countries, to suit the material available for their construction, and their foundation in the beds of the rivers across which they are constructed.

Canals have frequently been taken off from rivers without weirs, but where these rivers are liable to change their beds by erosion of their banks, or where they carry large quantities of silt in suspension, it has been found impossible to regulate both the river channel and also the supply of water into canals on their banks, without a weir built right across the stream.

Some canals, without weirs, have their beds at the off-take, much lower than the beds of the river from which they derive their supply, with a view of obtaining a supply at the low stage of the river, but this is objectionable for several reasons, one is the great quantity of sand and silt likely to be carried into the canal and, therefore, the difficulty and expense of keeping the deep channel open.

In some cases, in Northern India, the canal is taken out of a branch of the main river; and the permanent diversion weir is thrown across the branch only, the water being diverted from the main stream into the branch by temporary dams constructed of bowlders, which are swept away on the rise of the river, and annually replaced. This arrangement has chiefly been due to the very heavy expense which would be incurred in throwing a permanent dam across the main river itself. An example of this method was in operation a few years since at the headworks of the Upper Ganges Canal shown in Figure 26.

Dams in rivers are made solid, except at the scouring sluices, when they are called weirs. Of these, Figures 37, 39 and 43 are good examples.

When they are provided with openings through their whole length, or the greater part of their length, they are called dams in India. Indeed the term dam is always, in Northern India, understood to mean an *open* dam, or one partly open and partly closed. Examples of this latter class of dam are to be found in the Kern River dam, Figure 20, the Myapore dam, Figure 27, and the Barrage of the Nile, Figure 32.

The advantage of the *Weir* is that it is *self-acting*, requiring no establishment to work it, and if properly made ought to cost little for repairs. It is also a stronger construction, better able to withstand shocks from floating timbers, etc. Its disadvantages are, that it causes a great accumulation of silt, bowlders, etc., above it, and interferes far more than an open dam, with the normal regimen of the river. It is possible, that in certain cases, this might result in forcing the whole or part of the river water to seek another channel, and the possibility of this should always be taken into account; but if the river has no other channel down which it could force its way, the accumulation of material above the weir would be an advantage rather than otherwise, as adding to its strength.

The advantage claimed for the open dam is that the interference with the normal action of the river is reduced to a minimum, the strong scour obtained by opening its gates effectually preventing any accumulation of silt above.

A *dam*, in India, consists of a series of piers at regular intervals apart, on a masonry flooring carried right across and flush with the river bed, protected from erosive action by curtain walls of masonry up and down stream.

The piers are grooved for the reception of sleepers or stout planks, by lowering or raising which the water passing down the river is kept under control. The intervals between the piers may be six to ten feet, which is a manageable length for the sleepers. If the river is navigable at the head, one or two twenty feet openings fitted with gates must be provided to enable boats to pass.

The flooring must be carried well into the banks of the river on both sides, to prevent the ends of the dam being turned, and the banks and bed of the river will generally require to be artificially protected for some distance, above and below the dam, to stand the violent action of the water when the gates are partially closed.

The two flanks of the dam for some length are generally built as weirs; that is, instead of having piers and gates, the masonry is carried up solid to a certain height so that when the water rises above that height, it may flow over the top of it. The advantage of this arrangement is, that it affords an escape for water in case of a sudden flood when the dam may be closed, while, when the water is low, they keep it in the center of the river and away from the flanks, and thereby create a more perfect scour.

When the river is subject to sudden and violent floods, damage might be done before the sleepers could be all raised, one by one; it is better therefore to employ flood or *drop-gates* in such a case; that is, gates which turn upon hinges in the piers at the level of the flooring and which when shut are held up by chains against the force of the water. In case of flood, the chains are loosened, the gates drop down, and the water flows over them. Should the intervals between the piers be over ten feet, there would be a difficulty in hauling the gates up again.

A bridge of communication may be made between the

piers of the dam if required. But as it is not desirable to have it obstructed with traffic, it may be merely a light foot-bridge, or the intervals may be spanned temporarily with spare sleepers.

The dam and regulator are generally close together and connected by a line of revetment wall, as shown in Figures 28, 31, 40 and 48.*

In some cases iron or stone posts were fixed on the crest of the weir. Planks laid horizontally are fixed in grooves in these posts to raise the water about two feet higher than the crest of the weir. These planks are removed before the occurrence of floods.

The greater number of the weirs or dams across Indian rivers, and almost all those of modern date, are located at right angles to the general direction of the rivers. It is well known that the tendency of *oblique* weirs is to divert the strongest stream, and consequently the deepest channel towards the bank on which the upper end of the oblique weir is situated. It was, no doubt, quite true that, in rivers where a good foundation could be obtained, there would be very little objection to oblique weirs; but in rivers such as those which had to be dealt with in India, with sandy beds and difficult foundations, they were very objectionable, for three reasons:—

Firstly, they induced currents parallel to the weir;

Secondly, they caused a deepening of the channel above the weir, near the up-stream end, which was dangerous; and

Thirdly, they raised the level of the water in the river at the lower end of the weir.†

Another reason is that they cost more than the straight

*Roorkee Treatise on Civil Engineering.

†R. B. Buckley, C. E., in Proceedings of I. C. E., Volume 60.

weir, and, therefore, for all these reasons the latter weir is preferred in India.

The location of the dam should be studied with a view to the avoidance of flooding the country above the dam in the high stages of the river. To prevent flooding, long and heavy embankments had to be made above the Narora weir.

In order to reduce the first cost of construction, it has become a custom to build bridges and dams across streams at the narrowest point available, or to contract the stream for that purpose. This frequently involves great difficulties to the engineer in laying the piers and abutments, and also brings in an element of danger by adding to the scouring effect of the waters in the contracted channel. Moreover, it generally produces evil effects by the formation of shoals below the scoured-out channel.

The proper location for such works, and especially for dams across a river with unstable banks, where the highest factor of safety is desired, is in the broad reaches of the stream, where the depth of water is usually less, and especially in places where a "bar" has already been formed across the river by natural causes.

The dam across a river is not only analogous to a "bar" formed by natural causes, but in the scheme of irrigation by gravitation it is a "bar," and should be located and treated as such. If this is done at a broad passage of the stream, or where it has its average width, the first cost of material and workmanship may possibly be increased beyond a similar work at a contracted passage; but this is not an absolute necessity, as many of the ordinary difficulties to be overcome by the engineer are much lessened, and danger to the work in progress, and when finished is much reduced during floods and ice-gorges. The adjacent banks are less liable to be torn

away, wing-dams are avoided, the levees are less expensive and less liable to abrasion and to crevasses, there is less cost for protecting works, and less cost of subsequent supervision and repairs.*

With three exceptions, none of the weirs described in this article raise the water higher than fourteen feet. Indeed, all the weirs in the wide, sandy rivers of India are low weirs of the type of the Okhla Weir, Figure 39, in Northern India, and of the Godavery Anicut, Figure 44, in Madras.

The high weirs, the Turlock Weir, Figure 45, and the Henares Weir, Figure 46, have a cross-section not in favor in India. It is very likely that an Indian engineer would reverse these cross-sections and place the vertical side down-stream, with a water-cushion on the lower side, to receive the falling water and diminish its destructive effect. This will be referred to when describing the dams mentioned.

The Cavour Canal weir has a cross-section similar to the Ogee falls first constructed on the canals in Northern India. These falls destroyed themselves, and they had to be replaced by vertical falls with water-cushions. This is referred to in the article entitled *Falls*. Two of the weirs have *vertical drops*, the Streeviguntum Anicut, Figure 41, and Narora Weir, Figure 43. The latter, however, has a water-cushion three feet in depth at the low stage of the river, while the apron of the former is laid at the level of the low-water of the river.

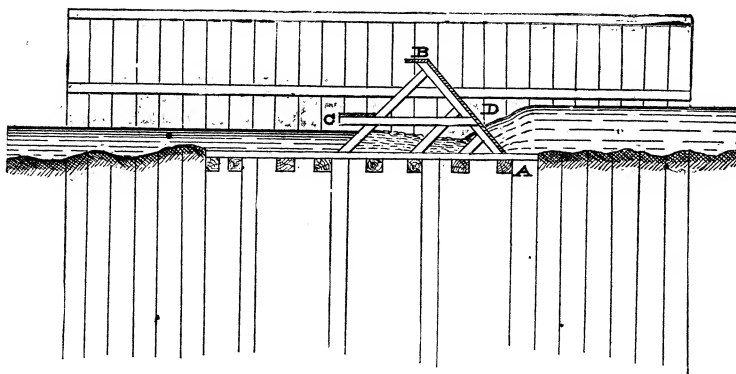
In America there are numerous dams of a temporary character which are made of brush and bowlders. At Phoenix, Arizona, dams are formed of stakes, brush and bowlders, rendered water-tight by filling in up stream, with gravel and sand. Stakes are first driven

*Irrigation in India, Egypt and India, by Professor George Davidson.

across the channel, and between these, bundles of fascines of willow trees, about three inches in diameter at their butts, are laid, with butts down stream, and weighted with a layer of bowlders; tule reeds in bundles are also used, mixed with willow and cottonwood tree. In alternate layers the dam is built up to the height of five feet. The willows sprout and the whole forms a mass of living brush and bowlders. When the current is too strong for a man to withstand while driving stakes, cribs are made and floated out and sunk, as was done with the fascine dam at Merced Canal head, in California.

The cross-section of the weir of the Calloway Canal, across the Kern River, California, is shown in Figure 20. The plan of the head works of this canal is shown in the article entitled *Methods of Irrigation*.

FIG 20



The Calloway Canal is diverted from the right bank of the Kern River, a few miles above Bakersfield. The average maximum discharge during the rainy season is probably over 19,000 cubic feet per second. The water of the canal is diverted from the river by a *very light*, open, wooden weir, extending at right angles to, and entirely across, the river from bank to bank. The length

of this diversion weir is 400 feet. The weir rests on three rows of 4"x12" anchor piles at right angles to the course of the river, and two rows of 4"x12" sheet piling, at the wings parallel to the course of the stream. The piles are driven ten feet into the bed of the river. On the bed of the river and resting on the tops of the piles, and on the mud sills, to which it is securely spiked, a flooring of plank two inches thick is fixed. This floor is about thirty feet in length in the direction of the river.

The trestles, *A, B, C, D*, Figure 20, are about four feet from center to center. These trestles support the planking, *A, B*, two inches thick, which holds up the water and thus diverts it into the canal. There are two light foot-bridges on the weir shown at *B*, and *C*. All the planking, *A, B*, are shown in position. When this happens the water on the up-stream side of *A, B*, is level, but as shown in Figure 20 some of the planking, not on the line of the cross-section are assumed to be out and water is flowing through the weir.

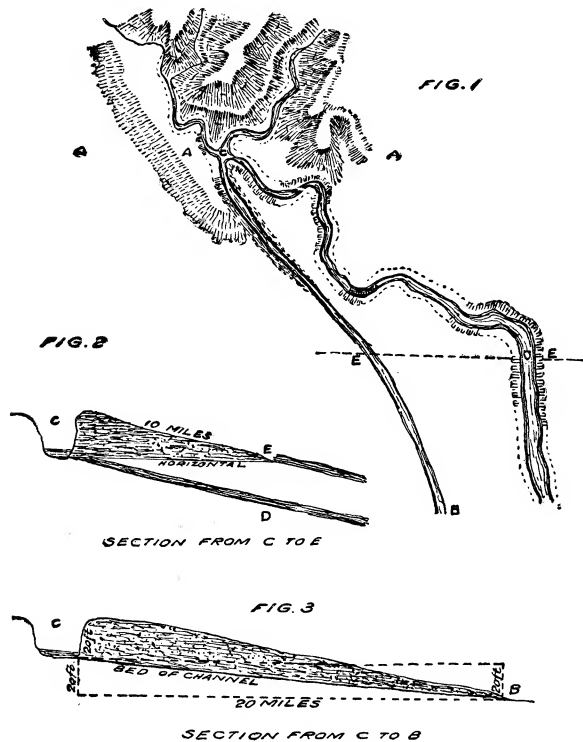
One man, standing on the foot-bridge, operates the two-inch flash-boards with an iron hooked rod. The total height of the weir is ten feet above the floor.

The Head-Sluice or Regulator, at the head of the Calloway Canal, is of similar construction to the weir just described, but exceeding it by one foot in height.

These head-works are in use seven years and they are reported to give satisfaction. As the whole weir is open in flood time the river bed above it has not silted up.

There is not, probably in the world, a lighter or cheaper weir, of an equal length, and situated on the sandy bed of a river, that has acted so efficiently, and that costs less, for its operation and maintenance. It was a bold undertaking to attempt to control such a river, having a flood discharge of over 19,000 cubic feet per second, with such a light structure, and it well exemplifies one of the *Peculiarities of American Engineering*.

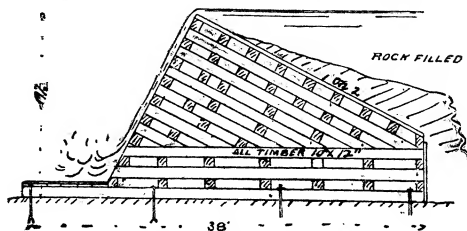
let the surface of the water in this river throughout its length be about twenty feet below its banks. If, then, a channel, *C E*, be excavated with a horizontal bed and the water at *C* raised very slightly by a weir in the river at this point, then the water from the river above *C* would flow along this channel until it reached *E*, a point at right angles to the river at *D*, whence the water might be conducted to irrigate the lower portions of the slope, *E B*.



In like manner if the bed of the channel were made to fall one foot per mile, it would at ten miles be only ten feet below the country at *E*, and at twenty miles, having gained a foot per mile, it would emerge on its surface at *B*.

The cross-section of the weir of the Bear River Canal, in Utah, is shown in Figure 21.

FIG. 21



Cross Section Bear River Weir.

Its location is well selected, as it has high rock abutments and a rock foundation. It is constructed of crib-work of sawn lumber. Between the crib-work it is filled in with earth and loose rock, and the up stream side, which has a slope of two to one, is filled in with rock. The down stream side has a slope of one-half to one. The lowest sills of the crib, ten inches by twelve inches, are drift bolted to the bed rock and on these planking is spiked, on the down stream side, to protect the foundation from the effect of the falling water.*

The weir across the North Poudre River, at the head of the North Poudre Irrigation Canal in Colorado is, in the center, thirty feet six inches high, and 150 feet wide on the top, and it is formed in two parts. The down-stream division, or face, which gives the necessary stability against floods, consists of crib-work and stones; the up-stream or back, which renders the weir water-tight, being a vertical panel or diaphragm of timber, backed with earth, small stones, gravel and mud, thrown in without puddling.

The crib-work is formed of round logs, ten inches at

*American Irrigation Engineering by Mr. H. M. Wilson, M. Am. Soc. C. E., in Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers, Vol. 24.

CRIB DAM ON NORTH POUDRE IRRIGATION CANAL

FIG. 22

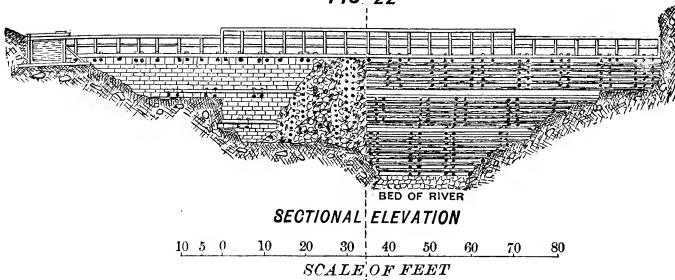
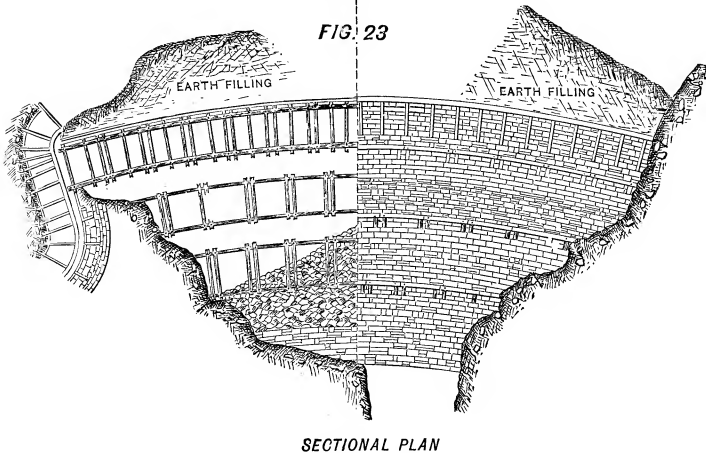


FIG. 23

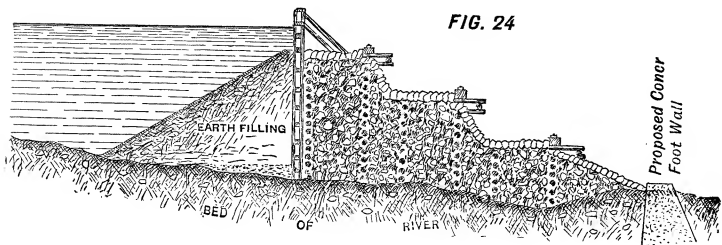


least in diameter, joined at the ends, as in ordinary log huts, with dovetail or tongue joints. Figures 22, 23, 24 and 25, give plans and sections of the weir. Each crib is ten feet long on the face, and is fastened together with eighteen-inch treenails, two inches in diameter. The cribs are radiated so as to form, when laid close together across the stream, curved tiers of 200 feet, 216 feet, and 232 feet radius on the face. There are three of these tiers, of different heights, six feet asunder. The interior of the cribs, and the spaces between the tiers, are filled with stones, and the exterior surfaces are faced with

large selected blocks of stone, carefully laid so as to overlap each other like the slates or tiles of a house, and without mortar. The arrises are protected by twelve-inch square blocks, securely bolted to the cribs. The timber diaphragm is carried four feet higher than the

CRIB DAM NORTH POUDRE IRRIGATION CANAL

Scale 32 Feet to one Inch

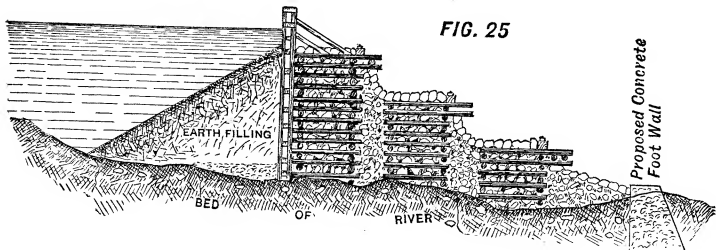


SECTION THROUGH CENTER OF CRIBS

cribs and stonework of the tallest tier, to form a "slash board," which can be removed in sections in case it is found liable to be damaged by ice. The center portion of the weir for a length of sixty feet, is carried two feet

CRIB DAM NORTH POUDRE IRRIGATION CANAL

Scale 32 Feet to one Inch.

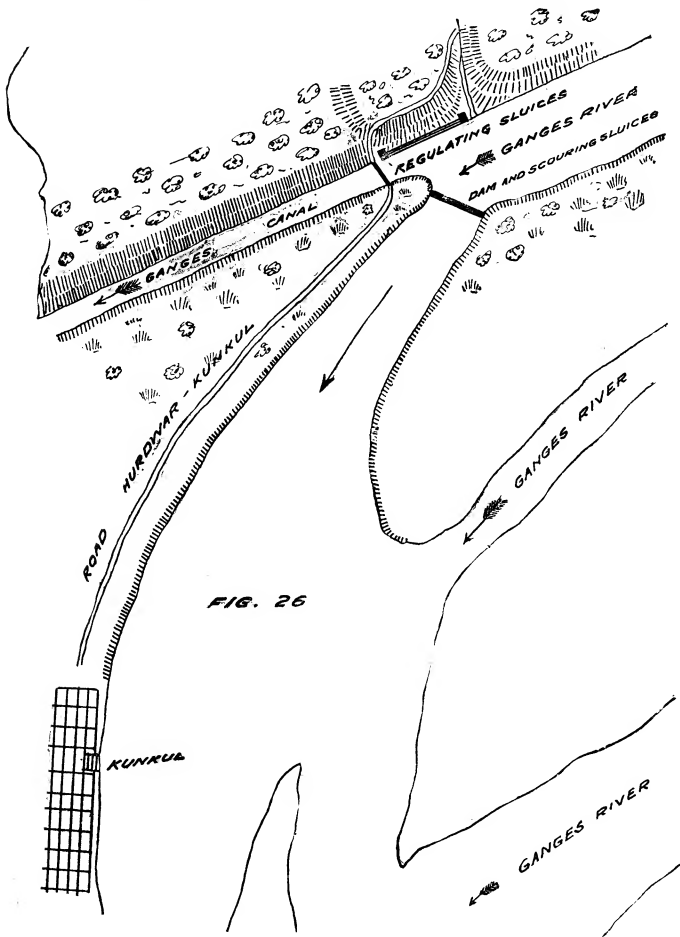


SECTION AT ENDS OF CRIBS

higher than the sides, to throw the bulk of the stream on to natural benches of solid quartz rock on the sides, and thereby to protect the greater part of the face, and especially the toe in the center of the stream from the abrading power of the water.

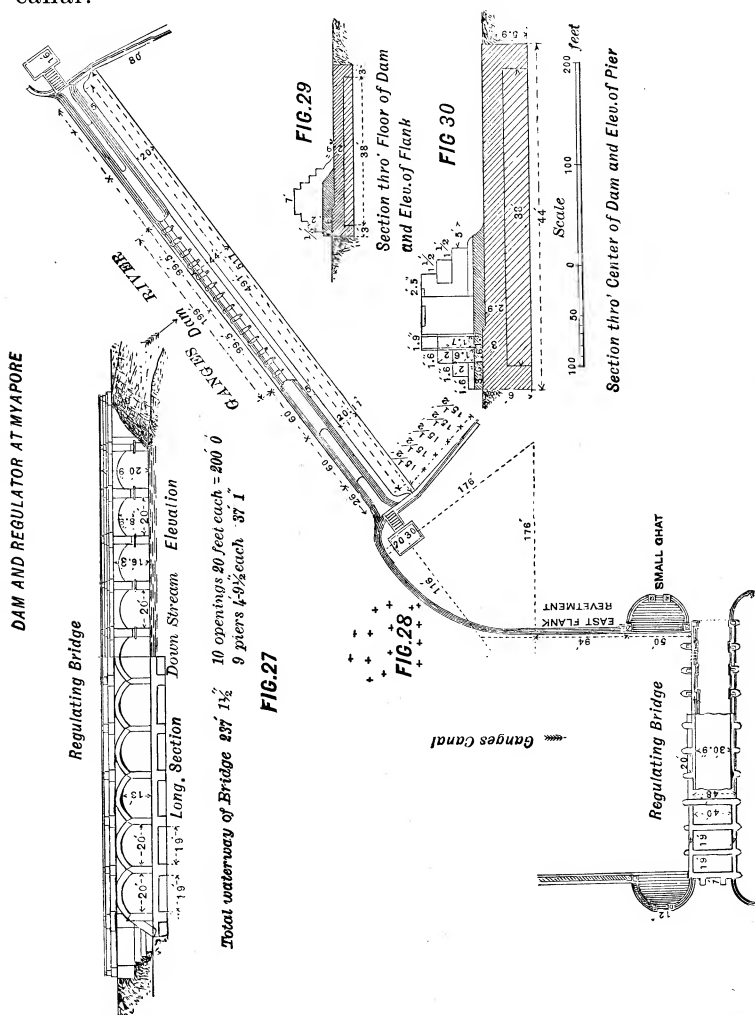
The weir was founded on stone and debris, the depth of which had not been sounded, but it was hoped that

PLAN OF HEADWORKS OF UPPER GANGES CANAL.



the clay thrown into the back of the weir, combined with the silting up of the river, would have the effect of putting a stop to the flow of the water, and the result has justified the expectation. At first the water leaked

through and there was some difficulty in stopping it, but it was finally arrested. The weir was simply for the purpose of lifting the water high enough to enter the canal.*



*Irrigation in New Countries, by Mr. P. O'Meara, M. Inst., C. E., in Transactions of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Vol. 73.

The Myapore Headworks of the Upper or Original Ganges Canal are shown in the general plan, Figure 26, and in detail in Figures 27, 28, 29 and 30.

This weir is an example of an "open dam," differing from the unbroken "anicut" of Madras, and the solid weirs with scouring sluices, such as the Sone, Okhla and Narora weirs, built in later years in Northern India. As stated by the designer, Sir P. Cautley, in the following extract, this dam is "in fact a line of sluices with gates or shutters, which are capable of being laid entirely open down to the bed of the river during the period of flood." This weir is designed somewhat on the plans of the Barrage of the Nile, a description of which is given below.

This dam differs also from the weirs now generally constructed in regard to its position in relation to the head sluices of the canal, which are, at Myapore, placed in a "*regulating bridge*," situated, not on the flank revetments immediately adjoining the weir abutment, but two hundred feet or more down the canal. This is a defective arrangement, as the *pocket* thus formed between the regulator and the actual commencement of the canal channel is filled by an almost still back-water, when the flood-waters are pouring over the dam; and this *pocket* becomes shingled up, with seven or eight feet in depth of bowlders and sand, marked * * * on Figure 28, and the supply, especially at low water, is reduced until this accumulation is cleared away.

The left flank of the dam abuts upon an island, in which nearly one-half of its full width is excavated.

The flooring of the dam and of the regulating bridge are laid on one level, and the front line of the latter is the zero to which the whole line of the canal is referable, as to levels and length. The zero point for levels

was fixed at the level of the bed of the river at the location of the regulator.

The dam itself, which is 517 feet between the flanks, is pierced in its center by fifteen openings of ten feet wide each; the sills or floorings of each opening being raised two and a-half feet from the zero line. These floorings are so constructed, that, if necessary, they may be removed, and a flush waterway be obtained as low as zero. The piers between the above openings are eight feet in height, so that the elevated flooring leaves the depth of sluice-gate equal to five and a-half feet. The piers are fitted with grooves for the admission of planks.

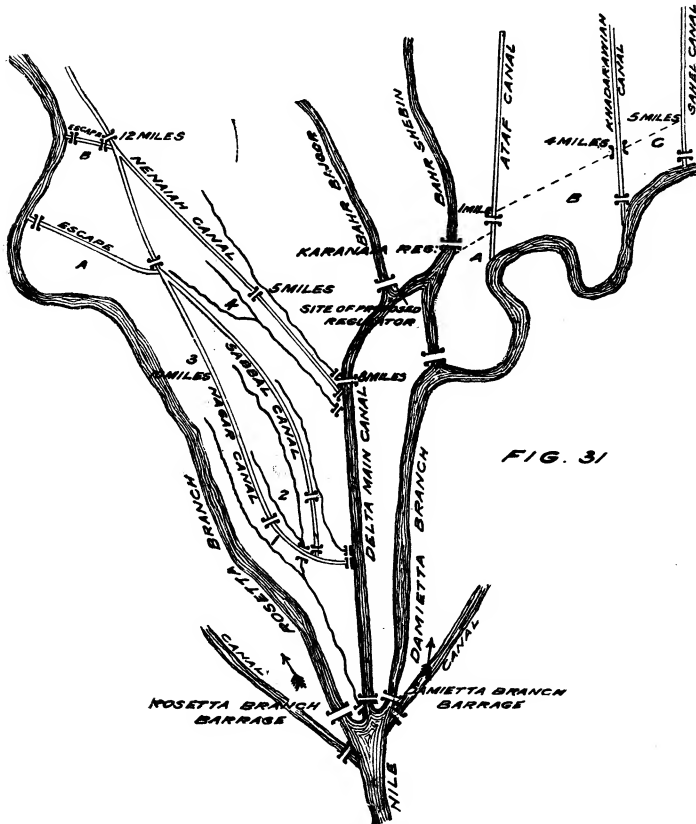
The Regulating Bridge, at the head of the canal, has ten bays or openings each twenty feet in width and sixteen feet in height, each bay being fitted with gates and the necessary apparatus for opening or closing them.

The narrowness of the platform, only forty-four feet, contrasts strangely, at this time, with the width of other weirs, as for example the Sone, the Okhla and the Lower Ganges, shown in Figures 37, 39 and 43, but it must be remembered that the bed of the Ganges at Myapore consists of large and small bowlders, forming a natural talus or apron below the weir; and that owing to the back-water of the other open channels of the river, which form a water-cushion below the weir, the bed of the Myapore channel below it has a tendency to rise instead of being scoured away. The above arrangement is given to illustrate what kind of headwork was adopted when the Original Ganges Canal was projected, but of late years a new weir, across the whole Ganges River, has been constructed, two or three miles above the Myapore dam, which somewhat modifies the above arrangements.*

*Roorkee Treatise on Civil Engineering

The Barrages of the Nile, at its bifurcation at the Rosetta and Damietta branches, are open weirs or dams, provided with openings along their entire length. Since

PLAN OF PART OF THE NILE DELTA
SHOWING LOCATION OF BARRAGES AND CANALS.



the Nile in Egypt during flood, is considerably above the level of the country, which is protected by embankments from inundation, it would have been dangerous to build

a solid barrage, which would have still further raised the water surface, unless a length of barrage could have been obtained much in excess of the normal width of the river.

A plan of the head of the Delta of the Nile, showing the positions of the barrages, is given in Figure 31, and Figures 32, 33 and 34 give the plan and longitudinal and cross-sections of the barrage of the Rosetta Branch. A view of the barrage is given in Figure 35.

The Egyptians call the barrage the "Bridge of Blessings," for the reason that it has considerably extended the area of irrigation during the period when it is urgently required in Lower Egypt. The barrage crosses the Nile about twelve miles below Cairo, at the point where the river divides into two branches. The length of the western or Rosetta branch, following the sinuosities of its course, is about 116 miles, and of the eastern or Damietta branch, 124 miles. The plain which they traverse, termed the Delta, presents a front to the Mediterranean of about 180 miles, and forms by far the most valuable portion of the lands of Egypt.

To form an idea of the barrage, with the aid of the drawings, imagine a bridge or viaduct of solid proportions established at the head of the delta, on each of the two branches of the river, and above these bridges the headworks of three great canals, destined to traverse in their course the Eastern, the Central or Delta, and the Western Provinces of Lower Egypt. If the arches of these bridges were closed by sluices, the water would of course be backed up and inundate the valley, unless it were carried off by the canals fed from the river and restrained by the banks formed to control its overflow. The water thus raised and thrown into the three canals, of which mention has been made, could then be discharged at will, on any of the lands of Lower Egypt

through openings made in the canal banks. When the Nile commenced to rise, the sluices in the arches of the bridge would be opened gradually, until at the time of the great floods, there would be no obstruction, except the piers of the bridges, to the passage of the waters. By this system it would be possible to regulate the height of water as desired, to increase the height of feeble floods, and to diminish somewhat the effect of violent floods by discharging water through the three main canals.

M. Mougel, an able French engineer, designed the barrages, and constructed them under great difficulties. During his absence from Egypt they were condemned as unsafe, and for twenty years, from 1862 to 1882, they were never used to raise the Nile water to anything like the height originally contemplated. About the latter date, General Sir C. C. Scott Moncrieff, R. E., took charge of the work, and since then he has so thoroughly repaired and strengthened the foundations of the barrages, that they now retain a head of water never attempted before he took charge of the works. After making a partial success of the barrages, General Moncrieff publicly acknowledged, in the most generous manner, the great ability of M. Mougel, the original designer of the works.

The following description explains the barrages as they existed, before the construction of the works to reinforce the foundations, carried out by General Moncrieff.

The Nile barrages are two open weirs thrown across the heads of the Rosetta and Damietta branches, at the apex of the Delta. Of the two branches the Rosetta has nearly twice the flood supply of the Damietta, while its bed is some six feet lower. The Damietta branch feeds eight important canals. The Rosetta barrage is 1,437 feet between the flanks, and the Damietta 1,709.

When, however, the ground falls at right angles to, as well as with the course of the river, the water would come to the surface of the ground at a less distance from *C*, than 20 miles.

The case is more unfavorable, in the higher reaches of a river above the delta, where the country slopes upwards away from the river. In this case the water for the lands farthest from the river must be brought from a part of the river nearer to its source, and the excavations must be deeper; or, as will often happen, the expense bearing too high a ratio to the attainable advantage, the irrigation must be restricted to those lands which lie nearest to the source of the river, and at the lowest levels.

It is the depth of the surface of the water below the bank of the river at the head of the channel, and the relative slope of the bed of the channel and the surface of the country through which it passes, which determines the least length of the channel.

In order to obtain command of level, and in order to get on the high ground without much heavy digging, it is sometimes necessary to locate the head of the canal high up on the river's course. For this purpose it is sometimes necessary to go either to the spot at which the river finally leaves the hills to flow through the plains, or to a point not far below that spot. Moreover, at this point the water, except in freshets, is comparatively free from silt, the great enemy of canals, and the course of the river is restricted within narrow limits, so that, by dams thrown across the river bed, we can easily divert the water into our new channel.

The above considerations are so important, or rather peremptory, that they outweigh the disadvantages of the arrangement which are, indeed, very serious. For the country so close to the hills having generally an exces-

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

xix

Number of Figure	DESCRIPTION.	Page
128.	Cross-Section to Illustrate the Effects of Erosion on the Eastern Jumna Canal, India	189
129.	Cross-Section to Illustrate the Effects of Silting up on the Eastern Jumna Canal, India	189
130.	Longitudinal Section of Canal in Embankment	190
131.	Longitudinal Section of Canal, showing Falls	190
132.	Section of Ogee Fall with Raised Crest	192
133.	Plan of Asufnuggur Falls, Ganges Canal	193
134.	View of Asufnuggur Falls, Ganges Canal	194
135.	Section of Vertical Fall	195
136.	Section of Vertical Fall, with Water Cushion, on the Baree Doab Canal..	196
137.	Cross-Section of Fall Constructed of Timber and Boulders, Canterbury, New Zealand	196
138.	Longitudinal Section of Fall Constructed of Timber and Boulders, Canterbury, New Zealand	196
139.	Plan of Fall Constructed of Timber and Boulders, Canterbury, New Zealand	196
140.	Cross-Section of Timber Fall with Water Cushion, Turlock Canal, California	197
141.	Section of Vertical Fall with Water Cushion	198
142.	Elevation, Looking Up-Stream, of Vertical Fall with Grating	203
143.	Plan of Vertical Fall with Grating	203
144.	Section of Vertical Fall with Grating	203
145.	Plan of one Bar of Grating	204
146.	Section of Grating	204
147.	Section of Shoe holding Grating Bar	204
148.	End Elevation of Grating Bars	204
149.	Plan of Bars of Grating	209
150.	Plan of Bars of Grating	209
151.	Section of Horizontal Bars of Grating	210
152.	Plan of Fall with Sliding Gate	211
153.	Section of Fall with Sliding Gate	211
154.	Elevation of Fall with Sliding Gate	211
155.	Section of Timber Fall with Plank Panel or Flash Boards.	214
156.	Plan of Rapid on Baree Doab Canal	216
157.	Transverse Section at Crest and Tail of Rapid	216
158.	Section of Rapid	216
159.	Section of Boulder Pavement	217
160.	Plan of Inlet on a Level	219
161.	Elevation of Inlet on a Level	219
162.	Section of Inlet on a Level	219
163.	Section of Arch and Pier of Inlet	219
164.	Section of Wing Walls of Inlet	219
165.	Section of Inlet with Ten Feet Fall	220

Number of Figure	DESCRIPTION.	Page
166.	Plan showing the Relative Position of the Regulating Bridges and Escapes at Branch Heads.....	221
167.	Elevation of one Span of Regulating Bridge at Branch Head..	221
168.	Section of one Span of Regulating Bridge at Branch Head....	221
169.	Kotluh Branch Head at Suranah, Sutlej Canal.....	225
170.	Plan of Escape Head and Regulator.....	227
171.	Cross-Section of San Antonio Tunnel, Ontario, California....	236
172.	Cross-Section of Retaining Wall.....	239
173.	Drainage Map, showing Arrangement of Distributaries.....	246
174.	Plan showing Arrangement of Distributaries.....	247
175.	Plan showing Arrangement of Distributaries.....	250
176.	Section of Fall on Distributary with Aqueduct Over Tail....	252
177.	Plan of Fall on Distributary with Aqueduct Over Tail.....	252
178.	Section of Syphon Drain for passing one Distributary under another, or under a Drainage Channel.....	252
179.	Plan of Distribution System.....	253
180.	Plan of Distribution System.....	255
181.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Four Feet Cutting.....	256
182.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Five Feet Cutting.....	256
183.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Seven Feet Cutting.....	256
184.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Eight Feet Cutting.....	256
185.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Ten Feet Cutting.....	256
186.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Cutting.....	261
187.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Embankment.....	261
188.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Cutting.....	261
189.	Cross-Section of Distributary in Embankment.....	261
190.	Canal Dredger.....	266
191.	Plan of Irrigation by Flooding-Checks.....	280
192.	Plan of Irrigation by Flooding-Checks.....	283
193.	Cross-Section of Canal.....	283
194.	Cross-Section of Distributary.....	283
195.	Section of Country showing Two-Foot Contour Checks.....	283
196.	Section of Country showing One-Foot Contour Checks.....	283
197.	Plan showing Method of Furrow Irrigation.....	287
198.	Plan of Pipe Irrigation System, Ontario, California.....	297
199.	View of Water Meter or Module, by A. D. Foote, C. E.....	342
200.	Inlet to Module in use on Henares Canal, Spain.....	344
201.	Longitudinal Section of Module in use on Henares Canal, Spain	344
202.	Plan of Module in use on Henares Canal, Spain.....	344
203.	Cross-Section of Module in use on Henares Canal, Spain....	344
204.	Map showing the Proposed Works of the Tulare Irrigation District, California.....	350
205.	Cross-Sections of Canal on Sidelong Ground.....	380
206.	Cross-Section of Canal in Rock-Cutting, with Rubble Wall on Lower Side.....	382

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xiii

	Page
ARTICLE 69. <i>Measurement of Water—Modules—Meters</i>	341
Essentials of a good Module.....	341
Mr. A. D. Foote's Water-meter.....	341
Module adopted on the Henares and Esla Canals, Spain.....	344
ARTICLE 70. <i>Report on the Proposed Works of the Tulare Irrigation</i>	
<i>District</i>	347
Borings and Trial Pits.....	348
Side Slopes.....	349
Tunnels.....	356
Headworks.....	358
Reservoir.....	360
Reservoir Supply combined with Canal from Kaweah River....	362
Duty of Water.....	364
Reservoir Supply combined with Canal from Kaweah River....	366
Loss from Evaporation and Seepage.....	368
Earthen Dams.....	374
Shrinkage of Earthworks.....	376
Canal on steep side hill ground.....	378
Cross-sections of Channels on side hill ground.....	381
Rock cutting on side hill ground with wall on lower side....	382
Rainfall.....	583
Prevention of Waste of Water.....	385
Measurement of Water.....	385

LIST OF TABLES.

Number Table.	Page
1. Giving Dimensions and Grades of Canals.....	15
2. Giving Velocities of Channels by Kutter's formula with $n = .025$	17
3. Giving the Inner Side Slopes of Canals in Earth and Sandy Loam.....	20
4. Giving the Natural Slopes of Materials with the Horizontal Line	20
5. Giving full details of Channels computed by Kutter's formula with $n = .025$	23
6. Giving a list of Irrigation Canals.....	30
7. Giving the Surface Slopes of Rivers through the Plains.....	32
8. Giving value of c_1	43
9. Giving Safe Bottom and Mean Velocities of Channels.....	44
10. Giving Dimensions, Grades and Velocities of Masonry Chan- nels.....	45
11. Giving Dimensions, Grades and Velocities of Channels.....	47
12. Giving the Transporting Power of Water.....	49
13. Giving Length, Discharge, etc., of Rivers.....	64
14. Giving Values of the Co-efficient k	74
15. Giving Shrinkage of Different Materials.....	76
16. Giving Velocities and Discharge of Channels with different values of n	174
17. Giving Velocity in Feet per second, and Discharge in Cubic Feet per second, of Channels with Different Bed Widths, but all other things being equal, based on Bazin's formula for Earthen Channels.....	258
18. Giving the Duty of Water in Different Countries.....	293
19. Statistics of Irrigation.....	314
20. Giving Temperature and Rainfall in the south of France.....	330
21. Giving Cost of Irrigation per acre in Different Countries.....	337
22. Showing the Annual Earning of a Cubic Foot of Water per sec- ond in Different Countries.....	339
23. Giving the Cost of Canals per acre Irrigated, and also the Cost per Cubic Foot per second of Discharge.....	340

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

Number of Figure.	DESCRIPTION.	Page
1.	Plan — Diverting Water from a River.....	8
2.	Section — Diverting Water from a River.....	8
3.	Section — Diverting Water from a River.....	8
4.	Cross-Sections of Canal, by A. D. Foote, M. Am. Soc. C. E. . .	13
5.	Cross-Sections of Canal, by A. D. Foote, M. Am. Soc. C. E. . .	13
6.	Cross-Sections of Canal, by A. D. Foote, M. Am. Soc. C. E. . .	13
7.	Cross-Sections of Canal, showing silting up.....	19
8.	Cross-Section of Nira Canal, India.....	27
9.	Cross-Section of Henares Canal, Spain, in deep cutting.....	27
10.	Cross-Section of Henares Canal, Spain, in cut and fill.....	27
11.	Cross-Section of Canal, Central District, California.....	28
12.	Plan showing arrangement of Channels for Silting up land, also known as Warping and Colmatage.....	67
13.	Cross-Section explaining the Equalization of Cuttings and Embankments.....	69
14.	Cross-Section explaining the Equalization of Cuttings and Embankments.....	70
15.	Cross-Section explaining the Equalization of Cuttings and Embankments.....	73
16.	Plan of Well Foundation.....	78
17.	Section of Well Foundation.....	78
18.	Plan of Block Foundation.....	78
19.	Section of Block Foundation.....	78
20.	Cross-Section of timber Weir at head of Calloway Canal, Kern River, California.....	88
21.	Cross-Section of Weir at head of Bear River Canal, Utah.....	90
22.	Sectional Elevation of Crib Dam at head of North Poudre Canal, Colorado.....	91
23.	Sectional Plan of Crib Dam at head of North Poudre Canal, Colorado.....	91
24.	Cross-Section through center of Cribs of North Poudre Canal, Colorado.....	92
25.	Cross-Section at ends of Cribs of North Poudre Canal, Colorado	92
26.	Plan of Head-Works of Upper Ganges Canal, India.....	93
27.	Elevation of Regulating Bridge at head of Upper Ganges Canal, India.....	94
28.	Plan of Regulating Bridge and Dam at head of Upper Ganges Canal, India.....	

Number of Figure	DESCRIPTION.	Page
29.	Cross-Section through Floor of Dam and Elevation of Flank of Upper Ganges Canal, India.....	94
30.	Cross-Section through Center of Dam and Elevation of Pier of Upper Ganges Canal, India.....	94
31.	Plan of part of the Nile Delta, showing location of Barrages and Canals.....	97
32.	Longitudinal Section of the Rosetta Branch Barrage on the Nile	100
33.	Plan of the Rosetta Branch Barrage on the Nile.....	100
34.	Cross-Section of the Rosetta Branch Barrage on the Nile....	100
35.	View of the Nile Barrage.....	102
36.	Plan of Headworks of the Sone Canals, India.....	103
37.	Cross-Section of Weir of the Sone Canals, India.....	104
38.	Movable Dam on Crest of Weir of the Sone Canals, India....	104
39.	Cross-Section of Okhla Weir or Anicut at head of Agra Canal.	106
40.	Plan of Okhla Weir or Anicut at head of Agra Canal.....	107
41.	Cross-Section of Streeviguntum Weir or Anicut, Madras....	109
42.	Diagram showing the Afflux during flood at Narora Weir....	110
43.	Cross-Section of Narora Weir or Anicut at head of Lower Ganges Canal, Ganges River, India.....	111
44.	Cross-Section of Godavery Weir or Anicut.....	116
45.	Cross-Section of Turlock Weir.....	117
46.	Cross-Section of Henares Weir.....	119
47.	View of Stone Block Facing, Henares Weir.....	119
48.	Bird's-eye view of Site of Headworks, Cavour Canal.....	122
49.	Cross-Section of proposed Weir at Headworks of Cavour Canal	123
50.	Plan of proposed Weir at Headworks of Cavour Canal.....	123
51.	Cross-Section of top of proposed Weir at Headworks of Cavour Canal.....	123
52.	Longitudinal-Section of top of proposed Weir at Headworks of Cavour Canal.....	123
53.	Elevations of Iron Spikes.....	123
54.	View of Myapore Regulating Bridge, Ganges Canal.....	126
55.	Elevation of Regulating Gates of Del Norte Canal.....	127
56.	Cross-Section of Regulating Gates of Del Norte Canal.....	127
57.	Longitudinal-Section of Idaho Canal Regulator Head.....	128
58.	End Elevation of Idaho Canal Regulator Head.....	128
59.	Elevation of Sluice Gate, Cavour Canal.....	129
60.	Cross-Section of Sluice Gate, Cavour Canal.....	129
61.	Cross-Section of Drop-Gates on the Jumna Canal, India.....	129
62.	Cross-Section of Drop-Gates on the Ganges Canal.....	129
63.	Elevation of Regulating Bridge, with Lift-Gate and Sleepers..	131
64.	Plan of Regulating Bridge, with Lift-Gate and Sleepers.....	131
65.	Elevation of Windlass for working Sleepers.....	131
66.	Plan of Sleeper.....	131
67.	Cross-Section of Drop-Gate for River Dams.....	131

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xvii

Number of Figure	DESCRIPTION.	Page
68.	Plan of Drop-Gate for River Dams.....	131
69.	Cross-Section of Sluice of Henares Canal.....	133
70.	Cross-Section of Gear for Working Sluice of Henares Canal...	133
71.	Plan of Gear for Working Sluice of Henares Canal.....	133
72.	Cross-Section of Shutters of Mahanuddy Weir.....	136
73.	Cross-Section of Tumbler regulating gear for Distributaries of the Midnapore Canal.....	139
74.	View of Fouracre's Sluices at the Weir on the River Sone....	140
75.	View of Fouracre's Sluices at the Weir on the River Sone....	140
76.	View of Fouracre's Sluices at the Weir on the River Sone....	141
77.	Section of Hydraulic Brake-Head for Shutters of Sone Weir..	141
78.	Section of Hydraulic Brake-Head for Shutters of Sone Weir..	141
79.	Cross-Section of Movable Dam, Sone Weir.....	142
80.	Plan of Lifting Sluice Gate.....	144
81.	Down-Stream Elevation of Lifting Sluice Gate, showing Foot- Bridge and Lifting Gear.....	145
82.	Cross-Section, showing Lifting Sluice, shut.....	146
83.	Cross-Section, showing Lifting Sluice, open.....	146
84.	Plan showing End of Girder Pressing Against Free Rollers...	146
85.	Elevation of Flume on Uncompahgre Canal, Colorado.....	152
86.	Cross-Section of Flume on Uncompahgre Canal, Colorado....	152
87.	Plan of Penstock and Boom, Grand River Canal, Colorado....	153
88.	Longitudinal Section of Penstock and Boom Flume, Grand River Canal, Colorado.....	153
89.	View of Platte River, with Platte Canal, Colorado.....	154
90.	View of Aqueduct of Platte Canal (High Line), crossing Plum Creek at Acequia.....	155
91.	View of High Flume over Malad River, West Branch Bear River Canal, Utah.....	156
92.	View of Iron Flume over Malad River, Corinne Branch Bear River Canal, Utah.....	157
93.	View of Solani Aqueduct, Ganges Canal, India.....	158
94.	Cross-Section of Solani Aqueduct Embankment.....	161
95.	Elevation of Half of Solani Aqueduct.....	162
96.	Section of Two Arches and Abutment of Solani Aqueduct....	162
97.	Sectional Plan of Solani Aqueduct, showing Wells and Blocks of Foundations.....	162
98.	Plan of Half of Wrought-Iron Aqueduct over the Arroyo Ma- janar, Henares Canal.....	164
99.	Elevation of Wrought-Iron Aqueduct over the Arroyo Majanar, Henares Canal.....	164
100.	Cross-Section of Wrought-Iron Aqueduct over the Arroyo Ma- janar, Henares Canal.....	164
101.	Details of Wrought-Iron Aqueduct over the Arroyo Majanar, Henares Canal.....	164

Number of Figure	DESCRIPTION.	Page
102.	Details of Wrought-Iron Aqueduct over the Arroyo Majanar, Henares Canal.....	164
103.	Section of End of Iron Aqueduct and Pier, showing arrange- ment to prevent leakage.....	164
104.	Plan of Level Crossing.....	165
105.	View of the Dhunowree Level Crossing, Ganges Canal.....	166
106.	Plan of Rutmoo Level Crossing at Dhunowree, Ganges Canal.....	167
107.	Plan of Escape Dam at Dhunowree Level Crossing, Ganges Canal.....	168
108.	Longitudinal-Section of Escape Dam at Dhunowree Level Crossing, Ganges Canal.....	168
109.	Cross-Section of Escape Dam at Dhunowree Level Crossing, Ganges Canal.....	168
110.	View of Ranipore Superpassage, Ganges Canal.....	171
111.	Plan of Seesooan Superpassage, Sutlej Canal Project.....	173
112.	Half Elevation and Half Section Superpassage, Sutlej Canal Project.....	173
113.	Section of Wing Wall Superpassage, Sutlej Canal Project.....	173
114.	Half Cross - Section of Seesooan Superpassage, Sutlej Canal Project.....	173
115.	Longitudinal Section of Conduit under Stony Creek, Central Irrigation District Canal, California.....	178
116.	Plan of Section of Conduit under Stony Creek, Central Irriga- tion District Canal, California.....	178
117.	Section of Conduit under Stony Creek, Central Irrigation Dis- trict Canal, California.....	178
118.	Cross-Section of Conduit under Stony Creek, Central Irriga- tion District Canal, California.....	178
119.	Enlarged Cross-Section of one Span of Conduit under Stony Creek, Central Irrigation District Canal, California.....	178
120.	Plan of End of Syphon for Drainage Crossing at Hurron Nullah Sirhind Canal.....	180
121.	Section Plan of Syphon for Drainage Crossing at Hurron Nullah Sirhind Canal.....	180
122.	Longitudinal Section of Syphon for Drainage Crossing at Hurron Nullah Sirhind Canal.....	180
123.	Cross-Section of Syphon for Drainage Crossing at Hurron Nullah Sirhind Canal.....	180
124.	Diagram to Illustrate Retrogression of Levels in Canals.....	183
125.	Diagram to Illustrate Retrogression of Levels in Canals.....	183
126.	Plan Showing the Effects of Erosion at Toghulpoor, on the Ganges Canal.....	188
127.	Section Showing the Effects of Silting up at Toghulpoor, on the Ganges Canal.....	188

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	Page
ARTICLE 1. <i>Canals divided into two classes.</i>	1
Canals solely for Irrigation	1
Canals for Irrigation and Navigation combined	1
ARTICLE 2. <i>Systems of Irrigation.</i>	2
Perennial Canals—Inundation Canals—Tanks or Reservoirs—	
Wells—Pumping.....	2
ARTICLE 3. <i>American and Indian Canals compared</i>	2
ARTICLE 4. <i>Diverting the Water from the River to the land.</i>	5
ARTICLE 5. <i>Quantity of Water required for Irrigation.</i>	11
Duty of Water—Sone Canals and Ganges Canal, India.....	11
Water required for navigation.....	12
ARTICLE 6. <i>Depth to Bed-width of Canal, and Dimensions of Canals.</i>	12
Cross-sections of Canals, by A. D. Foote, M. Am. Soc. C. E....	13
Dimensions and grades of Canals given by T. Login, M. I. C. E.	14
ARTICLE 7. <i>Side Slopes.</i>	17
Silting up of side slopes.....	18
ARTICLE 8. <i>Grade or Slope of Bed of Canal.</i>	20
Adjustment of grade and sectional area to diminished discharge.	22
ARTICLE 9. <i>Dimensions of Banks.</i>	26
Cross-sections of Nira Canal, India, and of Henares Canal,	
Spain.....	27
Sub-grade.....	28
Cross-section of canal, Central District, California.....	28
ARTICLE 10. <i>A List of Irrigation Canals, giving Dimensions, Grades,</i>	
<i>etc.</i>	29
ARTICLE 11. <i>The Surface Slope of Rivers through the Plains</i>	32
ARTICLE 12. <i>Safe Mean Velocities.</i>	32
Slope of bed	32
Velocity required to prevent deposition of silt or the growth of	
aquatic plants	33
Maximum mean velocity	34
High mean velocities.....	35
Velocity on Navigation Canals.....	35
Slope of Canals—Slope too great on Ganges Canal.....	36
Velocities in Ganges Canal, by Major J. Crofton, R. E.....	37
Velocities in the Western Jumna and Baree Daub Canals, by	
Colonel Dyas, R. E.....	39
Humphreys and Abbot, on Velocities in the Mississippi.....	40
ARTICLE 13. <i>Mean, Surface and Bottom Velocities.</i>	41
Bazin—Rankine—Prony—Dubuat	41
Revy	42

	Page
ARTICLE 14. <i>Mean Velocities from Maximum Surface Velocities</i>	42
Gauging Channels	42
ARTICLE 15. <i>Destructive Velocities</i>	43
Destruction of the Deyrah Dhoon Water Courses	45
Velocities destructive to brickwork	46
ARTICLE 16. <i>Velocity Increases with Increase in Depth</i>	47
ARTICLE 17. <i>Abrading and Transporting Power of Water</i>	48
Observations on the Ganges Canal and River Ravee, India, and on the Loire, in France	49
Sweaton, experience—Blackwell's experiments	50
Baldwin Latham's experience—Sir John Leslie's formula— Chailly's formula	51
Experience with bowlder flooring on Indian Canals	51
ARTICLE 18. <i>On Keeping Irrigation Canals Clear of Silt</i>	52
ARTICLE 19. <i>Fertilizing Silt</i>	56
Deposits from the Nile	56
Four kinds of water for irrigation	58
Kistna, Midnapure, Durance, Punjab Rivers	59
Rivers Po, Dora, Baltea, Durance, in Madras—Reservoirs, Colorado	60
Idaho, Utah	61
Well Water, Punjab	62
ARTICLE 20. <i>Silt Carried by Rivers</i>	62
Silt carried by the Nile, Godavery, Mahanuddy, Kistna, Indus, Durance, Vistula, Garonne, Rhine and Po	63
Nile, Ganges, Mississippi, Danube	64
ARTICLE 21. <i>Improvement of Land by Silting up, Warping or Colma- tage</i>	65
Colmatage on the Moselle, in France	66
ARTICLE 22. <i>Equalizing Cuttings and Embankments</i>	68
ARTICLE 23. <i>Canal on Sidelong Ground</i>	73
ARTICLE 24. <i>Shrinkage of Earthwork</i>	75
ARTICLE 25. <i>Works of Irrigation Canals</i>	77
ARTICLE 26. <i>Wells and Blocks</i>	77
Well of Sone Weir—Block of Solani Aqueduct—Method of Sink- ing	77
ARTICLE 27. <i>Headworks of Irrigation Canals</i>	79
Requirements for good Headworks	80
Deposition of Silt in Canals	81
ARTICLE 28. <i>Diversion Weirs</i>	81
Weirs—Dams—Anicuts—Barrages	81
Canals sometimes taken from rivers without weirs	82
Kern River Dam—Myapore Dam—Barrage of the Nile	83
Difference between a river Weir and Dam	83
Regulator—Temporary dam on crest of weir—Oblique weirs . .	85

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

	Page
ARTICLE 28— <i>Diversion Weirs.</i> (Continued.)	
Proper location of dam or weir	86
Okhla Weir—Godavery Anicut—Turlock Weir—Henares Weir— Cavour Canal Weir—Streeviguntum Anicut—Narora Weir— Phoenix, Arizona, Brush and Boulder Dams	87
Kern River Dam—Calloway Canal	88
Weir at Head of Bear River Canal, Utah—Weir at Head of North Poudre Canal, Colorado	90
Headworks of Upper Ganges Canal	93
Dam and Regulator of Upper Ganges Canal at Myapore	94
The Sone, the Okhla and the Lower Ganges Weirs	96
Barrage of the Nile	97
Okhla Weir, River Jumna	102
Headworks of Sone Canals	103
Weir at head of Sone Canals—Movable dam on crest of Weir ..	104
Okhla Weir, Agra Canal	106
Streeviguntum Anicut—Tambrapoorney River, Madras	109
Naroro Weir, Lower Ganges Canal, India	110
Dowlaishwaram Branch of the Godavery Anicut ..	115
Turlock Weir, Tuolumne River, California	117
Bhim Tal Dam—Betwa Weir—Vrynwy Dam—Geelong Dam— Lozoya Dam	119
Henares Weir	119-120
Proposed Weir, Cavour Canal, Italy	121
Headworks of Cavour Canal, Italy	122
ARTICLE 29. <i>Scouring Sluices, Under Sluices.</i>	124
ARTICLE 30. <i>Regulators.</i>	126
Regulating Gates, Del Norte Canal	127
Idaho Canal Regulator Head	128
ARTICLE 31. <i>Sluices—Gates—Movable Dams or Shutters.</i>	128
Sluice Gates, Indian Canal	129
Regulating Bridge, Regulating Apparatus for Canals	131
Sluice Gate, Henares Canal	133
Shutters of the Mahanuddy Weir	136
Formula for finding the tension on the chains of Shutters	137
Movable Dams on the Sone Weir	138
Tumbler Regulating Gear for Distributaries of Midnapore Canal	139
Lifting Sluice Gate	144
ARTICLE 32. <i>The Loss of Water by Percolation under a Weir.</i>	147
Godavery Anicut or Weir	147
ARTICLE 33. <i>Bridges—Culverts.</i>	149
Formula for finding area of Culvert	150
ARTICLE 34. <i>Aqueducts—Flumes.</i>	150
Aqueduct over the Dora Baltea River—Flume on Uncompahgre Canal	152

	Page
ARTICLE 34— <i>Aqueducts—Flumes.</i> (Continued.)	
Big Drop, Grand River Ditch, Colorado—Flume on Flatte Canal, Colorado.....	153
Aqueduct of Platte Canal, crossing Plum Creek at Acequia....	155
High Flume over Malad River, Bear River Canal, Utah.....	156
Iron Flume over Malad River, Bear River Canal, Utah.....	157
Solani Aqueduct, Ganges Canal, India.....	158
Iron Aqueduct over the Majanar Torrent on the Henares Canal	163
ARTICLE 35. <i>Level Crossings.</i>	164
Level Crossing at Dhunowree, Ganges Canal.....	166
ARTICLE 36. <i>Superpassages.</i>	169
Ranipore Superpassage, Ganges Canal.....	171
Seesooan Superpassage on the Sutlej or Sirhind Canal.....	172
ARTICLE 37. <i>Inverted Syphons.</i>	175
Inverted Syphon under Stony Creek, Central Irrigation Canal, California.....	175
Inverted Syphon carrying the Buriya torrent under the Agra Canal, India.....	177
Inverted Syphon carrying the Hurron Creek (nullah) under the Sutlej Canal.....	177
Inverted Syphon carrying the Cavour Canal under the Sesia torrent.....	179
Wrought iron inverted Syphons on the Verdon Canal, France..	179
Syphons on Lozoya Canal, Jucar Canal, Mijares Canal.....	182
ARTICLE 38. <i>Retrogression of Levels.</i>	183
General Cautley and the Ganges Canal.....	185
Committee to report on Ganges Canal—T. Login's work on Ganges Canal.....	186
Erosion at Toghulpoor Sand Hill, Ganges Canal.....	188
Erosion and Silting up on Eastern Jumna Canal, India.....	189
ARTICLE 39. <i>Falls—Drops—Checks.</i>	189
Ogee Falls.....	192
Asufnuggur Falls, Ganges Canal.....	193
Vertical Falls with Water Cushions.....	195
Timber Fall, Canterbury Plains, New Zealand.....	197
Timber Fall, Turlock Canal, California.....	197
Formula for depth of Water Cushion below fall.....	198
Raising Crest of Fall.....	199
Vertical Fall with Gratings.....	202
Vertical Fall with Grating on Baree Doab Canal.....	203
Computing the Spacing of Bars.....	206
Grating of Fall, with Horizontal Bars.....	210
Sliding Gate Falls on the Sukkur Canal, India.....	211
Fall on Calloway Canal, with Plank Panels or Flash Boards....	214
Box floor for Falls.....	214

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

	Page
ARTICLE 40. <i>Rapids</i>	215
Rapid on the Baree Doab Canal, India.....	215
ARTICLE 41. <i>Inlets</i>	219
ARTICLE 42. <i>Heads of Branch Canals</i>	221
Needle Dam on the Sidhnai Canal, India.....	222
Kotluh Branch Head at Surranah, Sutlej Canal.....	225
ARTICLE 43. <i>Escapes—Relief Gates—Waste Gates</i>	226
Location of Escape Channel.....	227
Escapes on the Sone, Ganges, Agra, Naviglio Grande, Muzza and Martesana Canals.....	228
ARTICLE 44. <i>Depositing Basins—Silt Traps—Sand Boxes</i>	229
Trap on Canal in Idaho, by A. D. Foote, M. Am. Soc. C. E....	229
Depositing Basin on the Marseilles Canal, France.....	230
Depositing Reservoir on the Wutchumna Canal, California....	231
ARTICLE 45. <i>Tunnels</i>	232
Tunnels on the Merced, High Level and Henares Canals.....	232
Tunnels on the Marseilles and Verdon Canals—San Antonio Tunnel.....	234
ARTICLE 46. <i>Retaining Walls</i>	238
ARTICLE 47. <i>Combined Irrigation and Navigation Canals</i>	240
Required Velocities on Canals.....	241
Beruegado and Sutlej Canals—Madras Canals.....	242
ARTICLE 48. <i>Survey</i>	243
Arrangement of Distributaries.....	245
ARTICLE 49. <i>Distributaries—Laterals—Rajbukas</i>	252
Fall and Inverted Syphon.....	252
Distribution System.....	253
Cross-sections of Distributaries.....	256
Details of Distributaries.....	257
Cross-sections of Distributaries.....	261
ARTICLE 50. <i>Submerged Dams</i>	261
ARTICLE 51. <i>Construction—Canal Dredger</i>	263
ARTICLE 52. <i>Water Power on Irrigation Canals</i>	268
Cigliano, Rotto and Ivrea Canals.....	268
Water Power on Crappone and Marseilles Canals, France.....	269
Water Power on Verdon and Henares Canals.....	270
ARTICLE 53. <i>Cost of Pumping and Water</i>	270
Pumping in Egypt.....	270
ARTICLE 54. <i>Maintenance and Operation of Irrigation Canals</i>	273
The Sources of Destruction of Canals.....	276
ARTICLE 55. <i>Methods of Irrigation</i>	279
Flooding—Checks.....	279
Flooding in India.....	285
Furrow Irrigation.....	286
ARTICLE 56. <i>Duty of Water for Irrigation</i>	289
Efficiency of a Canal for Irrigation.....	290

	Page
ARTICLE 57. <i>Pipe Irrigation</i>	292
Economy of Water by the use of Pipes.....	294
Pipe Irrigation System, Ontario, California.....	296
ARTICLE 58. <i>Number and Depth of Waterings</i>	298
Marcite Irrigation—Irrigation Southern California and Henares Canal.....	298
Esla Canal—Valencia, Spain—South of France.....	299
Marseilles and Bari Doab Canals—Madras—Colorado—Professor G. Davidson.....	300
C. L. Stevenson, Utah—General Scott Moncrieff, India.....	301
ARTICLE 59. <i>Horary Rotation</i>	302
ARTICLE 60. <i>Forestry and Irrigation</i>	304
ARTICLE 61. <i>Rainfall</i>	308
Statistics of Irrigation.....	314
ARTICLE 62. <i>Evaporation</i>	316
Evaporation at Kingsbridge, Tulare County, California—Colorado.....	316
Evaporation in Italy, Spain and India.....	317
Evaporation in Hyderabad, Nagpur, the Deccan and Northern India.....	318
Evaporation in Egypt and the South of France.....	320
ARTICLE 63. <i>Percolation or Absorption</i>	321
Percolation in Colorado—New Zealand—Marterana Canal, Italy.....	323
Percolation in Lombardy—Marseilles Canal—Canal from the Rhone—Agra Canal—Achti Tank.....	324
Percolation in Palkhed Canal—Ojhar Tambét Canal, Ganges Canal.....	325
Percolation in Ganges Canal—Egypt—London.....	326
ARTICLE 64. <i>Drainage</i>	327
Waterlogged land in India and Egypt.....	328
Waterlogged land in Colorado.....	329
Alkali (reh), Subsoil Drainage.....	330
Area Irrigated in India.....	331
ARTICLE 65. <i>Defective Irrigation—Alkali—The affect of Irrigation on Health</i>	332
Defective Irrigation in California.....	332
Defective Irrigation in India.....	335
Defective Irrigation in Europe.....	336
ARTICLE 66. <i>Cost of Irrigation per acre in different countries</i>	336
ARTICLE 67. <i>Annual earning of a cubic foot of water per second</i>	338
ARTICLE 68. <i>Cost of Canals per acre Irrigated and per cubic foot per second</i>	339
Cost of the Ganges Canal and the Orisa Canals.....	339
Cost of Henares Canal, Spain, and Mussel Slough Canal, California.....	340

George J. Roskrige

Tucson

Arizona.

Mar 14. 1892.

IRRIGATION CANALS

AND OTHER

Irrigation Works,

INCLUDING

The Flow of Water in Irrigation Canals

AND

OPEN AND CLOSED CHANNELS GENERALLY,

WITH

TABLES

Simplifying and Facilitating the Application of the Formulæ of
KUTTER, D'ARCY AND BAZIN,

BY

P. J. FLYNN, C. E.

Member of the American Society of Civil Engineers; Member of the Technical Society of the Pacific Coast; Late Executive Engineer, Public Works Department, Punjab, India.

AUTHOR OF

"Hydraulic Tables based on Kutter's Formula,"
"Flow of Water in Open Channels," etc.

[ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.]

SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA.

1892.



Entered according to Act of Congress in the year 1891,

By P. J. FLYNN,

In the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D. C.

SAN FRANCISCO:
GEORGE SPAULDING & CO.,
PRINTERS AND ELECTROTYPERS.

PREFACE.

It is fully admitted that a work on *Irrigation Canals* is much needed in this country. Since this work has been in the printer's hands, I have received letters from prominent engineers, from all parts of the United States, who are anxiously awaiting its issue.

The work is divided into two parts. The first part treats of *Irrigation Canals and Other Irrigation Works*, and the second part of the *Flow of Water in Open and Closed Channels, generally*.

I have aimed at making the work useful, not only to the engineer engaged in active practice, but also to the engineering student. With this object in view I have arranged the articles, as well as I could judge, in the order in which they should follow each other. It is the first time, so far as I am aware, that a work on Irrigation Canals has been arranged on this plan.

In preparing the work on *Irrigation Canals*, the best authorities have been consulted and due acknowledgment is given to them throughout the work.

Over ninety per cent. of the matter in the *Flow of Water* is original. Some of it, however, has appeared before in my other publications.

In order to simplify and facilitate the application of the modern and accurate formulæ of Kutter, D'Arcy and

Bazin, I first reduced them to the Chezy form of formula:—

$$v = c \times \sqrt{r} \times \sqrt{s}$$

$$Q = a \times c \times \sqrt{r} \times \sqrt{s}$$

Then, for open channels I have constructed three tables:—

1. Tables giving the values of a , r , \sqrt{r} and $a\sqrt{r}$ for a large range of channels and for several side slopes.
2. Tables giving the values of c and $c\sqrt{r}$ for different grades and different values of n .
3. Table of slopes giving also the value of \sqrt{s} .

Also, for circular and egg-shaped pipes, sewers and conduits, I have constructed two tables:—

1. Tables giving the values of a , r , $c\sqrt{r}$ and $ac\sqrt{r}$ for several values of n .
2. Table of slopes giving also the value of \sqrt{s} . This is the same as Table 3 above.

By making \sqrt{s} a separate factor, the work of computation is very much simplified.

By the use of the above Tables, any problem relating to Open or Closed Channels, likely to arise in practice, can be rapidly solved. A great saving of time and labor can be gained by the use of the tables.

There are thirty-seven examples relating to Open and Closed Channels, which will be of especial use to the student.

Tables 30, 31 and 32 give the velocity and discharge of a large range of open channels, and Tables 68 and 69 give the velocity and discharge of circular and egg-shaped pipes, sewers and conduits with $n = .013$.

At pages 8, 195, etc., is given the most complete collection of formulæ, old and modern, sixty-nine in number, that has ever before been published, in a single work, in the English language.

The *Flow of Water* will be useful, not only to the Irrigation Engineer, but also to the Engineer engaged on Water Supply, Sewerage, Drainage of Land and Improvement of Rivers, etc.

The Tables of Contents of Volumes 1 and 2, and the Index of Volume 1, are very full, and will enable the reader to find any subject, referred to in the books, without loss of time.

I have to acknowledge the many obligations I am under to Mr. George Spaulding, of George Spaulding & Co., printers, San Francisco, who has superintended the printing of the book, and also the plates for the illustrations. As a specimen of splendid typography, I refer the reader to the whole book, and particularly to the formulæ and tables.

P. J. FLYNN.

Los Angeles, California, January 9th, 1892.